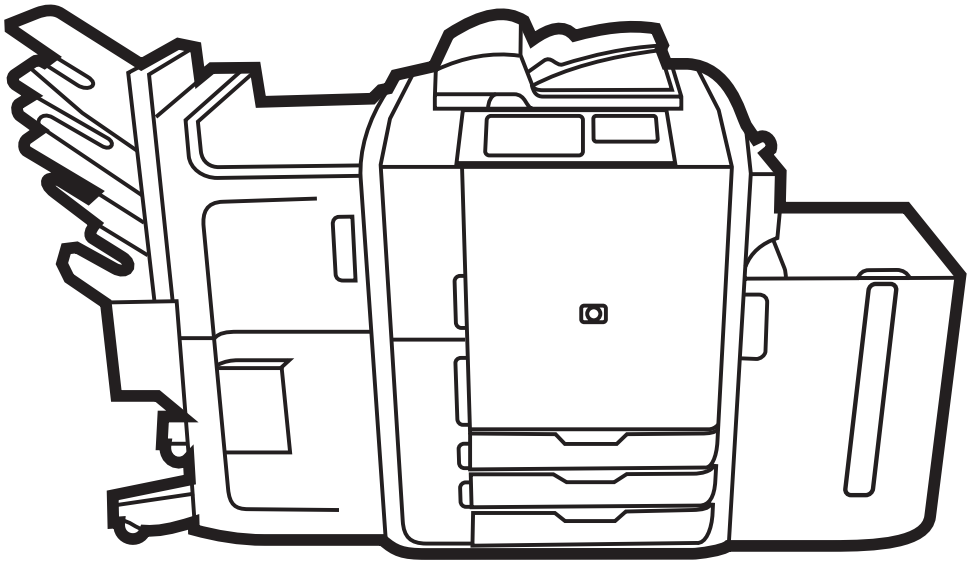
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology

Software Technical Reference



HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology

Software Technical Reference

Copyright and license

©2007 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 06/2007

Trademark credits

Adobe®, Adobe Photoshop®, Acrobat®, PostScript®, and the Acrobat logo® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Corel® is a trademark or registered trademark of Corel Corporation or Corel Corporation Limited.

EnergyStar® and the Energy Star logo® are US registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

FireWire® FireWire is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel® and Pentium® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Java™ is a US trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT®, Windows® XP, and Windows Vista™ are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Table of contents

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction 1
Device features 4
Printing-system software 6
System requirements 6
Windows 6
Macintosh 7
Linux 7
UNIX 7
Operating-system support 7
Standalone drivers 8
Print driver support in other operating systems 8
Availability 8
Printing-system software on the Web 9
In-box printing-system software CDs 9
Windows installation CD 10
Windows installation CD languages 10
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology documentation 17
Windows installation CD 18
Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes 19
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide 20
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel (PDF Poster) 21
Macintosh installation CD 21
System Administrator's CD 22
User Documentation 22
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide 23
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel (PDF Poster) 24
Administrator Documentation 25
Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes 26
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 27
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide 28

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Software Technical Reference 28
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 29
Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide 29

2 Software description

Introduction 31
MS Windows printing-system software 32
Printing system and installer 32
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software CD for MS Windows systems 32
Installer features 35
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology drivers 36
Select the best print driver 37
Complete printing system 37
HP PCL 6 driver 37
HP PCL 5 driver 37
PS Emulation driver 37
HP Universal Print Driver 37
HP print and fax drivers 38
Driver version numbers for MS Windows operating systems 38
Windows driver configuration 40
Driver autoconfiguration 40
Bidirectional communication 41
Enterprise AutoConfiguration 41
Update Now 41
HP Driver Preconfiguration 43
Lockable features 44
Continuous export 45
HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 46
HP Embedded Web Server 47
Access to the HP EWS 47
The HP EWS frame 48
Information tab 48
Device Status 48
Configuration Page 49
Supplies Status Page 51
Event Log Page 52
Usage Page 54
Device Information 57
Control Panel Snapshot 57
Jam History Page 58
Print 59
Printing a file or updating firmware from the Print page 60
Settings tab 60
Configure Device 61
Using the menus on the Configure Device page 61
Notification Server 62
Configuring outgoing e-mail 62
Configuring the return e-mail address 63

Alerts 63
AutoSend 64
Turn on the AutoSend feature 64
Security 65
Device Security 65
Restrict Color 66
Edit Other Links 67
Adding a link 68
Removing a link 68
Device Information 68
Language 68
Date & Time 69
Date &Time - Advanced 71
Sleep Schedule 71
Backup and Restore 72
Solution Installer 73
Digital Sending tab 73
Address Book 74
E-mail Setup 76
Network Folder Setup 78
Fax tab 79
Fax Send Setup 79
Fax Activity Log 80
Import Speed Dials 81
Networking tab 82
Configuration 82
Security section 83
Diagnostics section 83
Security 83
Kerberos Authentication 84
HP EWS login process 84
Protected system 85
Unprotected system 86
Password behavior 86
HP Web Jetadmin 87

3 Install MS Windows printing-system components

Introduction 89
Font support 90
Basic fonts 90
Default fonts 90
Print-driver installation instructions 96
General MS Windows installation instructions 96
Install from the Windows printing-system CD 96
Install from a network or from downloaded files 97
Detailed MS Windows installation instructions 97
Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons 97
Direct-connect installation through a USB port 98
Unsupported operating system dialog box 98
Installation dialog-box sequence 99

Modify a pre-existing installation 126
Install drivers by using Add Printer 129
Installer Customization Wizard for Windows 130
Run the Installer Customization Wizard 130
Dialog boxes 131
Distribution 148
Point-and-Print installation for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 148
Set a default printer 149
Fax-driver installation instructions 150
Minimum firmware 150
Install the HP MFP Send Fax driver on MS Windows 151

4 HP MFP Send Fax driver

Introduction 153
Access to the HP MFP Send Fax driver 154
Driver Properties tabs 154
Printing Preferences tabs 155
Printing Defaults tabs 156
Document Properties tabs 156
Help system 157
What's this? Help 157
Context-sensitive Help 157
Driver Properties tabs features 158
General tab 158
Sharing tab 159
Ports tab 159
Advanced tab 160
Upgrade the HP MFP Send Fax driver 160
Device Settings tab 161
About tab 162
Printing Preferences, Printing Defaults, and Document Properties tabs features 165
Advanced tab 165
Paper/Output 166
Copy Count 167
Collated 167
Document Options 167
Advanced Printing Features 167
Paper/Quality tab 167
Print Task Quick Sets 168
Default Print Settings 169
Paper Options 169
Size is: 169
Document preview image 170
Orientation 170
Services tab 170
Device and Supplies Status 171
Launch Embedded Web Server 171

5 HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers for MS Windows

Introduction 173
Access to print drivers in Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000 175
Software-program print-dialog box 175
Print-driver user interface 175
Printing Preferences driver tabs 175
Properties driver tabs 176
Device control panel 177
Help system 178
What's this? Help 178
Context-sensitive Help 178
Incompatible Print Settings messages 178
Advanced tab features 180
Paper/Output 181
Copy Count 182
Collated 182
Graphic 182
Image Color Management 183
True Type Font 183
Document Options 183
Advanced Printing Features 184
Print Optimizations 184
PostScript Options 184
Printer Features 185
Layout Options 186
Printing Shortcuts tab features 187
Using defined printing shortcuts 189
Create a custom printing shortcut 189
Paper/Quality tab features 190
Paper Options 191
Page size: 192
Custom Paper Size 193
Name 193
Paper size 194
Units 194
Custom width and height control limits 194
Paper Source: 194
Paper Type: 195
Special pages: 196
Document preview image 199
Color Quality 199
Color Quality drop-down menu 200
HP real life technologies 200
Effects tab features 202
Resizing Options 203
Actual Size 203
Print Document On 203
Scale to Fit 203
% of Normal Size 204

Document preview image 204
Watermarks 205
Current watermarks 206
Watermark Message 207
Message Angle 207
Font Attributes 207
Default watermark settings 208
Finishing tab features 209
Document options 210
Print on Both Sides 211
Automatically print on both sides 211
Flip Pages Up 211
Booklet layout 212
Book and Booklet Printing 212
Print a booklet 213
Pages per Sheet 213
Print Page Borders 213
Page Order 214
Document preview image 214
Orientation 214
Output tab features 216
Output Options 218
Document preview image 219
Output Bin Options 219
Job Storage tab features 221
Status group box 223
Job Storage Mode 223
Off 223
Proof and Hold 223
Personal Job 223
Quick Copy 224
Stored Job 224
Make Job Personal 224
Job Notification Options 224
User Name 225
Job Name 225
Using job-storage features when printing 226
Retrieve a job-storage print job 226
Delete a job-storage print job 226
Color tab features 228
Color Options 229
Color printing option 230
Neutral grays 230
More Color Options 230
Color Themes 231
Default (sRGB) 231
Image Optimization (sRGB) 231
Adobe RGB (1998) 231
Vivid (sRGB) 231
Custom Profile 231

Document preview image 232
Services tab features 233
Device services 234
Device Settings tab features 235
Form to Tray Assignment 237
Font Substitution Table 238
External Fonts 239
Installing external fonts 240
Removing external fonts 241
PS Emulation driver Device Settings 241
Available PostScript Memory 242
Output Protocol 242
Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job 242
Send Ctrl-D After Each Job 242
Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray 243
Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray 243
Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts 243
Job Timeout 243
Wait Timeout 243
Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline 243
Maximum Font Size to Download as Bitmap 243
Installable Options 244
Automatic Configuration 244
HP 4000-Sheet Input Tray (Tray 5) 244
Accessory Output Bin 244
Printer Memory 244
Printer Hard Disk 245
Job Storage 245
Mopier Mode 245
Mopier mode and collation 245
Postscript Passthrough (PS Emulation driver only) 246
JPEG Passthrough (PS Emulation driver only) 246
About tab features 247

6 Macintosh

Introduction 249
Macintosh printing-system software 250
Hardware requirements 250
Operating-system support 250
Availability 250
Printing-system software on the Web 251
Printing-system software 251
Software component availability 251
Macintosh installation CD 251
Macintosh installation CD 251
Macintosh installation CD languages 251
Macintosh install and uninstall instructions 253
Macintosh component descriptions 253
HP PPDs 253
PDEs 253

HP Embedded Web Server 253
Readme file 254
Install the Macintosh printing system 254
General installation for Macintosh operating systems 254
Detailed Mac OS X installation 255
Main Install dialog sequence 255
Printer setup 260
Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.4 and later 260
Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.3.9 264
Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.2.8 268
Troubleshooting the printer setup 271
Uninstall the Macintosh printing system 271
HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) 271
Access to the HP EWS 271

7 Engineering details

Introduction 273
Remote firmware updates 274
Print the configuration page 275
Print a menu map 276
Download the new firmware from the HP Web site 276
Download the new firmware to the device 276
Printer messages during the firmware update 277
Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection 279
Remote firmware update through an optional parallel port 280
Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 280
Remote firmware update through an MS Windows network 281
Remote firmware update for UNIX systems 282
Remote firmware update by using the LPR command 282
Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin 283
Print print-ready documents 285
Print-ready file printing by using FTP through a browser 285
Print-ready file printing by using FTP on a direct network connection 286
Print-ready file printing by using an optional parallel port 287
Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 287
Print-ready file printing in an MS Windows network 287
Print-ready file printing in UNIX systems 288
Print-ready file printing by using the LPR command 288
Paper attributes 289
Paper sources and destinations 289
Paper-source commands 289
Driver-supported paper sizes 290
Driver-supported paper types 292
Custom paper sizes 293
Media-type commands 294
Uninstall 295
Uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software by using Windows Add/Remove Program 295

Uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software by using the Windows Installation CD 295

Index 297

List of tables

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview 1
Table 1-2 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology features 4
Table 1-3 Windows installation CD—(table 1 of 3) 11
Table 1-4 Windows installation CD—(table 2 of 3) 13
Table 1-5 Windows installation CD—(table 3 of 3) 14
Table 1-6 CD documentation availability 17
Table 2-1 Drivers included with the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows CD 38
Table 2-2 Availability of automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 40
Table 3-1 Default fonts 90
Table 3-2 Additional PS emulation fonts 92
Table 4-1 Printing Defaults, Printing Preferences, Document Properties 155
Table 5-1 HP PCL 6 driver custom paper sizes 194
Table 5-2 Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks 208
Table 5-3 Page orientation 212
Table 5-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings 246
Table 6-1 Adding a device in Macintosh operating systems 255
Table 7-1 Version Checking 274
Table 7-2 Troubleshooting a firmware update 277
Table 7-3 Update messages 277
Table 7-4 Troubleshooting a firmware update failure 278
Table 7-5 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Paper sources and destinations 289
Table 7-6 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Paper-source commands 289
Table 7-7 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Supported paper sizes and attributes 290
Table 7-8 Supported paper types for each tray 292
Table 7-9 HP PCL 6 driver custom paper sizes 293
Table 7-10 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Media-type commands 294

List of figures

Figure 1-1 Windows installation CD documentation screen 19
Figure 1-2 System Administrator's CD screen 22
Figure 1-3 System Administrator's CD User Documentation screen 23
Figure 1-4 System Administrator's CD Administrator Documentation screen 26
Figure 2-1 Windows installation software CD Browser 33
Figure 2-2 Documentation screen 34
Figure 2-3 Optional Software screen 35
Figure 2-4 Update Now dialog box 42
Figure 2-5 HP EWS – Device Status page 49
Figure 2-6 HP EWS – Configuration Page (1 of 2) 50
Figure 2-7 HP EWS – Configuration Page (2 of 2) 51
Figure 2-8 HP EWS – Supplies Status Page 52
Figure 2-9 HP EWS – Event Log Page 53
Figure 2-10 HP EWS – Usage Page (1 of 3) 54
Figure 2-11 HP EWS – Usage Page (2 of 3) 55
Figure 2-12 HP EWS – Usage Page (3 of 3) 56
Figure 2-13 HP EWS – Device Information page 57
Figure 2-14 HP EWS – Control Panel Snapshot page 58
Figure 2-15 HP EWS – Jam History Page 59
Figure 2-16 HP EWS – Print page 60
Figure 2-17 HP EWS – Configure Device page 61
Figure 2-18 HP EWS – Notification Server page 62
Figure 2-19 HP EWS – Alerts page 63
Figure 2-20 HP EWS – AutoSend page 64
Figure 2-21 HP EWS – Security page 65
Figure 2-22 HP EWS – Device Security page 66
Figure 2-23 HP EWS – Restrict Color page 67
Figure 2-24 HP EWS – Edit Other Links page 67
Figure 2-25 HP EWS – Device Information page 68
Figure 2-26 HP EWS – Language page 69
Figure 2-27 HP EWS – Date & Time page 70
Figure 2-28 HP EWS – Date &Time - Advanced page 71
Figure 2-29 HP EWS – Sleep Schedule page 72
Figure 2-30 HP EWS – Backup and Restore page 73
Figure 2-31 HP EWS – Solution Installer page 73
Figure 2-32 HP EWS – Address Book page (1 of 3) 74
Figure 2-33 HP EWS – Address Book page (2 of 3) 75
Figure 2-34 HP EWS – Address Book page (3 of 3) 76

Figure 2-35 HP EWS – E-mail Setup page (1 of 2) 77
Figure 2-36 HP EWS – E-mail Setup page (2 of 2) 78
Figure 2-37 HP EWS – Network Folder Setup page 79
Figure 2-38 HP EWS – Fax Send Setup page 80
Figure 2-39 HP EWS – Fax Activity Log page 81
Figure 2-40 HP EWS – Import Speed Dials page 81
Figure 2-41 HP EWS Networking tab – Network Settings page 82
Figure 2-42 HP EWS Settings tab – Security page 84
Figure 2-43 HP EWS home page in a password-protected system 85
Figure 2-44 HP EWS home page with an admin user logged in 86
Figure 3-1 Are you sure you want to cancel the installation? dialog box 98
Figure 3-2 Cancel dialog box 98
Figure 3-3 Setup Error – Unsupported Operating System, MS Windows 98 99
Figure 3-4 Welcome to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Setup Wizard dialog box 100
Figure 3-5 Printer Connection dialog box 101
Figure 3-6 Firewall Detected dialog box (Windows XP) 102
Figure 3-7 Disable Your Firewall dialog box (Windows Vista) 103
Figure 3-8 Searching dialog box 104
Figure 3-9 Printer Not Found dialog box (Windows XP) 105
Figure 3-10 Printer Not Found dialog box (Windows Vista) 106
Figure 3-11 Printers Found dialog box 107
Figure 3-12 Printer Found dialog box 108
Figure 3-13 Confirm Network Settings dialog box 109
Figure 3-14 Confirm Changing Setting dialog box 110
Figure 3-15 Change TCP/IP Settings dialog box 111
Figure 3-16 Check Printer Connection dialog box 112
Figure 3-17 Specify Printer dialog box 113
Figure 3-18 Printer Settings dialog box 114
Figure 3-19 Set Port Name dialog box 115
Figure 3-20 Model dialog box 116
Figure 3-21 Installation Type dialog box 117
Figure 3-22 Installation typeDetails dialog box 118
Figure 3-23 Feature Selection dialog box 119
Figure 3-24 Details dialog box 120
Figure 3-25 Ready to Install dialog box 121
Figure 3-26 Printer Properties General tab 122
Figure 3-27 Installation Status dialog box 123
Figure 3-28 Finish dialog box (Windows XP) 124
Figure 3-29 Finish dialog box (Windows Vista) 125
Figure 3-30 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Next Steps — Congratulations dialog box 126
Figure 3-31 Test Page dialog box 126
Figure 3-32 Setup Maintenance dialog box 127
Figure 3-33 Ready to Remove dialog box 128
Figure 3-34 Uninstallation Finish dialog box 129
Figure 3-35 Welcome to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Installation Customization Wizard dialog box 131

Figure 3-36 Software License Agreement dialog box 132
Figure 3-37 Language dialog box 133
Figure 3-38 Printer Port dialog box 134
Figure 3-39 Browse for Printer dialog box 134
Figure 3-40 Specify TCP/IP Port dialog box 135
Figure 3-41 Port Creation Options dialog box 136
Figure 3-42 Please enter a Hardware address.: Network Setup Error dialog box 136
Figure 3-43 Model dialog box 137
Figure 3-44 Drivers dialog box 138
Figure 3-45 Driver Details dialog box 139
Figure 3-46 Driver Configuration dialog box 140
Figure 3-47 Printing Preferences tab 141
Figure 3-48 Device Settings tab 141
Figure 3-49 Invalid Selection dialog box 142
Figure 3-50 Additional Software dialog box 142
Figure 3-51 Additional software Details dialog box 143
Figure 3-52 Custom Installer Location dialog box 144
Figure 3-53 Ready to Create Installer dialog box 145
Figure 3-54 Printer Properties General tab 146
Figure 3-55 Installing dialog box 147
Figure 3-56 Finish dialog box 148
Figure 4-1 Device Settings tab 162
Figure 4-2 About tab 163
Figure 4-3 Advanced tab 166
Figure 4-4 Paper/Quality tab 168
Figure 4-5 Services tab 171
Figure 5-1 An Incompatible Print Settings message 179
Figure 5-2 Advanced tab 181
Figure 5-3 Printing Shortcuts tab 188
Figure 5-4 Printing shortcuts box 189
Figure 5-5 Paper/Quality tab 191
Figure 5-6 Paper Options group box 192
Figure 5-7 Custom Paper Size dialog box 193
Figure 5-8 Covers dialog box 197
Figure 5-9 Print pages on different paper dialog box 197
Figure 5-10 Insert blank or preprinted sheets dialog box 198
Figure 5-11 Chapter separator pages dialog box 198
Figure 5-12 Document preview image 199
Figure 5-13 Color Quality group box 199
Figure 5-14 HP real life technologies options 200
Figure 5-15 Effects tab 202
Figure 5-16 Preview images – Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right) 204
Figure 5-17 Document preview image 205
Figure 5-18 Watermark Details dialog box 206
Figure 5-19 Finishing tab 210
Figure 5-20 Page-order preview images 214
Figure 5-21 Document preview image 214
Figure 5-22 Output tab 217

Figure 5-23 Image Shift dialog box 219
Figure 5-24 Document preview image 219
Figure 5-25 Job Storage tab 222
Figure 5-26 Color tab 229
Figure 5-27 Advanced Color Settings screen 230
Figure 5-28 Document preview image 232
Figure 5-29 Services tab 234
Figure 5-30 HP PCL 6 driver Device Settings tab 236
Figure 5-31 PS Emulation driver Device Settings tab 237
Figure 5-32 Font Substitution Table 239
Figure 5-33 HP Font Installer dialog box 240
Figure 5-34 About tab 248
Figure 6-1 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology CD-ROM icon 255
Figure 6-2 HP CM8060/CM8050 MFP screen 255
Figure 6-3 Authenticate dialog 256
Figure 6-4 HP Macintosh installer introduction dialog 256
Figure 6-5 HP Installer Read Me dialog 257
Figure 6-6 License dialog 257
Figure 6-7 Agree dialog 258
Figure 6-8 Easy Install dialog 258
Figure 6-9 Installing dialog 259
Figure 6-10 Finish Up dialog 259
Figure 6-11 Printer list screen 261
Figure 6-12 Print & Fax dialog 261
Figure 6-13 Default Browser tab 262
Figure 6-14 Printer Browser – IP Printer tab 263
Figure 6-15 Installable Options screen 264
Figure 6-16 Printer List screen 264
Figure 6-17 Printer List screen 265
Figure 6-18 Print & Fax screen 265
Figure 6-19 Add printer screen 266
Figure 6-20 Installable Options screen 268
Figure 6-21 Printer List screen 268
Figure 6-22 Add printer screen 269
Figure 6-23 Installable Options screen 270

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction

This software technical reference (STR) provides information and troubleshooting tips for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software.

This STR (part number C5956–90412) is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for system administrators, support engineers, management information systems (MIS) personnel, and HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology end users, as appropriate.

The following information is included in this STR:

- Descriptions of print drivers, environments and operating systems, and system modifications
- Procedures for installing and uninstalling the printing-system software components
- Descriptions of various HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology topics, including engineering details

The following table describes the structure of this STR.

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview

Chapter	Content

Chapter 1, Purpose and scope	This chapter contains basic information about the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology and its software:
	• Overview of the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology
	• Printing-system software overview, including the following topics:
	  • System requirements
	  • Operating-system support
	  • Availability
	• HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology software documentation

Chapter 2, Software description	This chapter provides an overview of the printing-system software installer and print drivers.

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview (continued)

Chapter	Content
	This chapter also contains general information about other software features, including the following topics: • Driver configuration for Microsoft® (MS) Windows® • HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool • HP Embedded Web Server • HP Web Jetadmin

Chapter 3, Install MS Windows printing-system components	This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology in MS Windows operating systems by using various installation methods. These methods and additional topics include the following:
	• Font support
	• Print-driver installation instructions:
	  ◦ Install from the printing-system CD
	  ◦ Install from a network or from downloaded files
	  ◦ Modify a pre-existing installation
	  ◦ Install through a USB port
	  ◦ Install by using the Add Printer Wizard
	  ◦ Use the Installer Customization Wizard
	• Set a default printer
	• HP MFP Send Fax driver installation instructions

Chapter 4, HP MFP Send Fax driver	This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP MFP Send Fax driver.
Chapter 5, HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers for MS Windows	This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers for Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000.
Chapter 6, Macintosh	This chapter provides instructions for installing and uninstalling the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology in Macintosh operating systems.
Chapter 7, Engineering details	This chapter contains information about the following special topics: • Remote firmware updates • Print print-ready documents • Paper attributes • Create an output file • Uninstall

For information about the location of information within chapters, see the table of contents. An index is also provided in this STR.

Topics:

- Device features
- Printing-system software
- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology documentation

Device features

The following table contains descriptions of features that are available for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology. Device configurations might vary among countries/regions.

Table 1-2 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology features

Models	• HP CM8060 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology (part number C5957A) • HP CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology (part number C5958A)
Memory	• Standard 1024 megabytes (MB) of random-access memory (RAM). This is the maximum memory for the device • 80 gigabyte (GB) embedded hard disk
User interface	• HP Easy Select control panel provides access to all features • Adjustable backlight • Numeric keypad plus five job-control hard keys • Sleep button to put the device into an energy-saving Sleep mode • On/off button on the control panel
Supported printer personalities	• HP PCL 6 • HP PCL 5 • PostScript® (PS) 3 emulation • Portable-document format (PDF)

Job-storage features	• Job-storage features:
	  ◦ Off
	  ◦ Proof and hold
	  ◦ Personal jobs
	  ◦ Quick Copy
	  ◦ Stored Job
	• Personal-identification number (PIN) printing

Environmental features	• Sleep-mode setting • High content of recyclable components and materials • Energy Star® compliant • Restrictions of Hazardous Substances (RoHS) Directive compliant • Blue Angel

Table 1-2 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology features (continued)

	• Disposal of Waste Equipment by Users in Private Household in the European Union (WEEE) • 508 Compliance
Optional accessories	• HP 4000-Sheet Input Tray (Tray 5) • HP Multifunction Finisher • HP 4-Bin Job Separator • HP Analog Fax Accessory **NOTE:** For a complete list of accessories and part numbers, see the *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.
Connectivity	• Local area network (LAN) (RJ-45) • Hi-Speed USB universal serial bus 2.0 cable interface • Host USB (MS Windows *only*) • Enhanced input/output (EIO) slot for adding an HP Jetdirect print server, a parallel port, or other accessories • Foreign interface harness (FIH) connector

Printing-system software

Topics:

- System requirements
- Operating-system support
- Availability

System requirements

The following operating systems support the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software:

- Windows
- Macintosh
- Linux
- UNIX

Windows

System requirements for 32-bit operating systems

- Pentium® or compatible processor
- CD-ROM or DVD drive, or Web connection
- 220 MB of available hard-disk space
- Network connection, or USB port (USB 1.1 or 2.0)
- Windows Vista: 1–GHz processor with 512 MB RAM
- Windows XP: 333-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- Windows Server 2003: 550-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- Windows 2000: 133-MHz processor with 64 MB RAM

System requirements for 64-bit operating systems

- Pentium® or compatible processor
- CD-ROM or DVD drive, or Web connection
- 220 MB of available hard-disk space
- Network connection, or USB port (USB 1.1 or 2.0)
- Windows Vista 64–Bit Edition: 800 MHz processor with 512 MB RAM
- Windows XP 64–Bit Edition: 333-MHz processor with 512 MB RAM
- Windows Server 2003 64–Bit Edition: 550-MHz processor with 512 MB RAM

Macintosh

For information about Macintosh support for the device, see Macintosh on page 249 in this STR.

Linux

For information about Linux support for the device, see the following HP Linux Web site:

www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting

UNIX

For information about UNIX® support for the device, see the following Web sites:

- www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software
- www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts

Operating-system support

MS Windows operating systems provide full-featured support for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology. Operating systems that are *not* described in this STR provide varying levels of functionality.

Throughout this STR, MS Windows XP is used to denote Windows XP Professional and Windows XP Home Edition, unless noted otherwise. Information about MS Windows XP also applies to MS Windows Server 2003, unless noted otherwise.

Information relating to networking functions is specific to devices that have network capabilities.

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology software has *not* been tested with and is *not* supported in the following operating systems:

- MS Windows 3.1*x*
- MS Windows 95
- MS Windows 98
- MS Windows Millennium Edition (Me)
- MS Windows NT® 4.0
- IA-64-bit operating systems

Print drivers for these operating systems are *not* included on the printing-system installation CDs and are *not* available on the Web. Other drivers that are installed in these non-supported operating systems might work for the device, but some print-driver features and functions might not be available.

For more information about the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology, go to one of the following Web sites:

- www.hp.com/support/CM8060edgeline
- www.hp.com/support/CM8050edgeline

Topics:

- Standalone drivers
- Print driver support in other operating systems

Standalone drivers

The following operating systems support the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software, including the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, PS Emulation drivers, the HP MFP Send Fax driver, and the HP Universal Print Drivers (available on the Web *only*):

- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows XP Professional (Service pack 1 and later; 32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows XP Home Edition (32-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows 2000 (Service pack 4 recommended)

Print driver support in other operating systems

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology is also supported in the following operating systems:

- Mac OS X (V10.2.8, V10.3.9, V10.4 and later). See Macintosh on page 249 in this STR for more information.
- MS Windows Terminal Server
- Citrix Terminal Server. For more information, go to the following Web site:

  h20000.ww2.hp.com/bizsupport/TechSupport/Document.jsp

  Alternatively, go to the HP.com Web site and search for "c00213455".
- MS Windows Cluster Server 8
- HP OpenVMS. For more information, go to the following Web site:

  h71000.www7.hp.com/openvms/print/
- Tru64 UNIX printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:

  h30097.www3.hp.com/printing/
- SAP printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:

  www.hp.com/go/sap/print
- HP Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW). Available *only* at the following Web site:

  www.hp.com/go/inpw_software

Availability

Download the printing-system software from the Web, or order it on a CD from HP fulfillment centers.

NOTE: This STR describes drivers that are shipped on the printing-system software installation CDs. This STR does *not* describe any drivers that might be released by support personnel.

Topics:

- Printing-system software on the Web
- In-box printing-system software CDs

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the printing-system installation CDs is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The HP Web sites offer an option for automatic e-mail notification of new software releases.

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software is available for download at the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/go/CM8060edgeline_sw

www.hp.com/go/CM8050edgeline_sw

In-box printing-system software CDs

The printing-system installation CDs for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology contain a variety of files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

Three CDs are included with the device:

- **Windows (part number: C5956–61403)**. Contains the printer-driver installer for Windows operating systems, user documentation, the **Installer Customization Wizard**, and links to the HP Universal Print Drivers (UPD) on the Web.
- **Macintosh (part number: C5956–61105)**. Contains the printer-driver installer for Macintosh operating systems and user documentation.
- **System Administrator's CD (part number: C5956–61404)**. Contains user documentation and administrator documentation.

Each printing-system installation CD includes the necessary software and files to install and uninstall the printing-system components.

Documentation in languages that are *not* included on the CDs (CR = Croatian, RO = Romanian, SL = Slovenian) is available at the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/support/CM8060edgeline

www.hp.com/support/CM8050edgeline

Topics:

- Windows installation CD
- Windows installation CD languages

Windows installation CD

The root directory in the MS Windows printing-system installation CD contains the AUTORUN.EXE file, the SETUP.EXE file, support files, and the following directories:

- Autorun
- Drivers
- Fonts
- HP TCP Port Monitor
- Inst Eng
- Manuals

The printing-system files for each language reside in the following directories:

- Drivers
- Manuals

To view the files:

1. Insert the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows installation CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Right-click **Start**.
3. Click **Explore**, and then select the CD-ROM drive.

Windows installation CD languages

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows installation CD contains printing-system software in the following languages:

- **Windows installation CD (part number C5956–61104):**
  - AR = Arabic
  - CA = Catalan (Català)
  - CS = Czech (Cesky)
  - DA = Danish (Dansk)
  - DE = German (Deutsch)
  - EL = Greek
  - EN = English
  - ES = Spanish (Español)
  - FI = Finnish (Suomi)
  - FR = French (Français)
  - HE = Hebrew

- HU = Hungarian (Magyar)
- ID = Indonesia (Bahasa)
- IT = Italian (Italiano)
- JA = Japanese
- KO = Korean
- NL = Dutch (Nederland)
- NO = Norwegian (Norsk)
- PL = Polish (Polski)
- PT = Brazilian Portuguese (Português)
- RU = Russian (Russ)
- SK = Slovak
- SV = Swedish (Svenska)
- TH = Thai
- TR = Turkish (Turkçe)
- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese

The following tables list the Windows printing-system software components that are supported in each language.

Table 1-3 Windows installation CD—(table 1 of 3)

Component	AR	CA	CS	DA	DE	EL	EN	ES	FI
HP MFP Send Fax driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 6 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 5 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
PS Emulation driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 5 Universal print driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP PS Emulation Universal driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Common MS Windows Installer	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Add Printer Wizard Installer	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 1-3 Windows installation CD—(table 1 of 3) (continued)

Component	AR	CA	CS	DA	DE	EL	EN	ES	FI
Installer Customization Wizard	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Fonts			x	x	x		x		x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide (.PDF file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide (.CHM file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Software Technical Reference							x		
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.PDF file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.CHM file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Hewlett-Packard CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Component	AR	CA	CS	DA	DE	EL	EN	ES	FI
MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel									

Table 1-4 Windows installation CD—(table 2 of 3)

Component	FR	HE	HU	ID	IT	JA	KO	NL	NO
HP MFP Send Fax driver	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 6 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 5 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
PS Emulation driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 5 Universal print driver	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
HP PS Emulation Universal driver	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
Common MS Windows Installer	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
Add Printer Wizard Installer	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
Installer Customization Wizard	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
CD Browser	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
Fonts	x		x					x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide (.PDF file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide (.CHM file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 1-4 Windows installation CD—(table 2 of 3) (continued)

Component	FR	HE	HU	ID	IT	JA	KO	NL	NO
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Software Technical Reference									
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.PDF file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.CHM file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Hewlett-Packard CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel	x	x	x		x			x	x

Table 1-5 Windows installation CD—(table 3 of 3)

Component	PL	PT	RU	SK	SV	TH	TR	ZHCN	ZHTW
HP MFP Send Fax driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 6 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 5 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
PS Emulation driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 5 Universal print driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP PS Emulation Universal driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 1-5 Windows installation CD—(table 3 of 3) (continued)

Component	PL	PT	RU	SK	SV	TH	TR	ZHCN	ZHTW
Common MS Windows Installer	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Add Printer Wizard Installer	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Installer Customization Wizard	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Fonts	x	x	x	x			x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide (.PDF file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide (.CHM file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Software Technical Reference									
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.PDF file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.CHM file)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Hewlett-Packard CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 1-5 Windows installation CD—(table 3 of 3) (continued)

Component	PL	PT	RU	SK	SV	TH	TR	ZHCN	ZHTW
Technology Printing-system Install Notes									
HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel	x	x	x	x	x		x		

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology documentation

All three CDs that are included with the device contain documentation.

Documentation in languages that are *not* included on the CDs (CR = Croatian, RO = Romanian, SL = Slovenian) is available at the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/support/CM8060edgeline

www.hp.com/support/CM8050edgeline

Access to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology documents depends on the document type and location:

- Some documents can be opened from the CD Browser.
- Some documents appear on the software CD and can *only* be opened by navigating to the folder where they reside.
- Some documents are available on the Web through links in the CD Browser or CD folders.

Documents are available in the following file formats:

- **Portable document Format (.PDF).** The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software CD includes Adobe® Acrobat® Reader for viewing documentation that is opened from the CD Browser. To view documentation that is opened by navigating to the folder where they reside, Adobe Acrobat Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:

  www.adobe.com

- **Compiled HTML (.CHM, Windows only).** When you click a documentation link to a .CHM document, a Microsoft HTML Viewer opens the file on the computer screen.
- **Hypertext markup (.HTM).** When you click a documentation link to an .HTM document, a Web browser opens the file on the computer screen.

The following table lists the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology documents that are available for each operating system.

Table 1-6 CD documentation availability

Document	Windows CD	Macintosh CD	System Administrator's CD (Windows/ Mac)
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide (.CHM and .PDF)	x	x	x
Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes	x		x
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel	x	x	x
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide			x

Table 1-6 CD documentation availability (continued)

Document	Windows CD	Macintosh CD	System Administrator's CD (Windows/ Mac)
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Software Technical Reference			x[1]
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.CHM and .PDF)			x
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide			x
Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide			x

[1] The *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Software Technical Reference* (part number C5956–90412) is available on the Web at www.hp.com/support/CM8060edgeline, or by accessing the System Administrator's CD and clicking on the Software Technical Reference button that will redirect you to the URL.

Topics:

- Windows installation CD
- Macintosh installation CD
- System Administrator's CD

Windows installation CD

On the main screen of the Windows printing-system software CD Browser, click **User Documentation** to open the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology documentation screen, as shown in the following figure. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

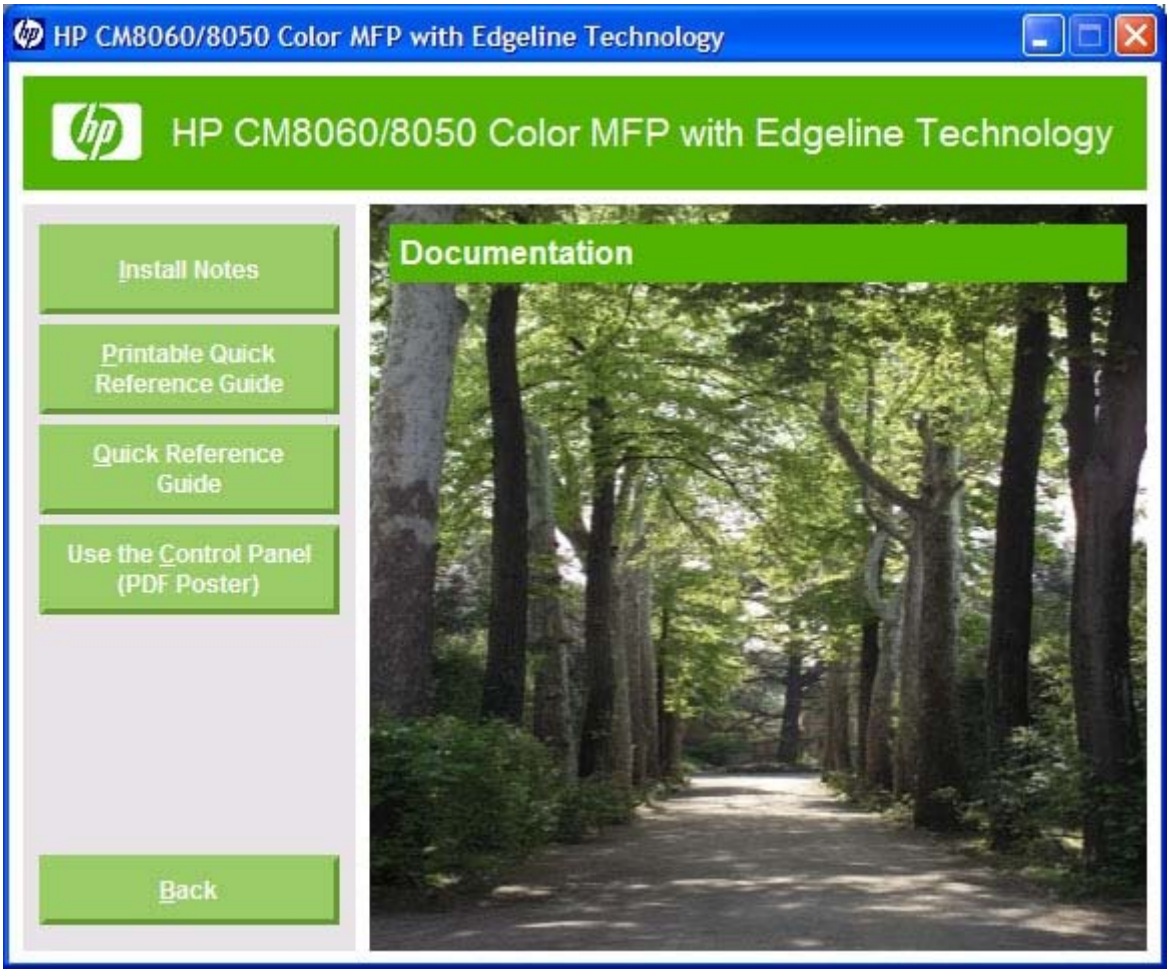


Figure 1-1 Windows installation CD documentation screen

Topics:

- Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes
- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide
- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel (PDF Poster)

Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes

The *Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes* (in .HTM format) contains important information about device features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.

View this guide from the Windows software CD:

1. On the main screen of the Windows installation CD Browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **Install Notes**.

Gain access to the file:

1. Insert the Windows software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_INSTALLNOTE_XXWW.HTM

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_INSTALLNOTE_FRWW.HTM.

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide

The *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide* describes device operation and maintenance.

View this guide from the Windows software CD:

1. On the main screen of the Windows installation CD Browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **Quick Reference Guide**.

The guide opens as an MS Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

Gain access to the file:

1. Insert the Windows software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_QUICKREF_XXWW.CHM

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_QUICK_REF_FRWW.CHM.

The *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide* is also provided as a printable .PDF file. Print the guide:

1. On the main screen of the Windows installation CD Browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **Printable Quick Reference Guide** to open the guide.
3. Print the guide.

Gain access to the file:

NOTE: To view documentation that is opened by navigating to the folder where they reside, Adobe Acrobat Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:

www.adobe.com

1. Insert the Windows software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_QUICK_REF_XXWW.PDF

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_QUICK_REF_FRWW.PDF.

When the file is open, click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel (PDF Poster)

The *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel* is a graphical guide that provides information about using the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology control panel.

View this guide from the Windows software CD:

1. On the main screen of the Windows installation CD Browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **Use the Control Panel (PDF Poster)**.

Gain access to the file:

NOTE: To view documentation that is opened by navigating to the folder where they reside, Adobe Acrobat Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:

www.adobe.com

1. Insert the Windows software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_POSTER_XXWW.PDF

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_POSTER_FRWW.PDF.

Macintosh installation CD

For information about documentation on the Macintosh installation CD, see Macintosh on page 249 in this STR.

System Administrator's CD

To view the documentation on the System Administrator's CD, insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive. The System Administrator's CD contains user documentation and system administrator documentation for Windows and Macintosh operating systems.

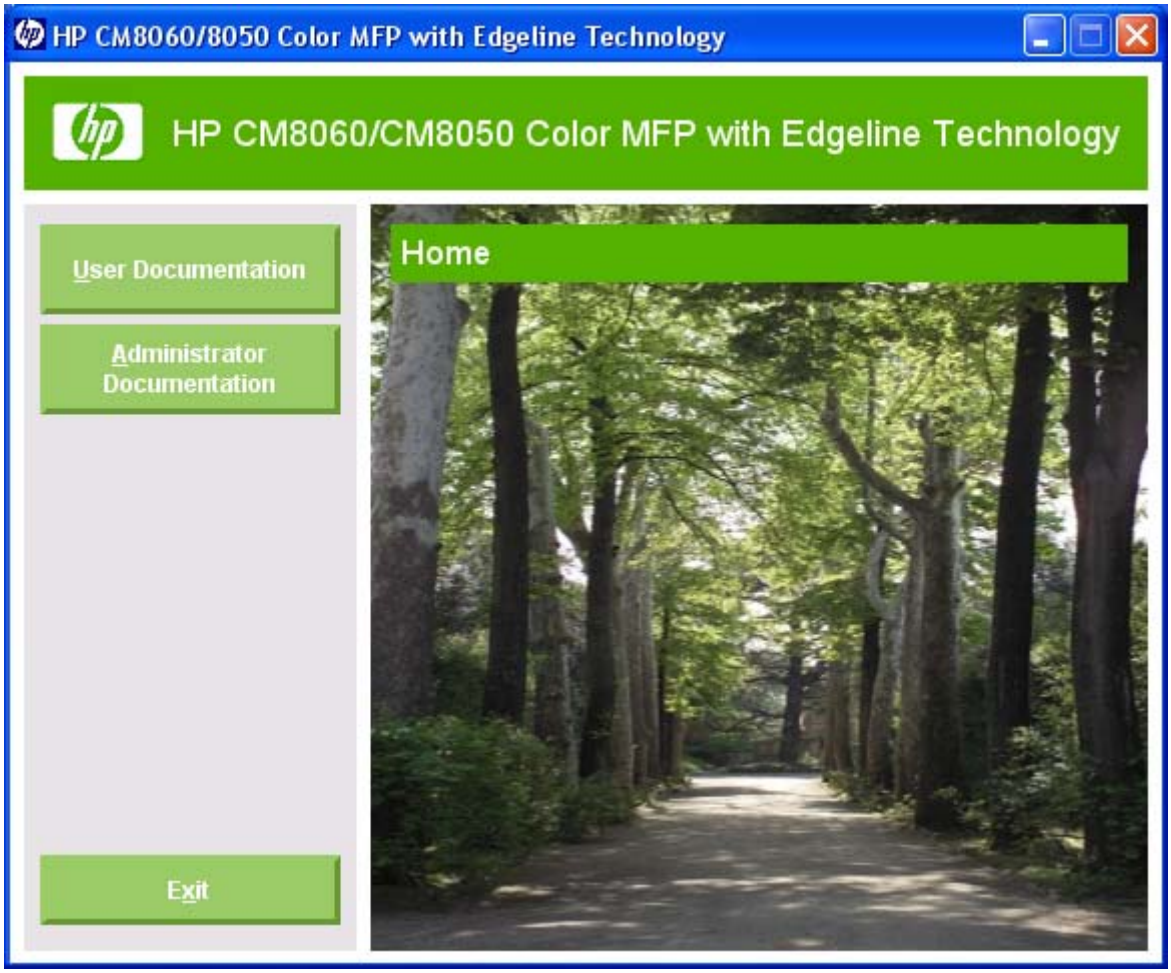


Figure 1-2 System Administrator's CD screen

Topics:

- User Documentation
- Administrator Documentation

User Documentation

On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **User Documentation** to open the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology user documentation screen, as shown in the following figure. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

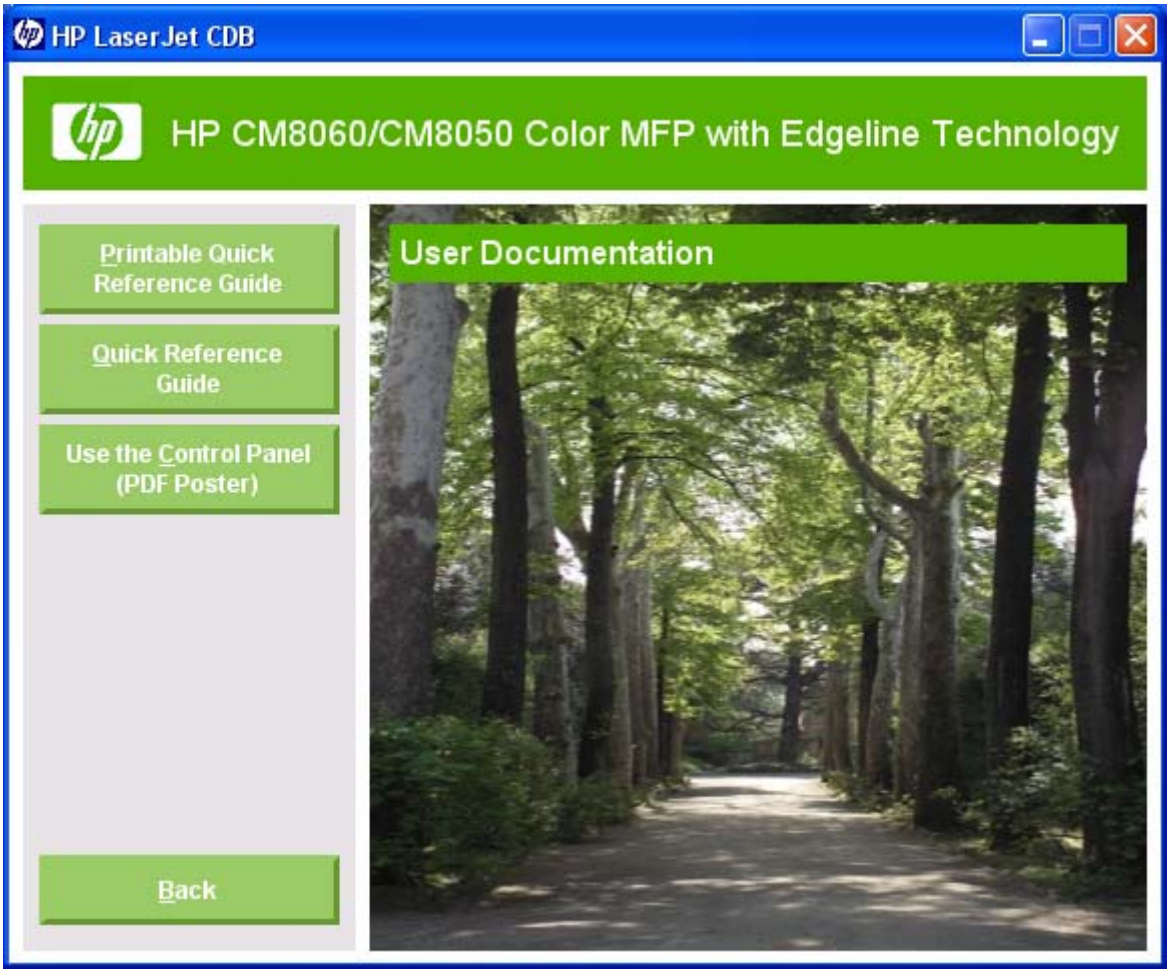


Figure 1-3 System Administrator's CD User Documentation screen

Topics:

- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide
- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel (PDF Poster)

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide

The *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide* describes device operation and maintenance.

View this guide from the System Administrator's software CD:

1. On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **Quick Reference Guide**.

The guide opens as an MS Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

Gain access to the file:

1. Insert the System Administrator's software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_QUICKREF_XXWW.CHM

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_QUICKREF_FRWW.CHM.

The *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Quick Reference Guide* is also provided as a printable .PDF file. Print the guide:

1. On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **Printable Quick Reference Guide** to open the guide.
3. Print the guide.

Gain access to the file:

NOTE: To view documentation that is opened by navigating to the folder where they reside, Adobe Acrobat Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:

www.adobe.com

1. Insert the System Administrator's CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_QUICKREF_XXWW.PDF

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_QUICKREF_FRWW.PDF.

When the file is open, click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel (PDF Poster)

The *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Use the Control Panel* is a graphical guide that provides information about using the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology control panel.

View this guide from the Windows software CD:

1. On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **Use the Control Panel (PDF Poster)**.

Gain access to the file:

NOTE: To view documentation that is opened by navigating to the folder where they reside, Adobe Acrobat Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:

www.adobe.com

1. Insert the System Administrator's software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_POSTER_XXWW.PDF

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. In French, the file name is HPCM80X0_POSTER_FRWW.PDF.

Administrator Documentation

On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation** to open the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology administrator documentation screen, as shown in the following figure. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

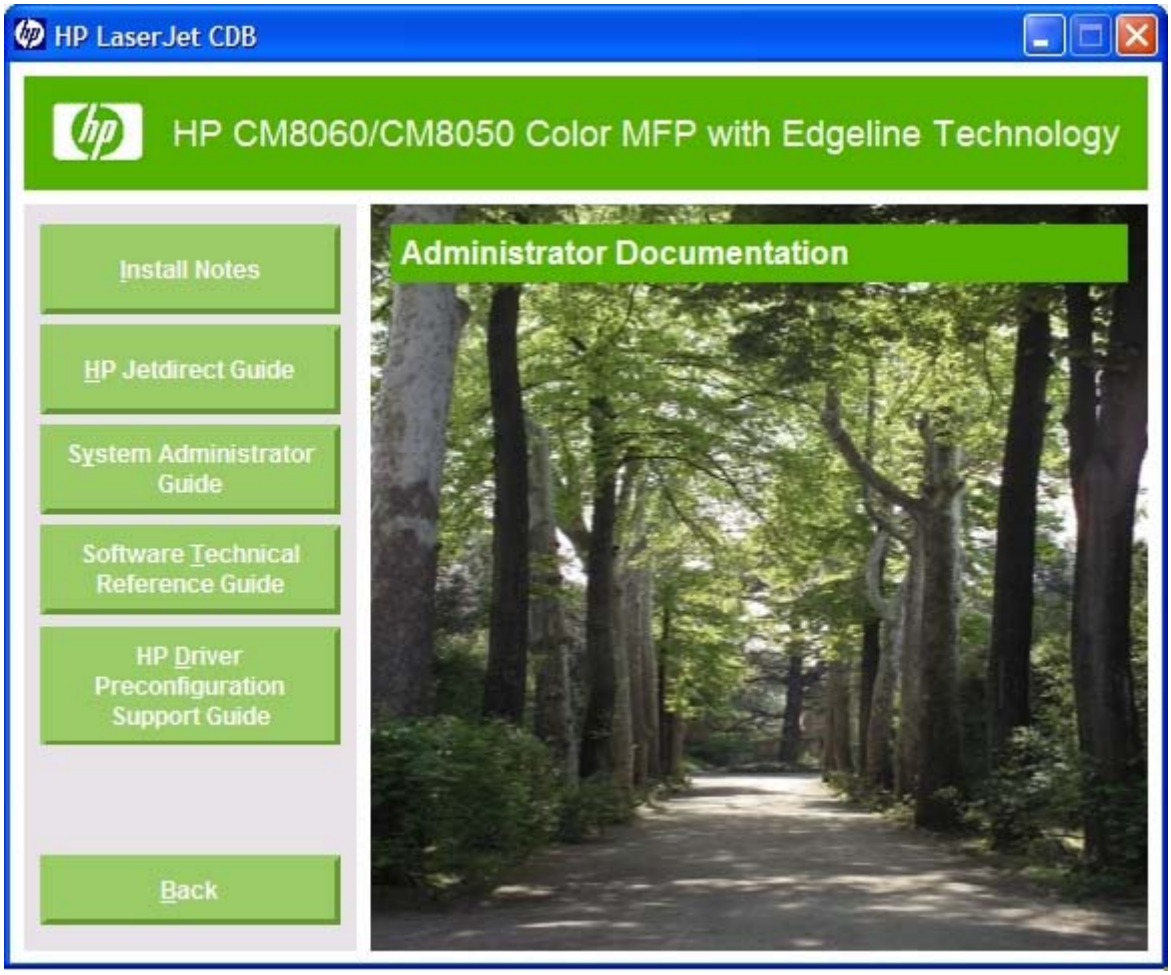


Figure 1-4 System Administrator's CD Administrator Documentation screen

Topics:

- Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes
- HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide
- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide
- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Software Technical Reference
- HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide
- Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide

Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes

The *Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes* (in .HTM format) contains important information about device features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.

View this guide from the System Administrator's software CD:

1. On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **Install Notes**.

Gain access to the file:

1. Insert the System Administrator's CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_INSTALLNOTE_XXWW.HTM

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_INSTALLNOTE_FRWW.HTM.

HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide

The *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide* is a network administrator guide (in .CHM and .PDF format) that contains information about connecting the device directly to a network.

View this guide from the System Administrator's CD:

1. On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Jetdirect Guide**.

Gain access to the file:

NOTE: To view documentation that is opened by navigating to the folder where they reside, Adobe Acrobat Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:

www.adobe.com

1. Insert the System Administrator's CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPJDIAG_XXWW.PDF

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPJDIAG_FRWW.PDF.

When the file is open, click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

The guide can also be accessed as an MS Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

Gain access to the .CHM file:

1. Insert the System Administrator's CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPJDIAG_XXWW.CHM

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPJDIAG__FRWW.CHM.

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide

This guide provides information about product operation, troubleshooting, warranty and specifications, supplies, and support.

View this guide from the System Administrator's CD:

1. On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **System Administrator Guide**.

Gain access to the file:

1. Insert the System Administrator's CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_SYSADMIN_XXWW.HTM

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_SYSADMIN_FRWW.HTM.

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Software Technical Reference

This guide provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software.

View this guide from the System Administrator's CD:

1. On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **Software Technical Reference Guide**.
3. To be redirected to support, click on the following Web site: www.hp.com/support/CM8060edgeline.

Gain access to the file:

1. Insert the System Administrator's CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_SOFTTECHREF_XXWW.HTM

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_SOFTTECHREF_FRWW.HTM.

HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide

The *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide* contains important information about preconfiguring printing-system drivers before installation in network environments.

View this guide from the System Administrator's CD:

1. On the main screen of the System Administrator's CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide**.

Gain access to the file:

NOTE: To view documentation that is opened by navigating to the folder where they reside, Adobe Acrobat Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:

www.adobe.com

1. Insert the System Administrator's CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_XXWW.PDF

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_FRWW.PDF.

When the file is open, click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide

The printing-system Installer Customization Wizard enables a system administrator to change the installer defaults after the print-driver installation package has been created using the customization wizard. This allows a system administrator to use a single distribution package and preset options for installation in a response file that is unique for the target user. The customized installer is then ready for installation by end users.

The *Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide* describes the basic files needed to customize the distribution package and initiate the installation.

NOTE: The *Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide* assumes that the user understands XML formatting and has the proper tools to create and modify XML files.

Gain access to the file:

1. Insert the System Administrator's software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

   HPCM80X0_CUSTINSTALL_XXWW.HTM

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPCM80X0_CUSTINSTALL_FRWW.HTM

2 Software description

Introduction

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology comes with software and installers for MS Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems also support the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology, and software is available on the Web. For information about specific system installers, print drivers, and components, see the section for that operating system.

Topics:

- MS Windows printing-system software
- Windows driver configuration
- HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool
- HP Embedded Web Server
- HP Web Jetadmin

MS Windows printing-system software

Topics:

- Printing system and installer
- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology drivers

Printing system and installer

Topics:

- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software CD for MS Windows systems
- Installer features

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software CD for MS Windows systems

In the MS Windows environment (Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000), insert the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive to open an interactive CD Browser. Use the CD Browser to install the print drivers and related components, to gain access to online user documentation, and to gain access to optional HP software, including an installer customization utility.

The following figure shows the main screen of the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows printing-system software CD.

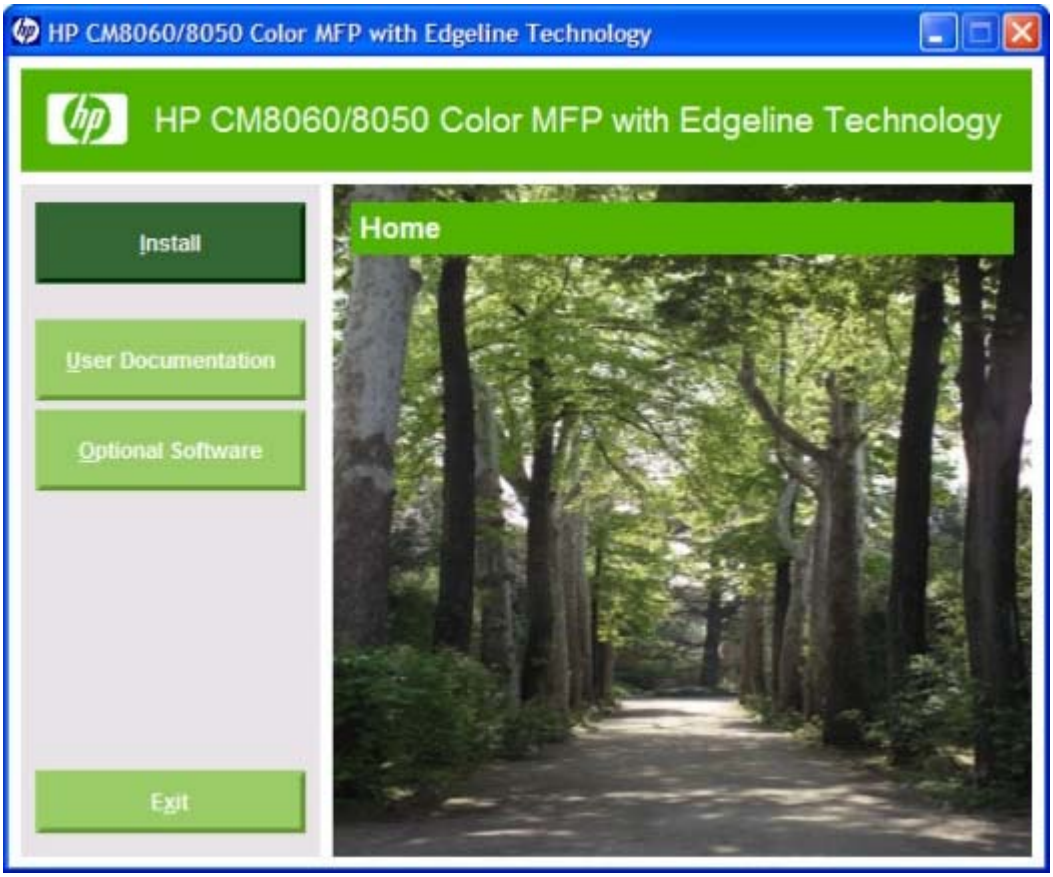


Figure 2-1 Windows installation software CD Browser

If the main screen does not appear when you insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive, follow these steps to open the Windows installation CD Browser:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Click **Run**.
3. Click **Browse...** and navigate to the root directory of the Windows software CD.
4. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file to start the installer.

The main screen of the Windows software CD Browser contains installation, user documentation, and software options in the left panel. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

NOTE: The options available for each device might differ from those in the figure.

Install. The installation wizard guides the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software installation. Select a Typical Installation, a Typical with Fax Installation, or a Custom Installation. If you select Typical Installation, only the necessary software is installed. If you select Custom Installation, select the components that you want to install.

User Documentation. Use this option to view theHP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology user documentation. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the document in the right panel.

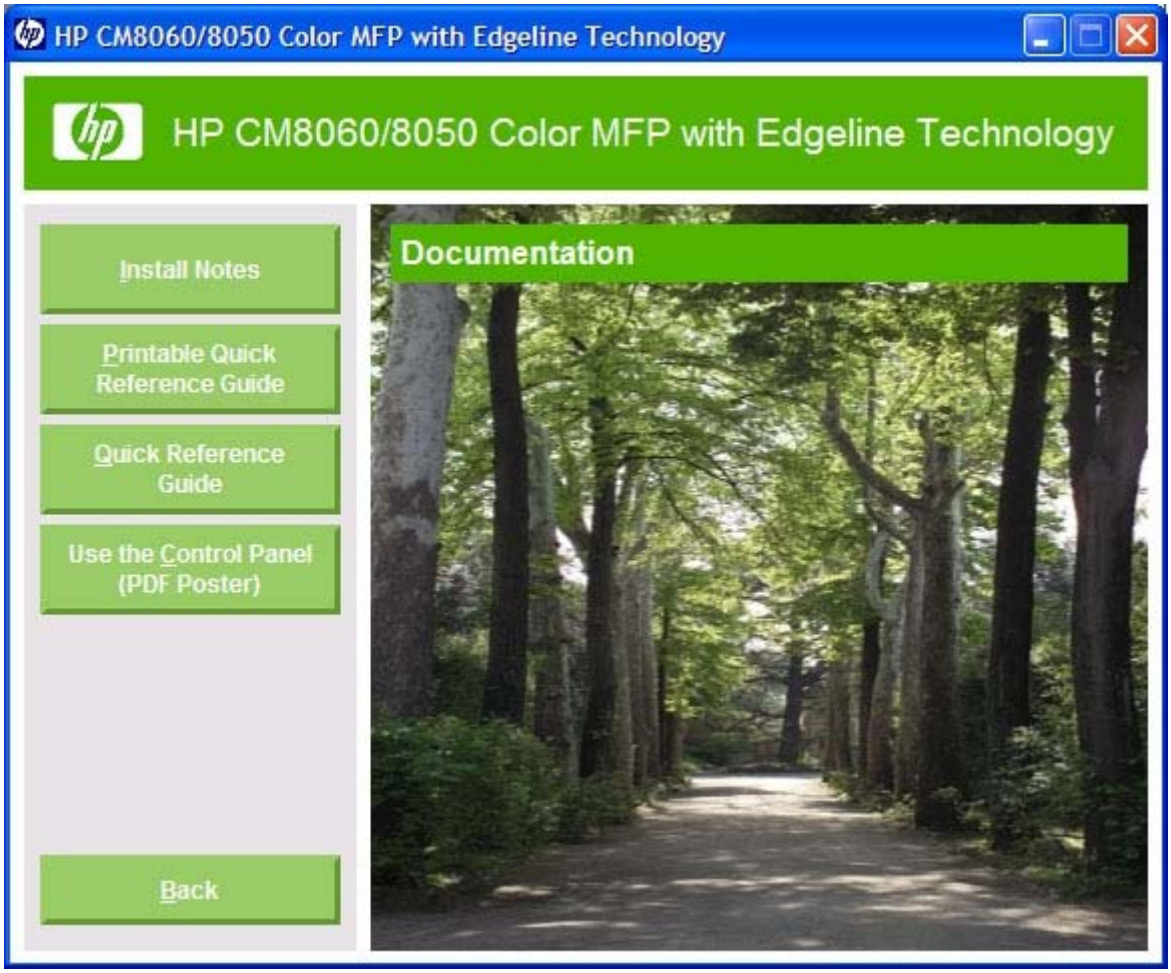


Figure 2-2 Documentation screen

The following document options are available:

- **Install Notes**
- **Printable Quick Reference Guide**
- **Quick Reference Guide (Interactive)**
- **Use the Control Panel (PDF Poster)**

Click **Back** to return to the main Windows CD Browser screen.

NOTE: If Adobe Acrobat Reader 4.0 or later is not installed, click any of the links to a portable document format (.PDF) document to open it in a version of Adobe Acrobat Reader that runs from the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software CD. The CD browser version of Acrobat Reader is in English only, but can be used to open localized versions of .PDF documents. The Adobe Acrobat Reader software is *not* installed on the computer and can only run while the printing-system software CD is in the CD-ROM drive. Adobe Acrobat Reader is also available at the following Web site:

www.adobe.com

Optional Software. Use this option to view theHP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology optional software. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the document in the right panel.

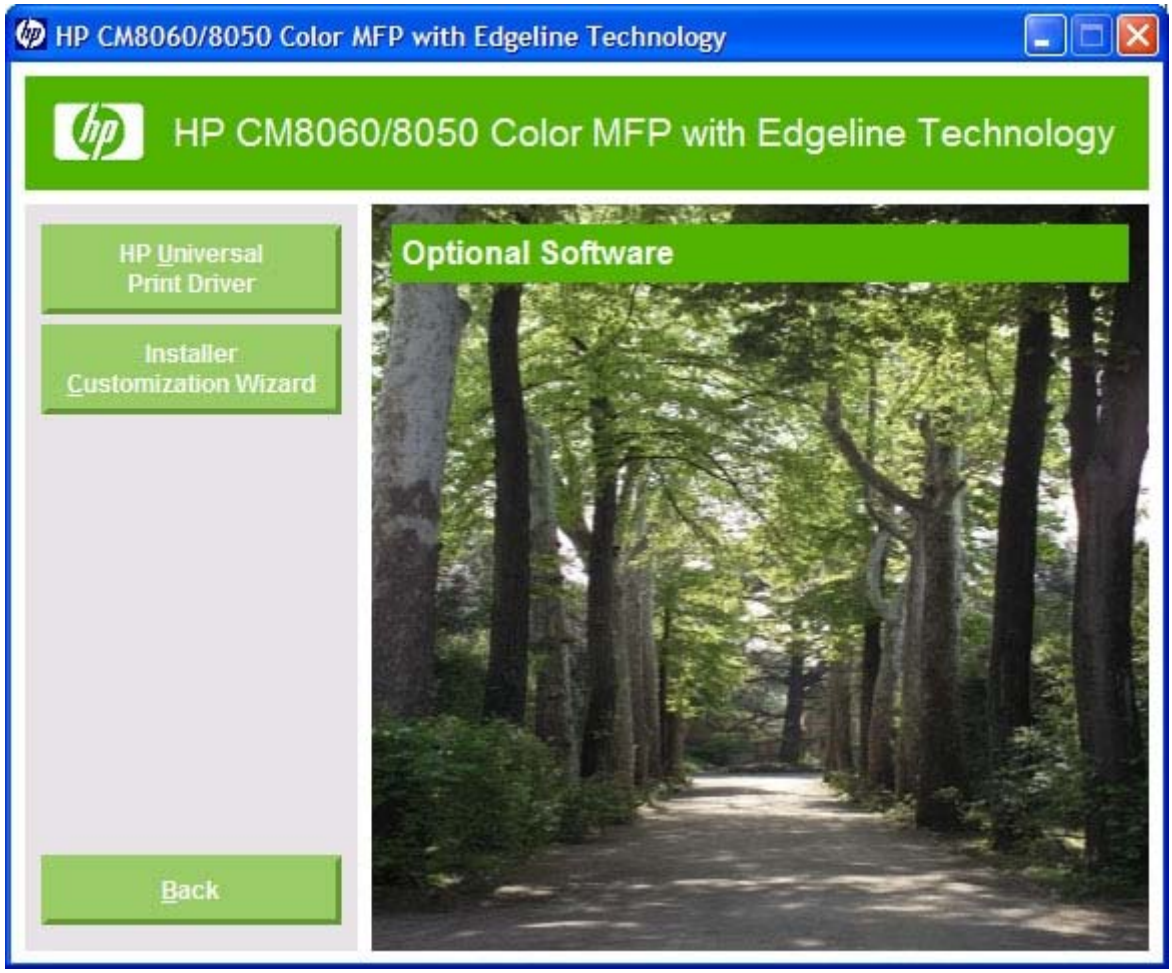


Figure 2-3 Optional Software screen

The following optional software programs are available for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology:

- **HP Universal Print Driver** (UPD). Use this option to link to the HP Web site, where you can download the HP PCL 6 UPD, the HP PCL5 UPD, and the HP PS Emulation UPD.
- **Installer Customization Wizard**. Use this wizard to customize the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology installer by presetting the installation options in a response file. The resulting customized installer can then be used for silent, unattended installation.

Installer features

The common installer is designed to provide a simple and consistent installation method for the device. The common installer is available for the Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000 operating systems.

The common installer offers the following features:

- The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows printing-system software CD features an interactive software interface.
- Network connection is integrated, so a networked device can be connected to and drivers can be installed on that device in a single process.
- The selection dialog box sets the operating-system language as the default language. Use the installer to select any of the languages on the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows printing-system software CD.

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows printing-system software CD also includes the following features:

- The ability to uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software by using the **Modify Installation** option.
- The HP **Installer Customization Wizard** for custom installations.

All of the MS Windows system components are installed by using the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows printing-system installer. The installer automatically detects the operating system and the default language. Select from the following installation types:

- Typical Installation
- Typical with Fax Installation
- Custom Installation

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology drivers

HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology drivers provide the printing features and communication between the computer and the device. The printing system includes software for end users and system administrators who are working in the following operating systems:

- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows 2000

  MS Windows 64-bit drivers for Windows Vista, Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 are available for the following systems:

  - AMD Athlon 64, AMD Opteron, Intel Xeon, or Pentium 4 with EMT64

NOTE: For the latest information about the printing-system software components, see the readme files on the Windows CD. For additional information about installing the printing-system software, see the *Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes* on the Windows printing-system software CD or on the System Administrator's CD.

All of the print drivers provide access to paper-handling and print-quality features.

Topics:

- Select the best print driver
- HP print and fax drivers

- Driver version numbers for MS Windows operating systems

Select the best print driver

HP print drivers are designed for different environments and uses. See the print driver Help for available features.

Topics:

- Complete printing system
- HP PCL 6 driver
- HP PCL 5 driver
- PS Emulation driver
- HP Universal Print Driver

Complete printing system

Use the Windows printing-system software CD to install the full set of drivers and other software for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology.

HP PCL 6 driver

The HP PCL 6 driver provides the best performance, print quality, and printer-feature support for most users. The driver aligns with MS Windows graphic device interface (GDI) for best performance in MS Windows environments.

The HP PCL 6 driver may not be fully compatible with third party and custom solutions that are based on PCL 5.

HP PCL 5 driver

The HP PCL 5 driver is recommended for general office printing in MS Windows environments. The driver is compatible with previous version of PCL and legacy HP devices.

The HP PCL 5 driver is the best choice for:

- Any third party or home-grown custom solutions that use forms, fonts, and SAP programs.
- Any environment with mixed operating-systems (such as UNIX, Linux, and mainframe).

PS Emulation driver

The PS Emulation driver is recommended for printing with Adobe or other graphics-rich software programs. The driver is compatible with postscript level-3 and supports postscript font DIMMs.

Use the PS Emulation driver in primarily postcript-specific software programs such as Adobe and Corel.

HP Universal Print Driver

The HP PCL6, HP PCL 5, and HP PS emulation universal print drivers are designed for corporate or IT-managed MS Windows environments. These drivers provide a single PCL 6, PCL 5, or PS emulation driver for use with multiple device models.

The HP universal print drivers are recommended when printing to multiple device models from a mobile MS Windows computer.

The HP universal print drivers can be downloaded from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/universalprintdriver

NOTE: The HP universal print drivers support most, but *not* all of the features of the HP PCL 6, HP PCL 5, and HP PS Emulation drivers.

HP print and fax drivers

The following drivers are available on the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows printing-system software CD:

- HP MFP Send Fax driver for Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000
- HP PCL 6 driver for Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000
- HP PCL 5 driver for Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000
- The HP Postscript 3 Emulation driver (PS Emulation driver) for Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000

NOTE: During a Typical Installation of the printing-system software, the HP PCL 6 driver is installed by default for Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000.

Table 2-1 Drivers included with the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows CD

Operating System	HP MFP Send Fax driver	HP PCL 6 driver	HP PCL 5 driver	PS Emulation driver
Windows Vista	x	x	x	x
Windows XP	x	x	x	x
Windows Server 2003	x	x	x	x
Windows 2000	x	x	x	x

Driver version numbers for MS Windows operating systems

Access to driver version numbers depends on the operating system in which the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology is installed.

NOTE: For a list of HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology drivers, updated HP printing-system software, and product-support information, go to one of the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/support/CM8060edgeline

www.hp.com/support/CM8050edgeline

The Windows Vista operating system supports the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, PS Emulation drivers, and the HP MFP Send Fax driver. The Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000 operating systems support the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers, and the HP MFP Send Fax driver. If you are using an HP driver in any of these operating systems, follow these steps to find driver-version information:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **About** tab.

To determine the latest version, compare the overall build number (in parenthesis after the model name) and the GPD number (in the Driver Files: field). If the overall build number has increased, this is the latest version of the driver.

If the overall build number is the same, check the version number of the GPD file. The driver that has the highest GPD version number is the latest driver.

Windows driver configuration

The HP PCL 6, PCL 5, PS Emulation drivers and the HP MFP Send Fax driver feature bidirectional communication technology which, in operating systems and environments that support the drivers, provide automatic discovery and driver configuration for device accessories at the time of installation.

Some accessories that are automatically discovered and configured include optional paper trays and optional output bins.

Topics:

- Driver autoconfiguration
- Bidirectional communication
- Enterprise AutoConfiguration
- Update Now
- HP Driver Preconfiguration

Driver autoconfiguration

Automatic discovery and driver autoconfiguration through bidirectional communication occurs in the following circumstances:

- When a print driver is installed by using the Windows Installation CD
- When a print driver is installed by using Windows Plug-and-Play

NOTE: For information about Windows Plug-and-Play installation, see the *Hewlett-Packard CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Printing-system Install Notes*, which is available on the Windows installation CD and on the System Administrator's CD.

- When you use the **Update Now** feature for a driver that is already installed

However, as shown in the following table, driver autoconfiguration and EAC are *not* available in Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 (32-bit) operating systems over a direct connection when the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology is installed by using the Add Printer Wizard.

Table 2-2 Availability of automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003

Connection type	Common installer	Add Printer Wizard install	Windows Plug-and-Play install
Network	Yes	Yes	Yes
Direct connection	Yes	No	Yes

Bidirectional communication

In operating systems and environments that support bidirectional communication, the computer communicates with the device during installation, determines the physical configuration, and then configures the driver accordingly.

Bidirectional communication is the capability of the device to respond to data inquiries from the computer and report information back, such as what type of paper is available or what accessories are connected to the device. Bidirectional communication depends on the network operating system and on the type of connection that exists between the computer and the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology. If the connection does not have this capability (that is, if it has no bidirectional mode), it can only accept commands from the host and cannot report information back to the host computer.

Enterprise AutoConfiguration

Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC) uses bidirectional communication to provide autoconfiguration functionality for installation of the print driver over a network, whether you use the installer on the Windows printing-system software CD or the Add Printer Wizard to install the driver. Driver installation that includes EAC is configured with the same settings as the physical configuration of the device. Configuration occurs without user interaction.

If bidirectional-communication software has been installed previously, EAC is not activated, and the pre-existing bidirectional-communication software is used to configure the print driver.

If bidirectional communication software has not been installed, EAC installs bidirectional-communication software that allows it to communicate with the device and automatically match the print driver with the actual device configuration. EAC is activated during installation of the driver or whenever the **Update Now** feature is used.

If the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology configuration changes after installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication by using the **Update Now** feature.

Update Now

If the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology configuration has been modified since installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in operating systems and environments that support bidirectional communication. Use the **Update Now** feature to automatically reflect the new configuration in the driver. For example, if the device is installed and an optional accessory is added later, use the **Update Now** feature to query the device and update the settings to match the new device configuration.

The feature automatically updates the registry and changes the configuration information that appears on the **Device Settings** tab of the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers.

NOTE: The **Update Now** feature does not have to be selected for the HP MFP Send Fax driver to update.

Every time the HP MFP Send Fax driver is accessed, the driver automatically queries the print driver to see if any changes have been made that would affect the HP MFP Send Fax driver configuration. The HP MFP Send Fax driver is automatically updated with any changes.

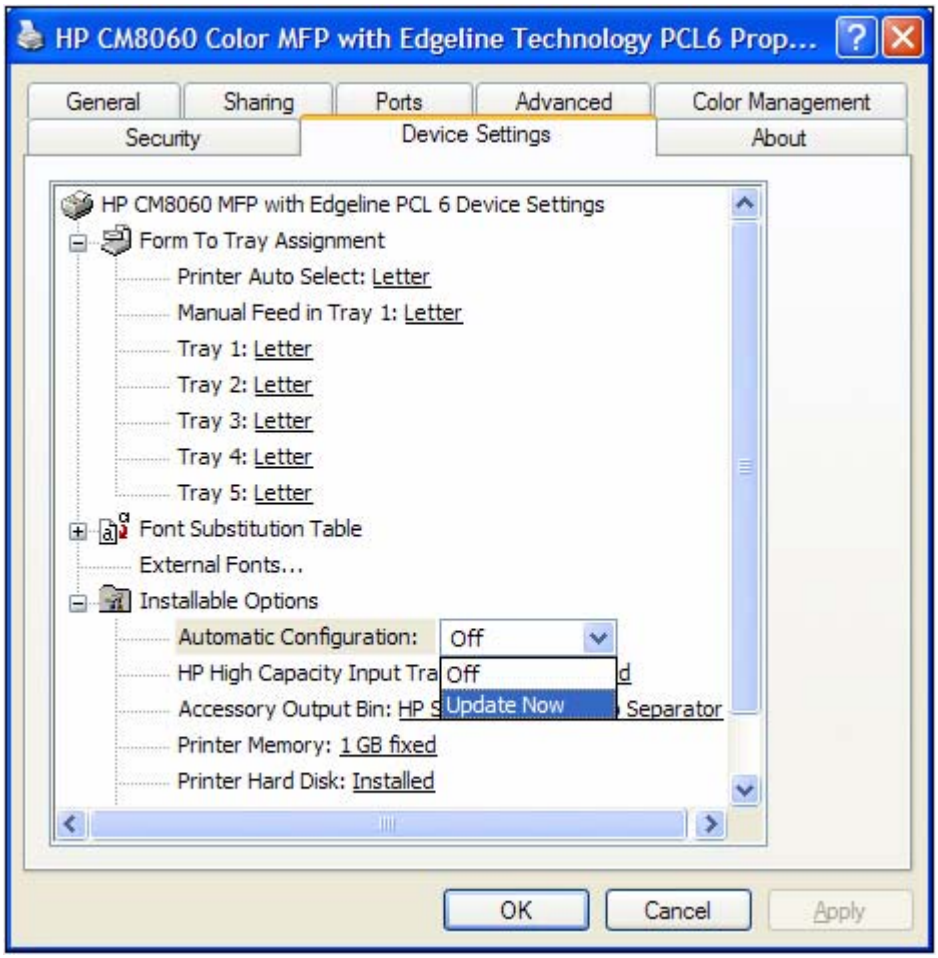


Figure 2-4 **Update Now** dialog box

To activate the **Update Now** feature for these drivers:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.

   For Windows Vista, click **Control Panel**, and then under **Hardware and Sound**, double-click on**Printer**.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click **Device Settings**.
6. If necessary, click **Installable Options** to expand the menu and show the options.
7. In the **Automatic Configuration** drop-down menu, select **Update Now**.
8. Click **OK**.

HP Driver Preconfiguration

HP Driver Preconfiguration is a software architecture and set of tools for customizing and distributing HP printing-system software in managed corporate printing environments. Using HP Driver Preconfiguration information, system administrators in corporate and enterprise environments can preconfigure the printing and device defaults for HP print drivers before installing the drivers in the network environment.

HP Driver Preconfiguration is most beneficial when configuring print drivers for multiple workstations or print servers for print queues that share the same configuration. Two types of features can be configured:

- Device settings
- Printing-preferences settings

HP Driver Preconfiguration configures the driver to match the accessories that are installed on the device, or to match the settings that system administrators make in the configuration .CFG file (for example, optional trays, total amount of memory, or job-storage settings).

The preconfiguration process consists of three steps:

1. Driver acquisition
2. Driver preconfiguration
3. Driver installation and deployment

These steps can be accomplished in different ways, depending on the tool that is being used to define the configuration.

The configuration process for driver preconfiguration is supported through three tools. All three are designed with the same basic user-interface (UI) controls for interacting with the .CFG file, but are

packaged differently, either to support established device installation workflows or to allow the user to deploy and install the driver. The following tools support driver preconfiguration:

- **HP Driver Configuration Editor.** The HP Driver Configuration Editor is a small standalone MS Windows software program that system administrators can use to open the .CFG file that is associated with a particular driver and make modifications that are applied when that driver is installed on the target computer. Use it in environments that have an established process for deploying drivers.

  The HP Driver Configuration Editor is available at the following Web site:

  www.hp.com/go/hpdpc_sw

- **The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin.** HP Web Jetadmin provides a queue-creation program to create printer queues on any Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 operating systems. The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin adds screens to the existing queue-creation workflow from which the drivers that are being installed for the queues can be customized. The plug-in is limited to Internet Explorer browsers. Netscape Navigator is *not* supported.

  The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin is available at the following Web site:

  www.hp.com/sbso/tpm/web_jetadminplugin.html

- **Installer Customization Wizard.** The Installer Customization Wizard enables a system administrator to preconfigure the printer drivers as part of customizing the printing system software installation preparing for a silent install.

  For detailed information about customizing print drivers by using the Installer Customization Wizard, see the *Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.

Topics:

- Lockable features
- Continuous export

Lockable features

The following driver features can be locked to prevent end-users from changing settings:

- **Print on Both Sides (duplex).** The options are **True** or **False**.
- **Color Options.** The options are **Black and White** or **Color**.
- **Paper Type.** The options include all of the paper types that the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology supports.
- **Paper Source.** The options are **Printer Auto Select**, **Manual Feed (Tray 1)**, **Tray 1**, **Tray 2**, **Tray 3**, **Tray 4**, or **Tray 5**.

When a feature is locked, the selected default option is the only option that is available to users. Generally, the feature is unavailable in the driver UI after it has been locked.

Continuous export

The term "continuous export" refers to the ability of the driver to copy the latest driver settings to the working copy of the preconfiguration file. Using this feature, the exported values can be transferred when a compatible version of the driver is used to upgrade the print driver. For instance, if the orientation is set to **Landscape** in a driver that was originally installed in Windows 2000, then the orientation setting automatically remains **Landscape** when the operating system is upgraded to Windows XP or Windows Server 2003. The continuous-export feature functions transparently from the user perspective and works only between drivers on identical device models.

NOTE: Not all of the driver parameters can be exported. However, the components that can be exported are always the same as the components that can be preconfigured.

HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool

Use the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool, a Web-based diagnostic software program, to determine whether the correct and most current print driver for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology is in use. Two methods are available to gain access to the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool:

1. Open a Web browser.
2. Go to the following Web site:

   www.hp.com/go/drivercheck

Alternatively:

1. Open a Web browser.
2. Go to the HP Business Support Center (BSC) at the following Web site:

   www.hp.com/go/bsc
3. Click the **self-help resources** link on the left navigation bar.
4. Click **automatic driver checker** to run the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool.

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool runs, the devices that are currently installed on the computer appear in a list. The tool gathers information about the devices, drivers, and system setup in order to diagnose the software driver configurations and check the print drivers.

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool is open, select the HP device that you want to check. The tool verifies whether the latest driver is being used, provides feedback if an incorrect driver is being used, and indicates whether an updated driver version is available. Click the latest driver version to download and install it.

The data that the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool gathers is stored anonymously so that HP can analyze and continuously improve its diagnostic tools. No private data is gathered from the computer.

HP Embedded Web Server

The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) is a standard feature on all HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology devices that are connected through a network.

The HP EWS provides a simple, easy-to-use solution for one-to-one device management. Instead of installing management software, such as HP Web Jetadmin, use HP EWS for remote management in offices that have a limited number of devices. The management console must have a supported Web browser.

In environments that have a larger number of devices, in which one-to-one management is impractical, the HP Embedded Web Server and HP Web Jetadmin work together to provide scalable remote device management. Use HP Web Jetadmin to consolidate management tasks and perform operations on a selected set of devices. For such environments, HP provides hooks between the HP EWS and HP Web Jetadmin so that HP EWS features can be configured on multiple devices in one operation. For example, you can set the security password for the HP EWS simultaneously on a cluster of devices.

For more detailed information about the HP EWS, see the *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD. Or, for additional information and a copy of the *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, go to one of the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/support/CM8060edgeline

www.hp.com/support/CM8050edgeline

Topics:

- Access to the HP EWS
- The HP EWS frame
- Information tab
- Settings tab
- Digital Sending tab
- Fax tab
- Networking tab
- Security
- Kerberos Authentication
- HP EWS login process

Access to the HP EWS

To open the HP EWS and view information about the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology, open a supported Web browser and type the device transmission control protocol/internet protocol (TCP/IP) address or host name in the address field.

To find the device TCP/IP address, look for **IP Address** on the device configuration page (the Embedded Jetdirect page), which can be printed from the device control-panel display. Follow these steps to print an Embedded Jetdirect page:

1. Touch Network Address.
2. Touch Print.

The HP EWS frame

Each screen in the HP EWS is a frame that contains a top banner, five category tabs, a left-aligned navigation menu bar, and a main-content area. Selecting one of the category tabs causes the corresponding left-aligned navigation bar to appear, where a menu includes links to content for that tab. The main-content area shows information and opens options in response to navigation-tab selections and menu-bar selections.

NOTE: In a password-protected HP EWS, only the **Information** tab is available to users who do not log in by using the password. If no password is set (which is the default configuration), all of the tabs are available.

When the HP EWS screens are opened immediately after the device is turned on, the HP EWS screens may change as you browse. Complete information becomes available when the device enters the **Ready** state.

Information tab

The **Information** tab allows you to access and print out detailed information regarding device and supply status, device configuration, network configuration, and usage.

The **Information** tab contains the following pages:

- Device Status
- Configuration Page
- Supplies Status Page
- Event Log Page
- Usage Page
- Device Information
- Control Panel Snapshot
- Jam History Page
- Print

Device Status

The **Device Status** page shows device status messages from the device. The **Device Status** page also displays some pertinent device information and device settings.

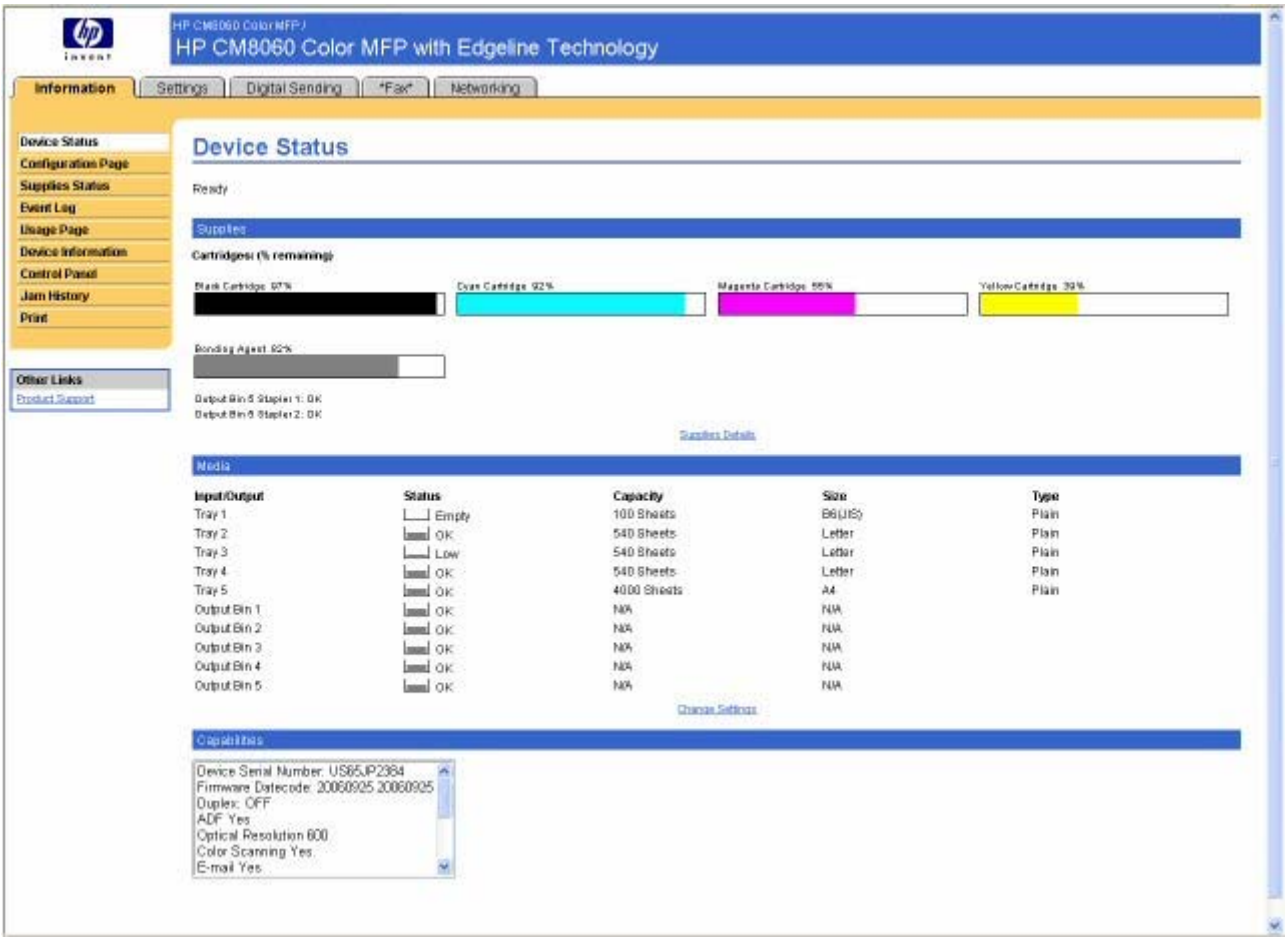


Figure 2-5 HP EWS – **Device Status** page

Configuration Page

The **Configuration Page** displays the values of all of the settings available to be set in the device. The contents of this screen are consistent with the configuration page generated by the firmware.

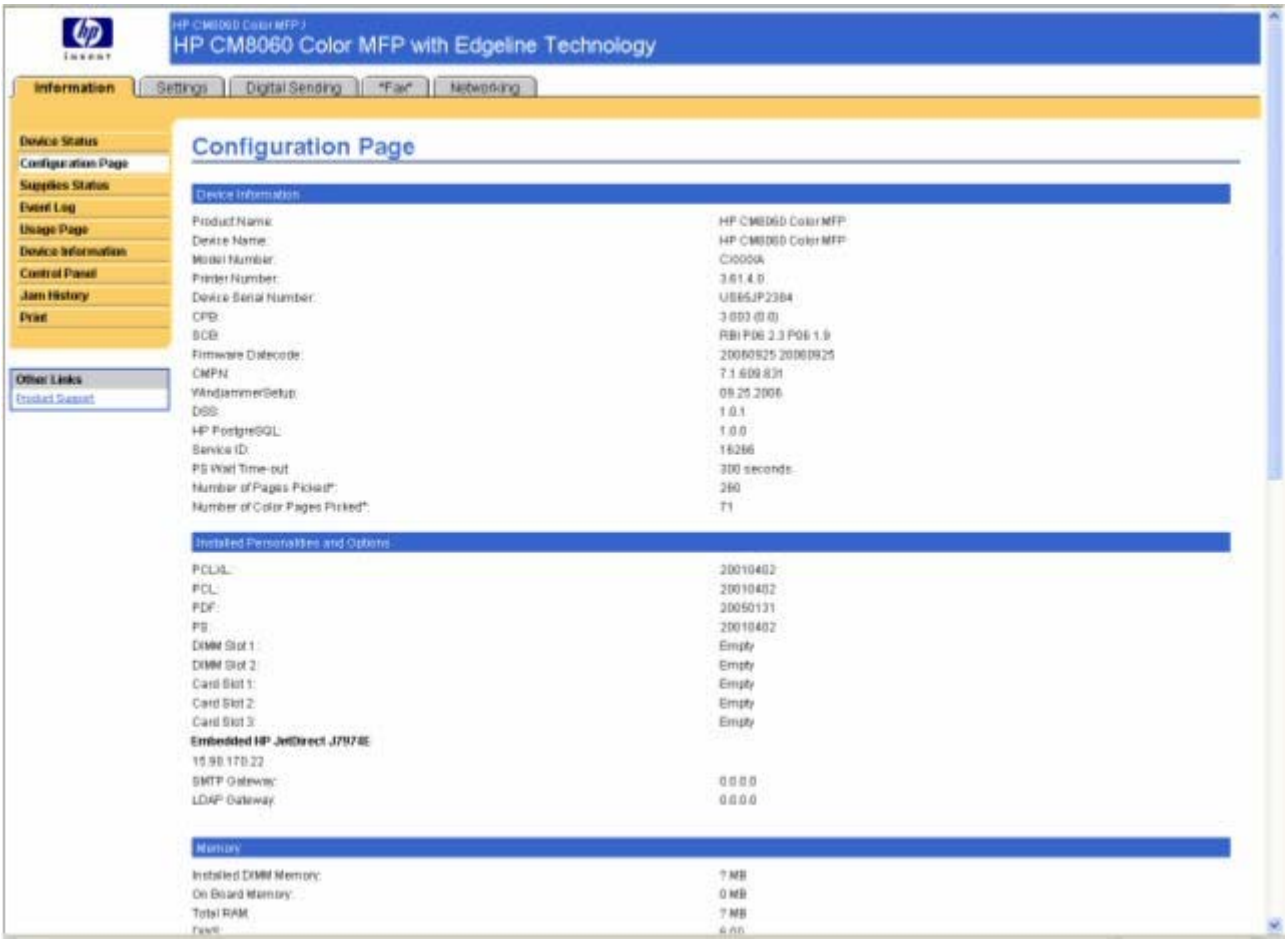


Figure 2-6 HP EWS – **Configuration Page** (1 of 2)

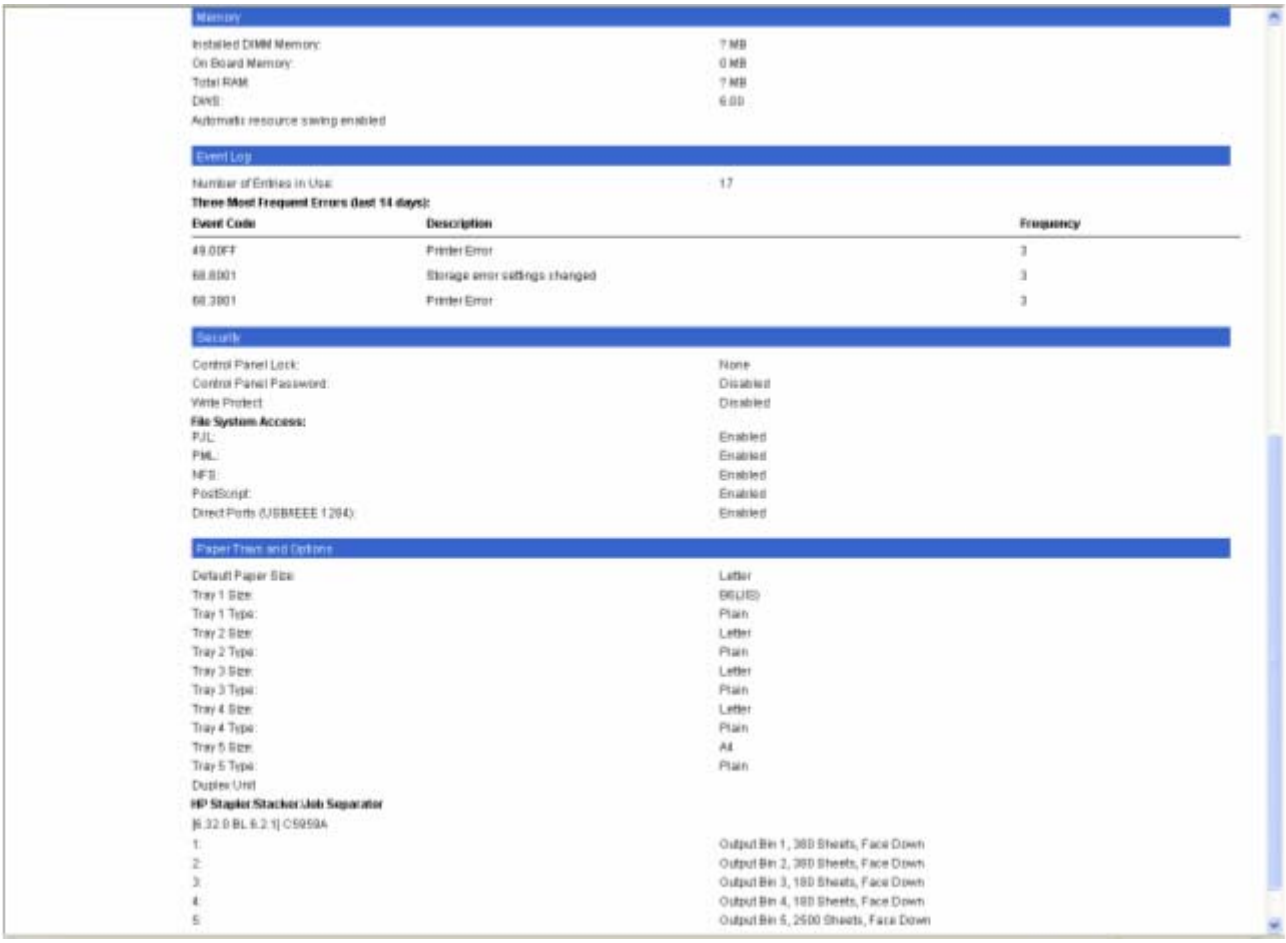


Figure 2-7 HP EWS – **Configuration Page** (2 of 2)

Supplies Status Page

The **Supplies Status Page** displays the status of all of the supplies used by the device, including the black, cyan, magenta, and yellow ink cartridges, and the bonding agent cartridge.

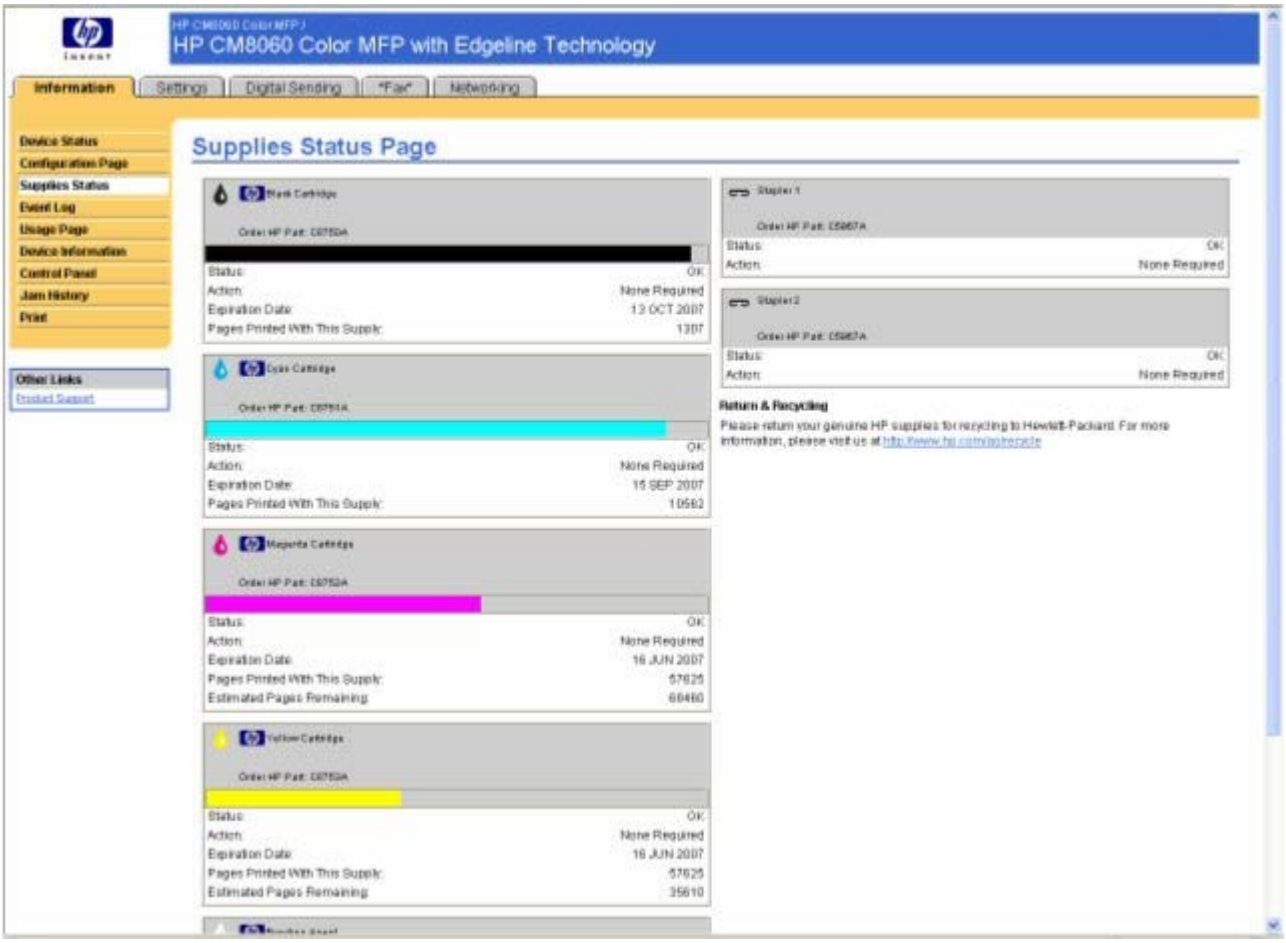


Figure 2-8 HP EWS – **Supplies Status Page**

Event Log Page

Use the **Event Log Page** to track the events that occur on the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology.

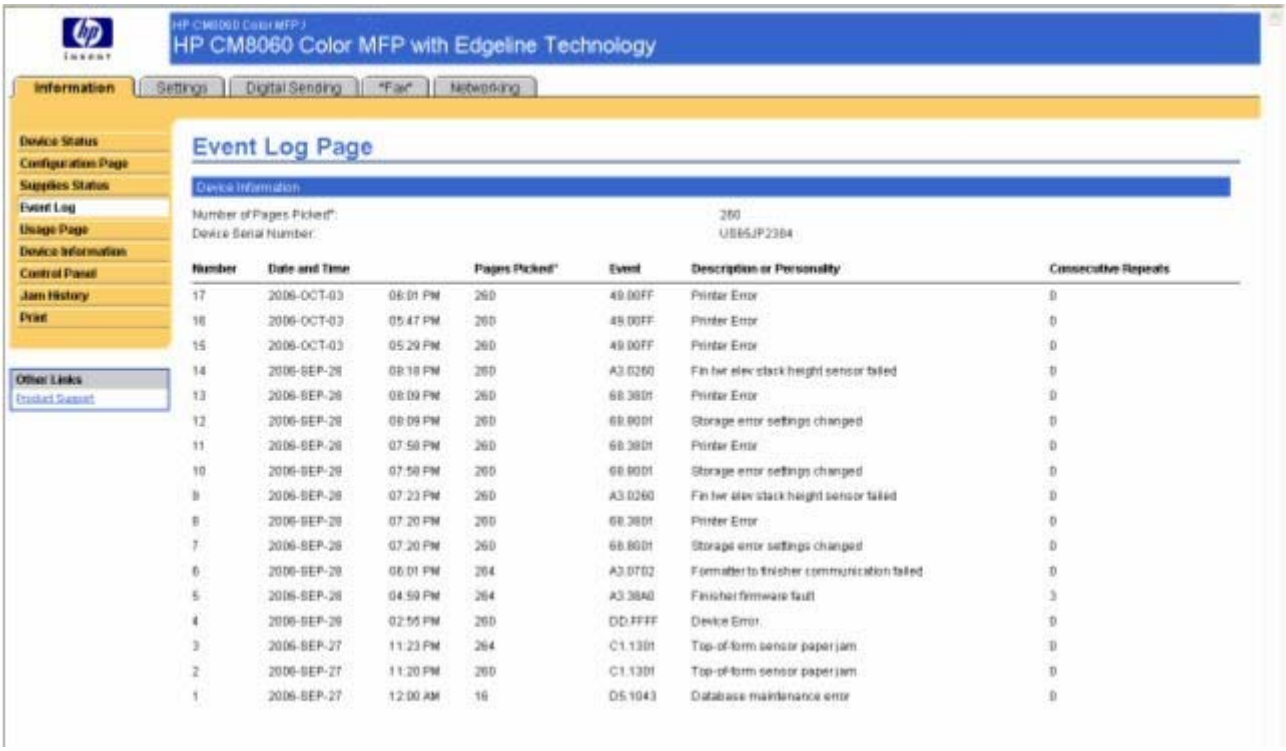


Figure 2-9 HP EWS – **Event Log Page**

Usage Page

The **Usage Page** gives a page count for each size of paper that has passed through the device, as well as the number of duplexed pages. The total is calculated by multiplying the sum of the print count values by the Units value.

The information on this page can be used to determine how much ink or paper to keep on hand. The **Usage Page** is shown in the following figures.

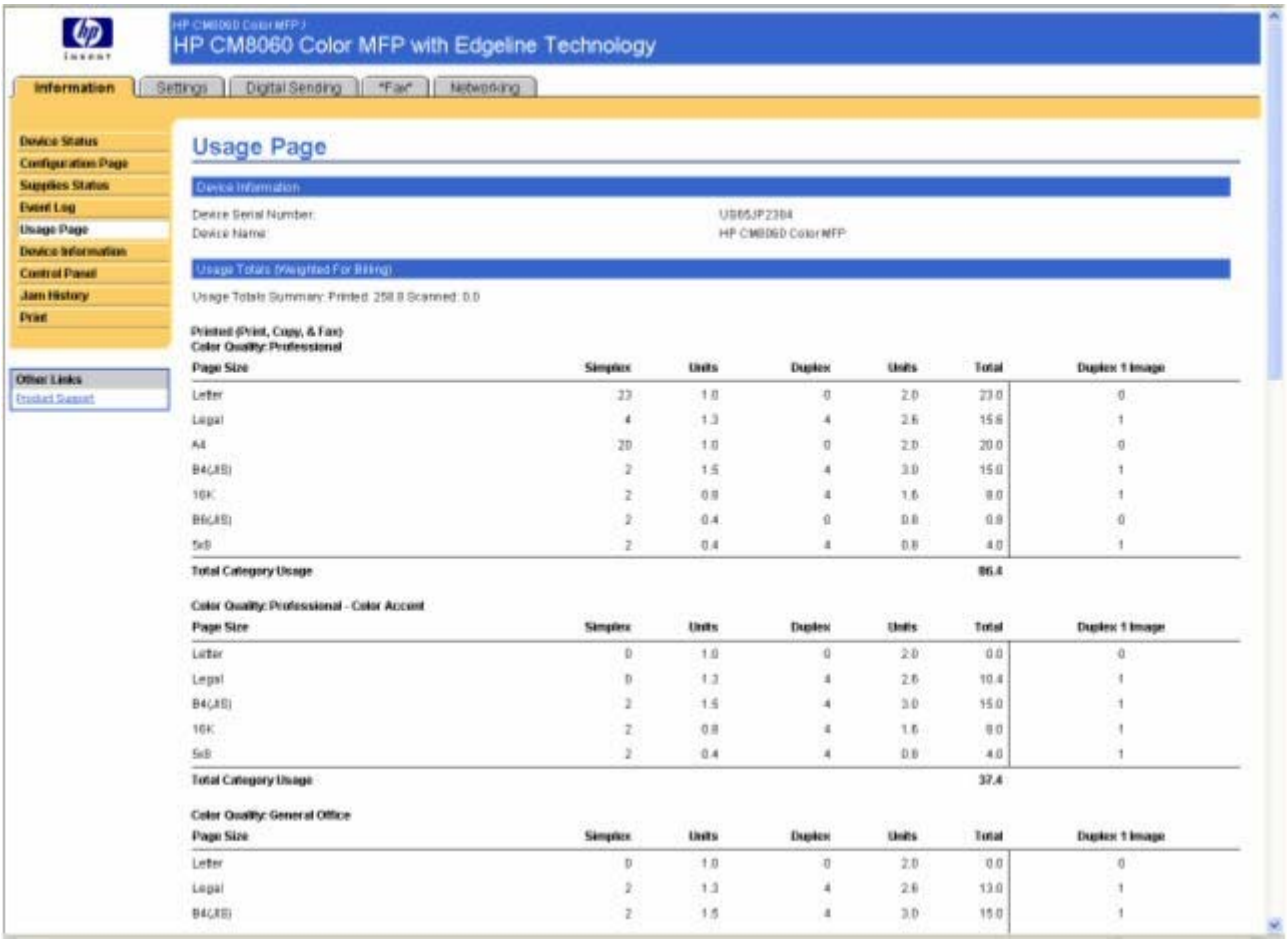
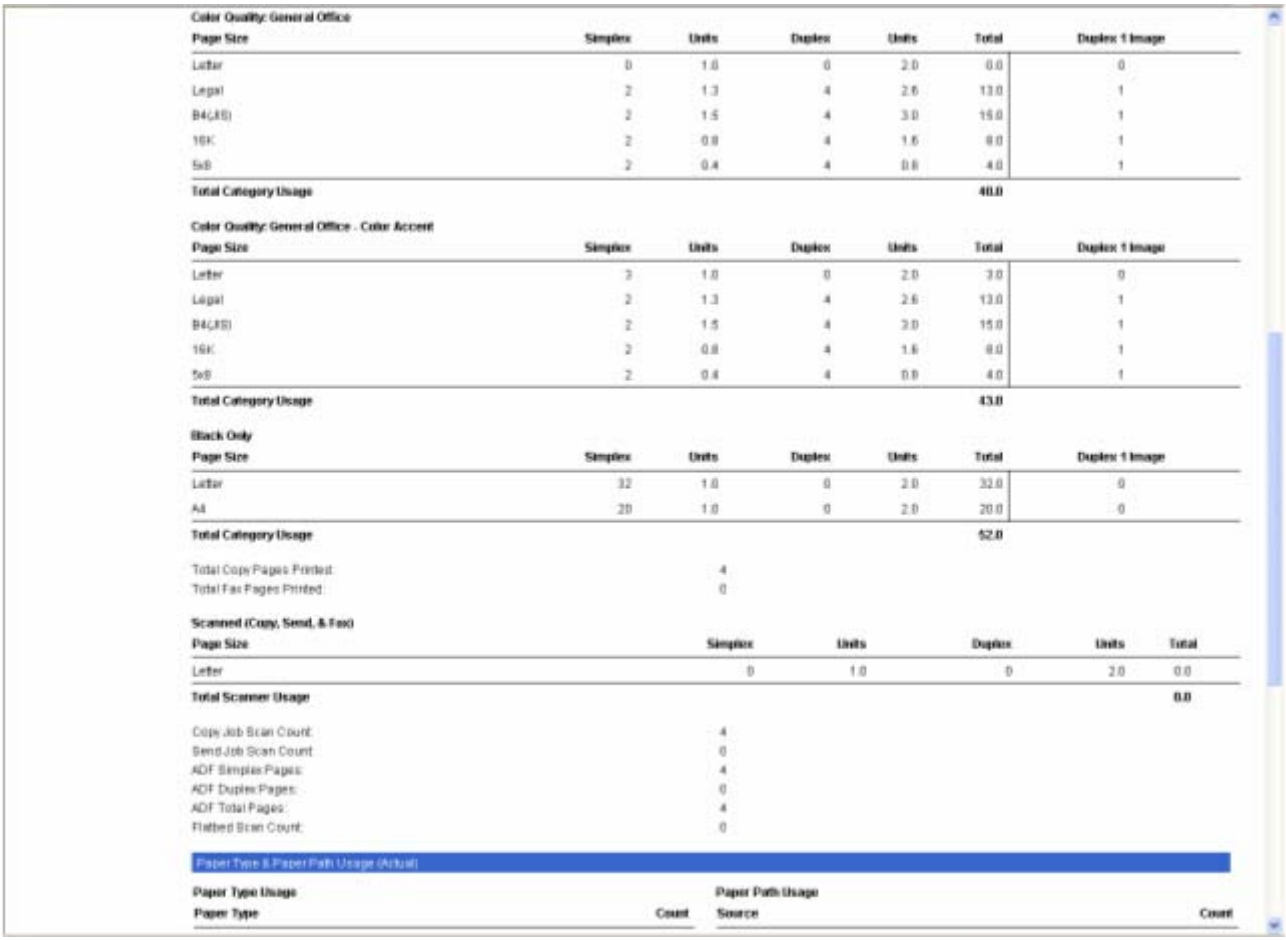


Figure 2-10 HP EWS – **Usage Page** (1 of 3)



Color Quality: General Office

Page Size	Simplex	Units	Duplex	Units	Total	Duplex 1 Image
Letter	0	1.0	0	2.0	0.0	0
Legal	2	1.3	4	2.6	13.0	1
B4(JIS)	2	1.5	4	3.0	15.0	1
16K	2	0.8	4	1.6	8.0	1
5x8	2	0.4	4	0.8	4.0	1
Total Category Usage					**40.0**	

Color Quality: General Office - Color Accent

Page Size	Simplex	Units	Duplex	Units	Total	Duplex 1 Image
Letter	3	1.0	0	2.0	3.0	0
Legal	2	1.3	4	2.6	13.0	1
B4(JIS)	2	1.5	4	3.0	15.0	1
16K	2	0.8	4	1.6	8.0	1
5x8	2	0.4	4	0.8	4.0	1
Total Category Usage					**43.0**	

Black Only

Page Size	Simplex	Units	Duplex	Units	Total	Duplex 1 Image
Letter	32	1.0	0	2.0	32.0	0
A4	20	1.0	0	2.0	20.0	0
Total Category Usage					**52.0**	

Total Copy Pages Printed: 4
Total Fax Pages Printed: 0

Scanned (Copy, Send, & Fax)

Page Size	Simplex	Units	Duplex	Units	Total
Letter	0	1.0	0	2.0	0.0
Total Scanner Usage					**0.0**

Copy Job Scan Count: 4
Send Job Scan Count: 0
ADF Simplex Pages: 4
ADF Duplex Pages: 0
ADF Total Pages: 4
Flatbed Scan Count: 0

Paper Type & Paper Path Usage (Actual)

Paper Type Usage		Paper Path Usage	
Paper Type	Count	Source	Count

Figure 2-11 HP EWS – **Usage Page** (2 of 3)

Scanned (Copy, Send, & Fax)

Page Size	Simplex	Units	Duplex	Units	Total
Letter	0	1.0	0	2.0	0.0
Total Scanner Usage					**0.0**

Copy Job Scan Count:	4
Send Job Scan Count:	0
ADF Simplex Pages:	4
ADF Duplex Pages:	0
ADF Total Pages:	4
Flatbed Scan Count:	0

Paper Type & Paper Path Usage (Actual)

Paper Type Usage

Paper Type	Count
Any Type	0
Plain	160
Preprinted	36
Letterhead	0
Prepunched	0
Labels	0
Bond	0
Recycled	0
Colored	0
Cardstock 160-220g	0
Matte Brochure	0
HP GlossyEdgin180g	0
HP GlossyEdgin220g	0
HP Matte Prem 120g	0
HP MatteBroch 180g	0
HP MatteCover 200g	0
Matte	0
Matte Cover	0
HP Office LG 180g	0
Total	**196**

Paper Path Usage

Source	Count
Tray 1	170
Tray 2	40
Tray 3	50
Tray 4	0
Tray 5	0
Other	0
Total	**260**

Destination	Count
Output Bin 1	0
Output Bin 2	260
Output Bin 3	0
Output Bin 4	0
Output Bin 5	0
Other	0
Total	**260**

Figure 2-12 HP EWS – **Usage Page** (3 of 3)

Device Information

The **Device Information** page shows the following information:

- Device name
- Device location
- Asset number
- Company name
- Contact person
- Product name
- Device model
- Device serial number

The device name, device model, and device serial number are generated automatically. You can configure the other information on this page from the **Device Information** page on the **Settings** tab.

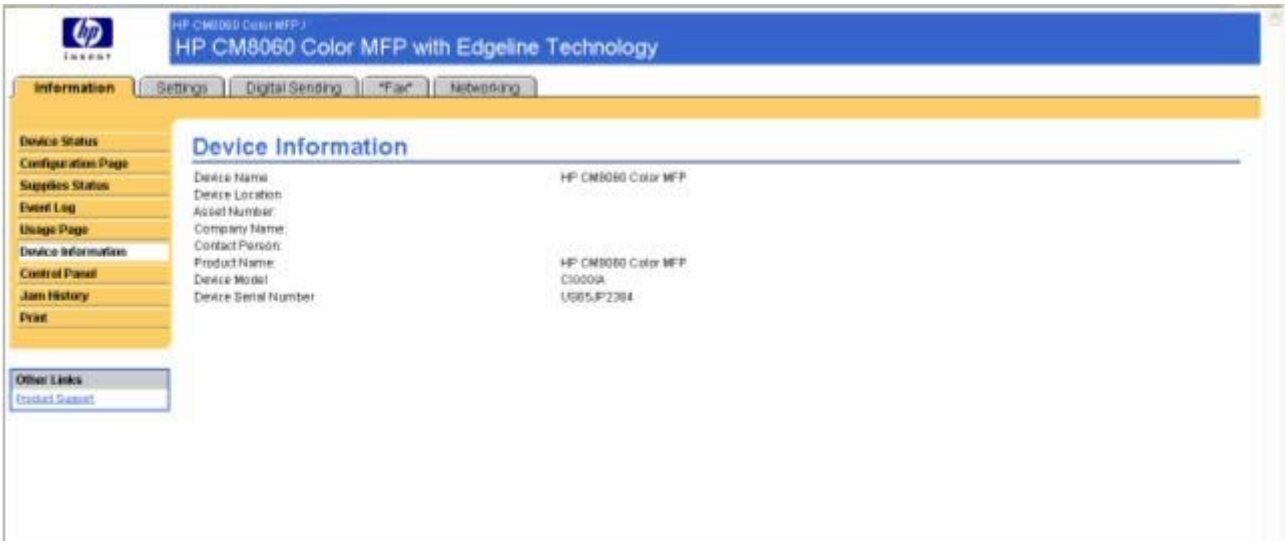


Figure 2-13 HP EWS – **Device Information** page

Control Panel Snapshot

The **Control Panel Snapshot** page shows the device control-panel display as if you were standing at the device. Because this view shows the device status, it can help you troubleshoot problems with the device.

NOTE: The appearance of the page might vary, depending on your device.

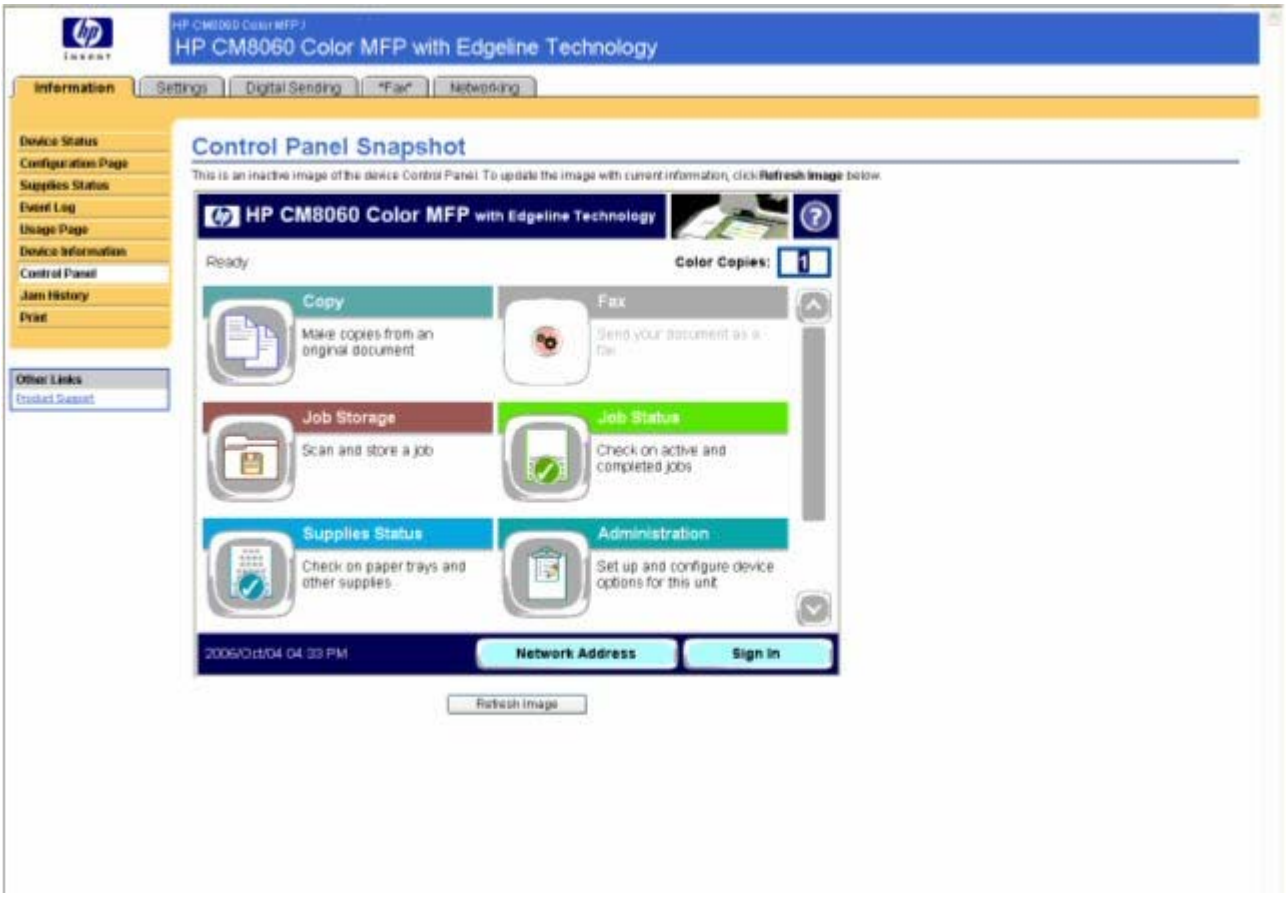


Figure 2-14 HP EWS – **Control Panel Snapshot** page

Jam History Page

The **Jam History Page** shows a history of jams that have occurred. It includes a summary of the three most-frequent jams that have occurred during the past 14 days.

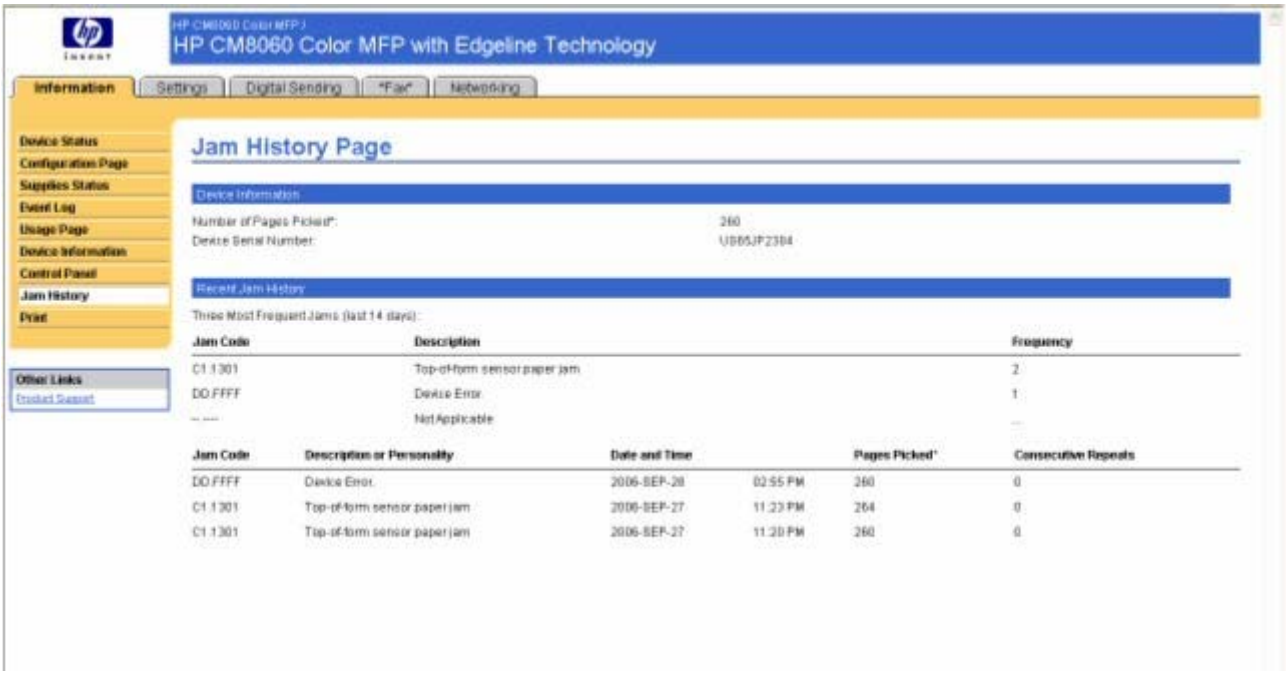


Figure 2-15 HP EWS – **Jam History Page**

Print

NOTE: The **Print** page (and the **Print** menu on the left) is available only if it has been configured to appear on the **Security** page under the **Settings** tab. Use the **Security** page to disable the **Print** page if you do not want it to appear for security reasons.

Use the **Print** page to print print-ready files.

You can use the **Print** page to print one file at a time from a device that supports the HP EWS. This feature is especially useful if you are a mobile user, because you do not have to install the print driver in order to print; you can print anywhere at any time.

You can print print-ready files, such as documents that have been generated by using a "print to file" driver option. Print-ready files commonly have file name extensions such as .PS (postscript), .PDF (Adobe Portable Document Format), and .PRN (Windows print-ready File).

The **Print** page is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-16 HP EWS – **Print** page

Printing a file or updating firmware from the Print page

Use the following procedure to print a file or update device firmware from the **Print** page.

1. Select a file that resides on your computer or on your network by clicking **Browse** to browse to a file that you want to print.
2. Click **Apply**.

Settings tab

The **Settings** tab allows you to view and change settings for the following features:

- Configure Device
- Notification Server
- Alerts
- AutoSend
- Security
- Device Security
- Restrict Color
- Edit Other Links
- Device Information
- Language
- Date & Time

- Sleep Schedule
- Backup and Restore
- Solution Installer

Configure Device

You can use the **Configure Device** page to print device information pages and configure the device remotely.

The menus on this page are similar to the menus that are available at your device control panel. Some of the device control-panel menus are not available from the HP EWS. See the documentation that came with your device for more information about the different menus that your device supports.

The **Configure Device** page is shown in the following figure.

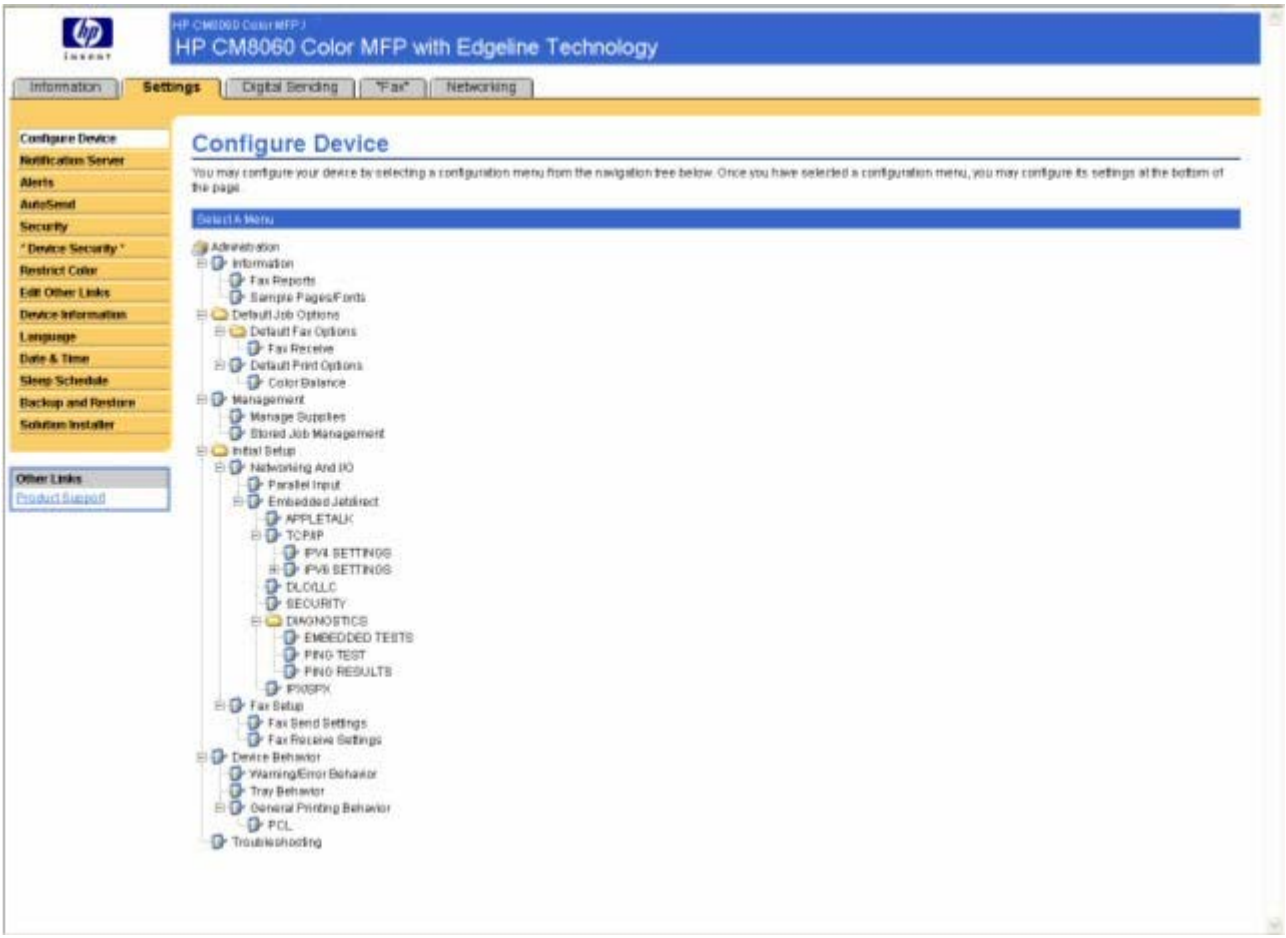


Figure 2-17 HP EWS – **Configure Device** page

Using the menus on the Configure Device page

The following procedure is provided *only* as an example. Similar procedures can be used to set other menu items.

Follow these steps to print a configuration page (example procedure).

1. Click **INFORMATION**.
2. Select the check box for the information page that you want to view or print, and then click **Apply**.

Notification Server

Use the **Notification Server** page to configure e-mail settings for outgoing e-mail. Use the settings on this page to send and receive e-mail messages, including alerts. The **Notification Server** page is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-18 HP EWS – **Notification Server** page

Configuring outgoing e-mail

You must configure outgoing e-mail if you intend to use the Alerts or AutoSend features.

1. Gather the following information. (Your organization's network or e-mail administrator typically provides the information that is required to configure outgoing mail.)
   - The TCP/IP address of the simple mail transfer protocol (SMTP) mail server on your network. The EWS uses the SMTP server TCP/IP address to relay e-mail messages to other computers.
   - The e-mail domain name suffix that is used to address e-mail messages within your organization.
2. Select the **Enable Outgoing E-mail** check box.
3. Type the SMTP server TCP/IP address in the **SMTP Server** text box.
4. Type the domain name in the **Domain Name** text box.
5. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

Configuring the return e-mail address

When you configure the return e-mail address on the **E-mail Server** page, you are configuring the identity of the device. For example, if you type `anyone` in the **Username** field and `your.company.com` in the **Domain Name** field, all e-mails sent out by the device will come from `anyone@your.company.com`. In this example, `anyone@your.company.com` is the identity of the device.

Alerts

From the **Alerts** page, system administrators can set up the device to send problem and status alerts to anyone through e-mail messages. When this function is configured, alerts are automatically triggered about supplies, paper-path status, and other service and advisory information. More than one individual can receive alerts, with each person receiving only specific alerts. For example, an administrative assistant might be responsible for ordering cartridges or fixing jams, and could receive advanced warning when ink or the bonding agent is low, or when a jam occurs. Similarly, the long-life supplies might be handled by an external service provider, who could receive alerts about performing device maintenance, loading the front or rear stapler, and similar needs.

NOTE: A user can create up to four different destination lists, with up to 20 recipients on each list.

By selecting the **Remove Control Panel Supplies Status Messages** option (available on the **Alerts - setup** page that appears when you press the **New Destination List** button), you can suppress the **Cartridge low** or **Cartridge out** supplies status messages on the control panel. The message is suppressed at the control panel only if one or both of these alerts has first been selected to be received.

The **Alerts** page is shown in the following figure.

NOTE: In order for alerts to function, outgoing e-mail must be enabled.

Figure 2-19 HP EWS – **Alerts** page

For information about using the **Alerts** page, see the *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.

AutoSend

Use the **AutoSend** page to send device-configuration and supplies-usage information periodically to e-mail destinations of your choice, such as service providers. This feature establishes a relationship with Hewlett-Packard Company or another service provider to provide you with services that include, but are not limited to, cartridge replacement, pay-per-page contracts, support agreements, and usage tracking. A user can add up to twenty AutoSend destinations. The **AutoSend** page is shown in the following figure.

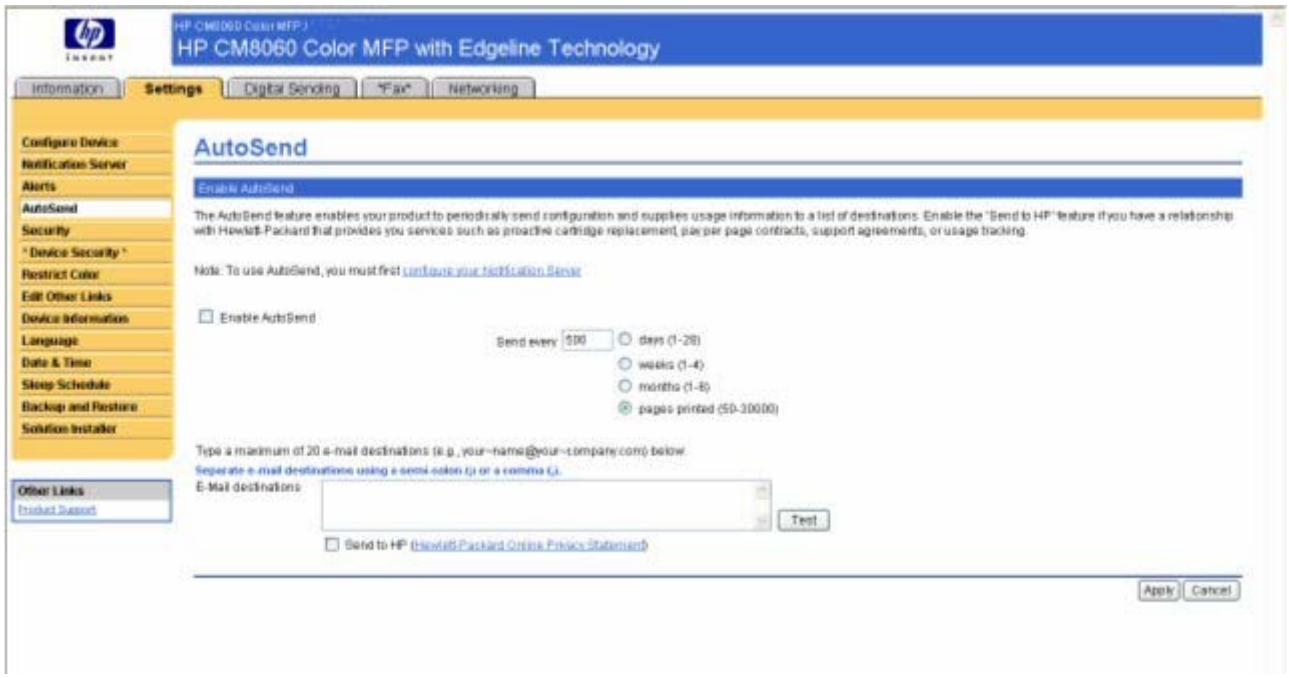


Figure 2-20 HP EWS – **AutoSend** page

Turn on the AutoSend feature

Use the following procedure to make the AutoSend feature available.

1. Make outgoing e-mail functions available by following the instructions that are listed in this chapter.
2. Select the **Enable AutoSend** check box.
3. Click an option to specify the interval at which you want the device to send the device-configuration and supplies-usage information to the e-mail recipients (determined in the next step), and then type the number of days, weeks, months, or pages printed.
4. Configure up to 20 destinations using the format that appears on the page.
5. To send device configuration and supplies status information to HP, select the **Send to HP** check box.
6. Click **Apply**.

Security

The **Security** page is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-21 HP EWS – **Security** page

Device Security

The **Device Security** page is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-22 HP EWS – **Device Security** page

Restrict Color

Use the **Restrict Color** page to enable or disable color printing and copying for the device for all users, or you can enable or disable color for members of certain permission sets. If color is restricted, the device checks the username that is associated with each job. If restrictions are in place for that user, the device automatically prints according to the restrictions. For example, if a user is allowed to print with General Office color quality but not with Professional color quality, the device automatically uses General Office color quality for that user. The **Restrict Color** page is shown in the following figure.

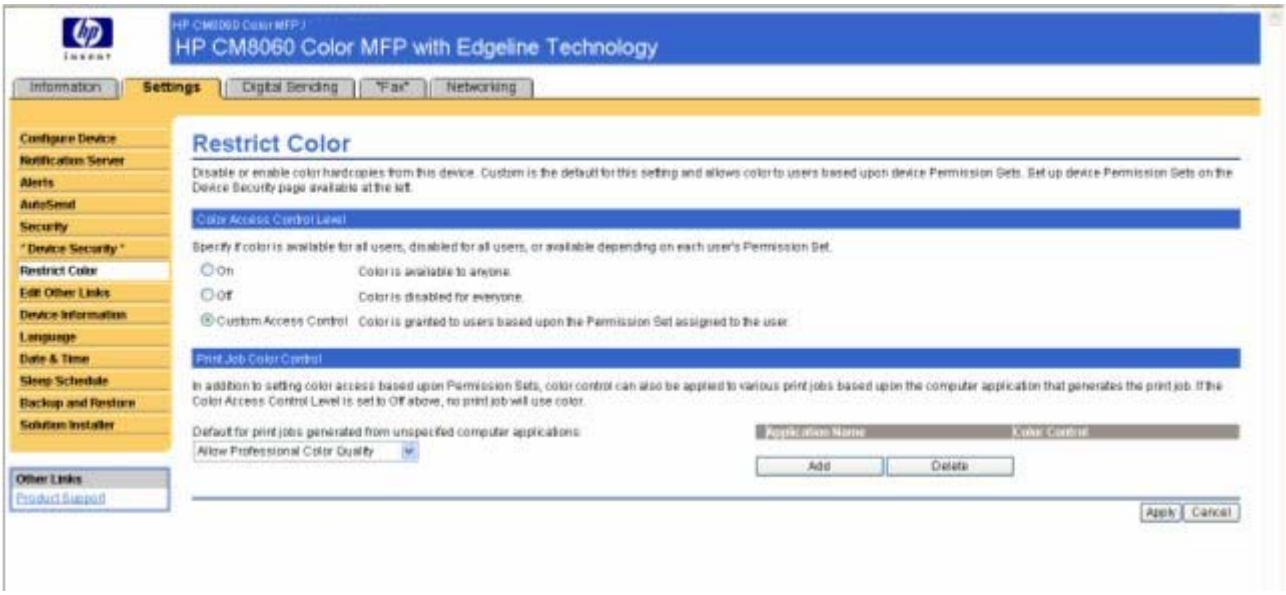


Figure 2-23 HP EWS – **Restrict Color** page

Edit Other Links

Use the **Edit Other Links** page to add or customize up to five links to the Web sites of your choice (see the following note). These links appear throughout the HP EWS pages in the **Other Links** box beneath the left navigational bar. One permanent link (**Product Support**) has already been established. The **Edit Other Links** page is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-24 HP EWS – **Edit Other Links** page

Adding a link

Use this procedure to add a link.

1. Under **Add Link**, type the URL and the name of the link as you would like it to appear in the HP EWS.
2. Click **Add Link**.

Removing a link

Use this procedure to remove a link.

1. Under **User-defined Links**, select the link or links that you would like to remove.
2. Click **Remove Selected Link**.

Device Information

Use the **Device Information** page to provide a name of your choice for the device, assign an asset number, and configure the company name, the person to contact about the device, and the physical location of the device. The device TCP/IP address, device name, device model, and serial number are also available on this page.

Figure 2-25 HP EWS – **Device Information** page

If you make any changes on the **Device Information** page, click **Apply** to save the changes.

The information that is typed here appears on the **Device Information** page that can be opened from the **Information** tab. It also appears in e-mail messages that are sent from the device. This might be useful if you need to locate the device to replace supplies or fix a problem.

Language

Use the **Language** page to select the language in which the HP EWS pages appear. The **Language** page is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-26 HP EWS – **Language** page

CAUTION: Selecting **View Pages in Device Language** or **Select A Language** changes the language for everyone who uses the HP EWS.

The default language is the language that the Web browser is currently using. If your browser and control panel both use a language that is not available for the HP EWS, English is selected as the default. If you make any changes on the Language page, click **Apply** to save your changes.

Date & Time

Use the **Date & Time** page to update the time. The **Date & Time** page is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-27 HP EWS – **Date & Time** page

Date &Time - Advanced

Use the **Date &Time - Advanced** page to select the formats you prefer for displaying the date (under **Current Date**) and time (under **Current Time**). The following figure shows the **Date &Time - Advanced** page.

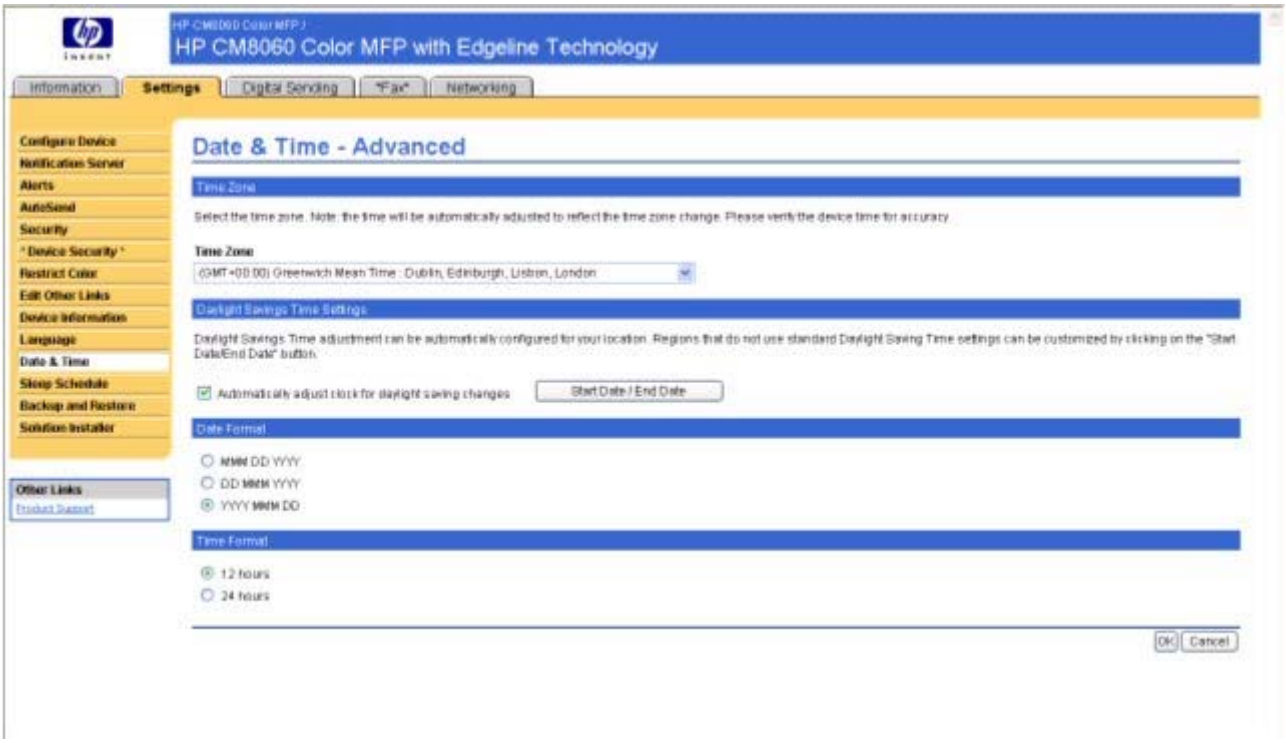


Figure 2-28 HP EWS – **Date &Time - Advanced** page

Sleep Schedule

The **Sleep Schedule** page is shown in the following figure.

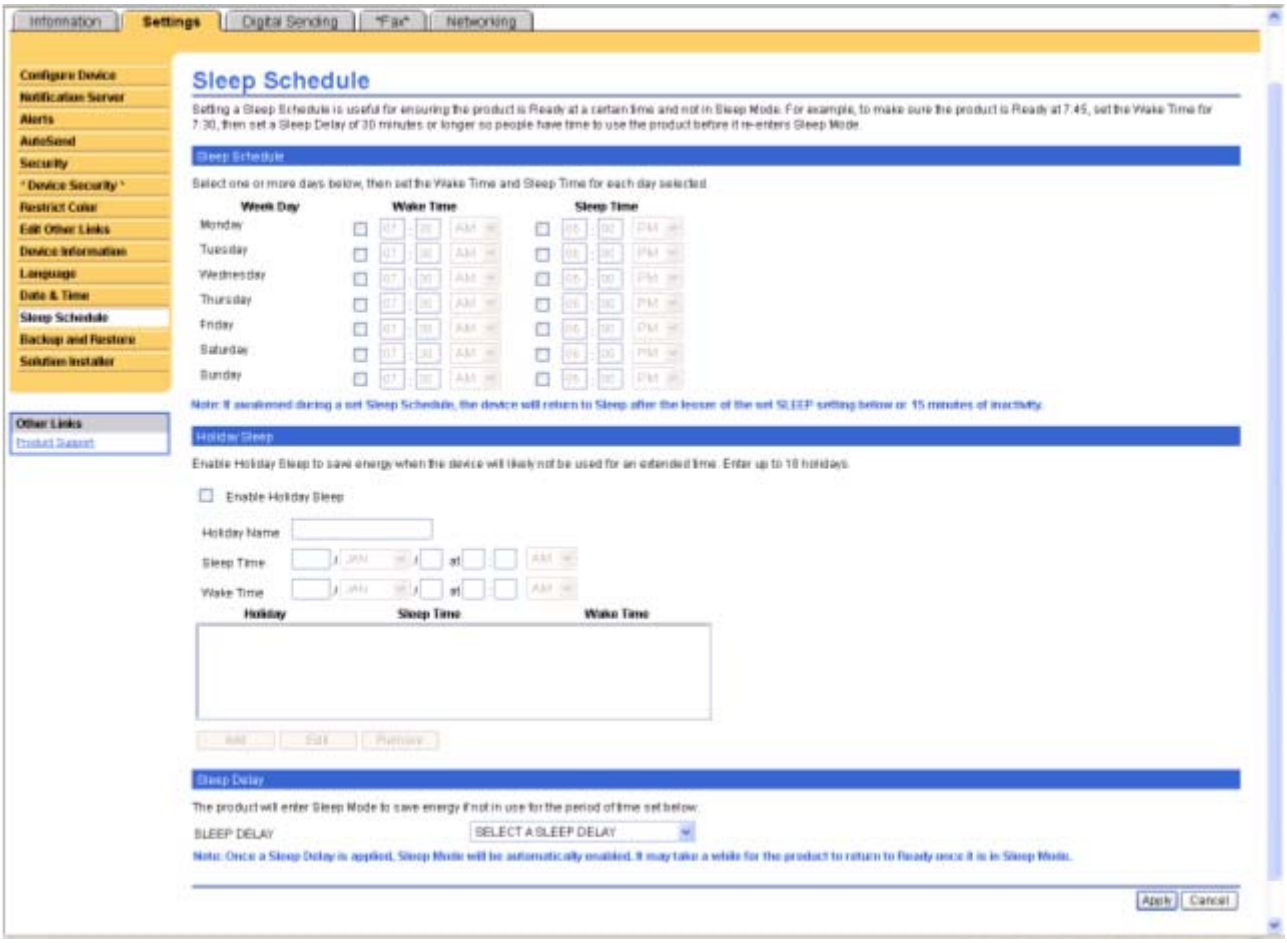


Figure 2-29 HP EWS – **Sleep Schedule** page

Backup and Restore

The **Backup and Restore** page is shown in the following figure.

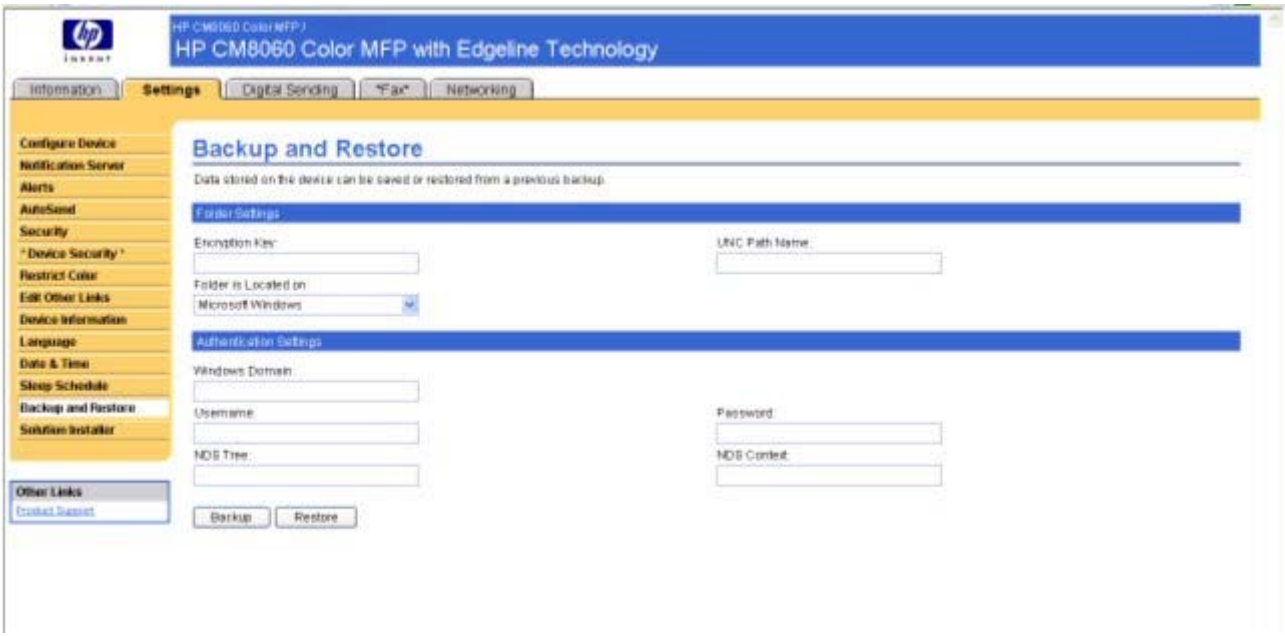


Figure 2-30 HP EWS – **Backup and Restore** page

Solution Installer

The **Solution Installer** page is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-31 HP EWS – **Solution Installer** page

Digital Sending tab

Use the pages available on the HP EWS **Digital Sending** tab to control the digital-sending features of the device.

The **Digital Sending** tab allows you to view and change settings for the following features:

- Address Book
- E-mail Setup
- Network Folder Setup

Address Book

The **Address Book** page is shown in the following figures.

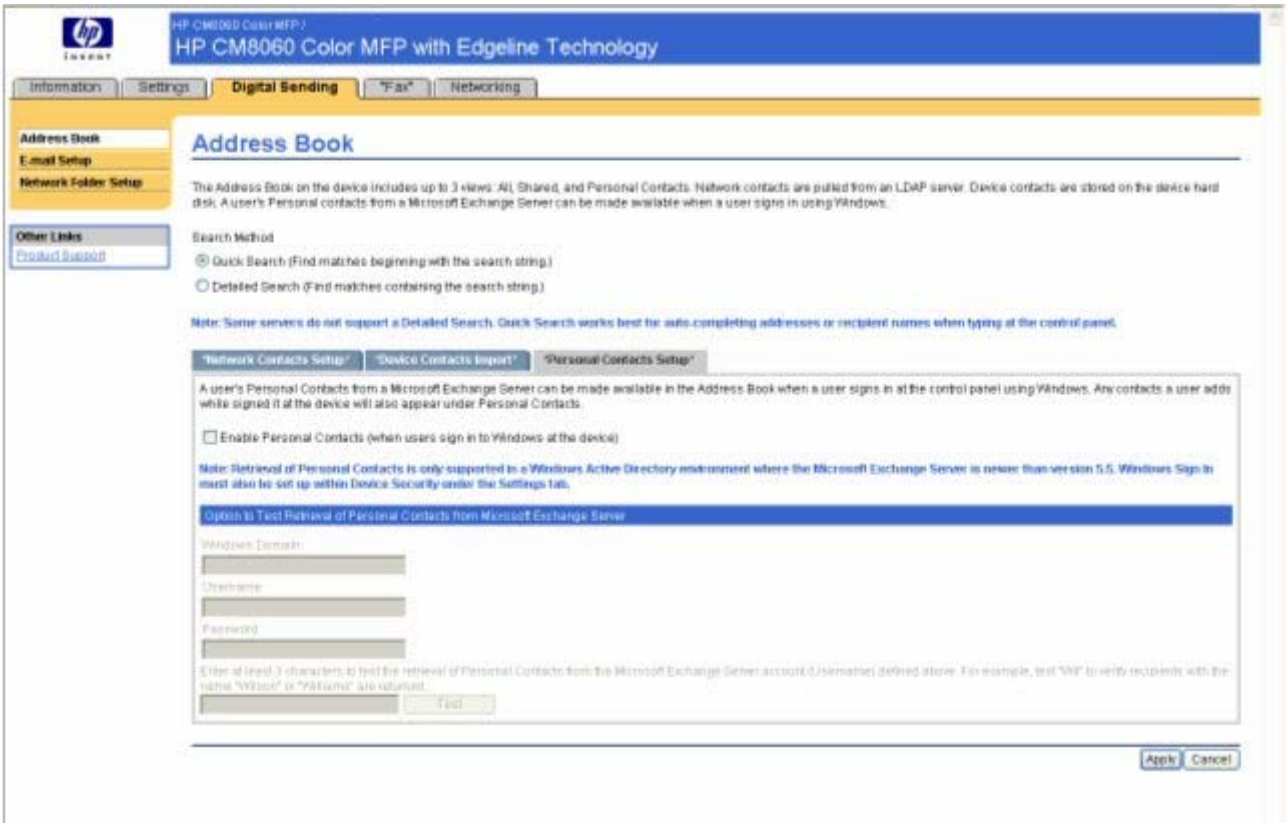


Figure 2-32 HP EWS – **Address Book** page (1 of 3)

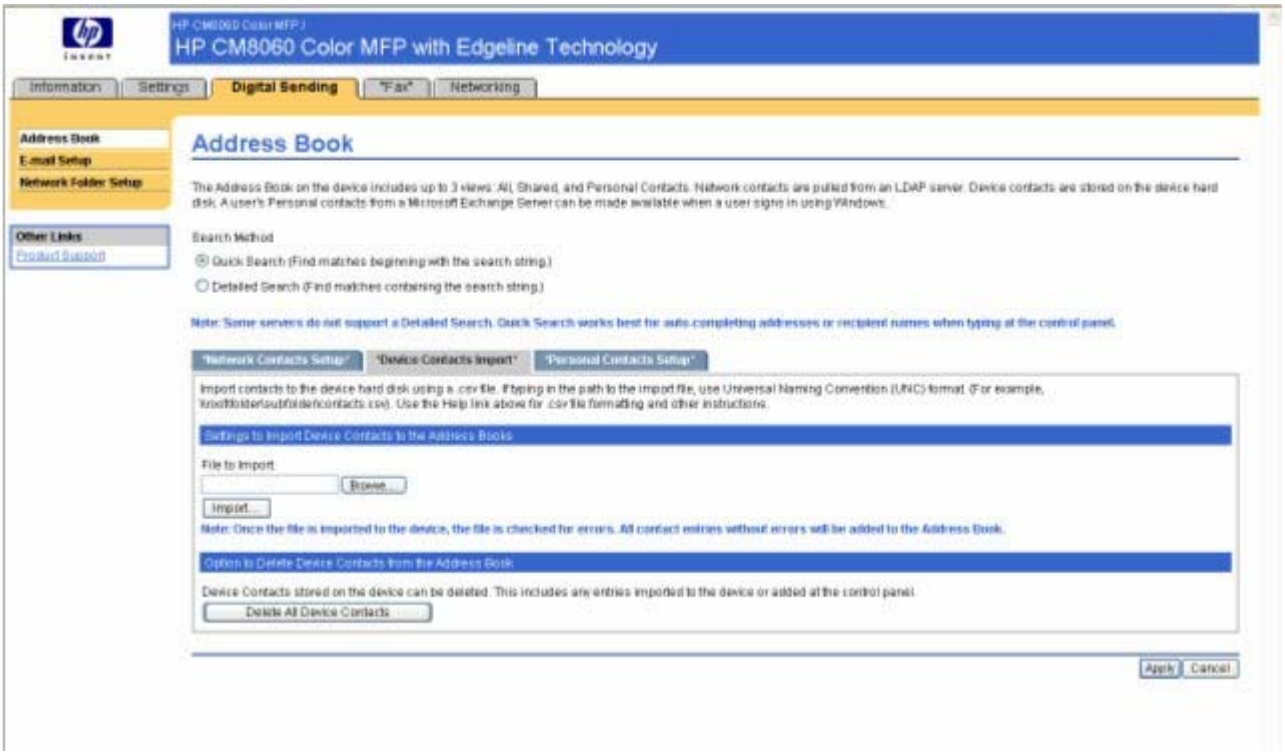


Figure 2-33 HP EWS – **Address Book** page (2 of 3)

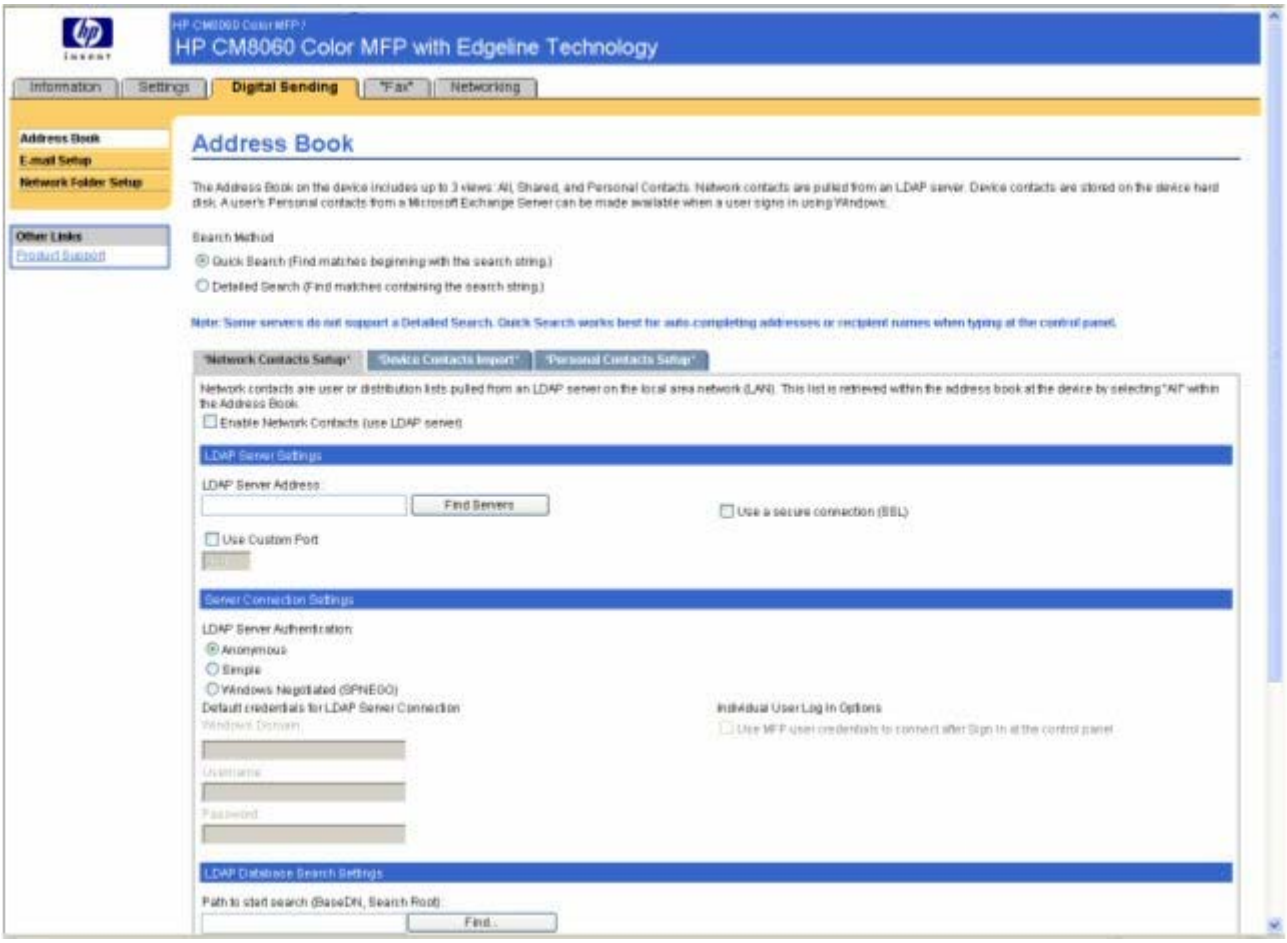


Figure 2-34 HP EWS – **Address Book** page (3 of 3)

E-mail Setup

The **E-mail Setup** page is shown in the following figures.

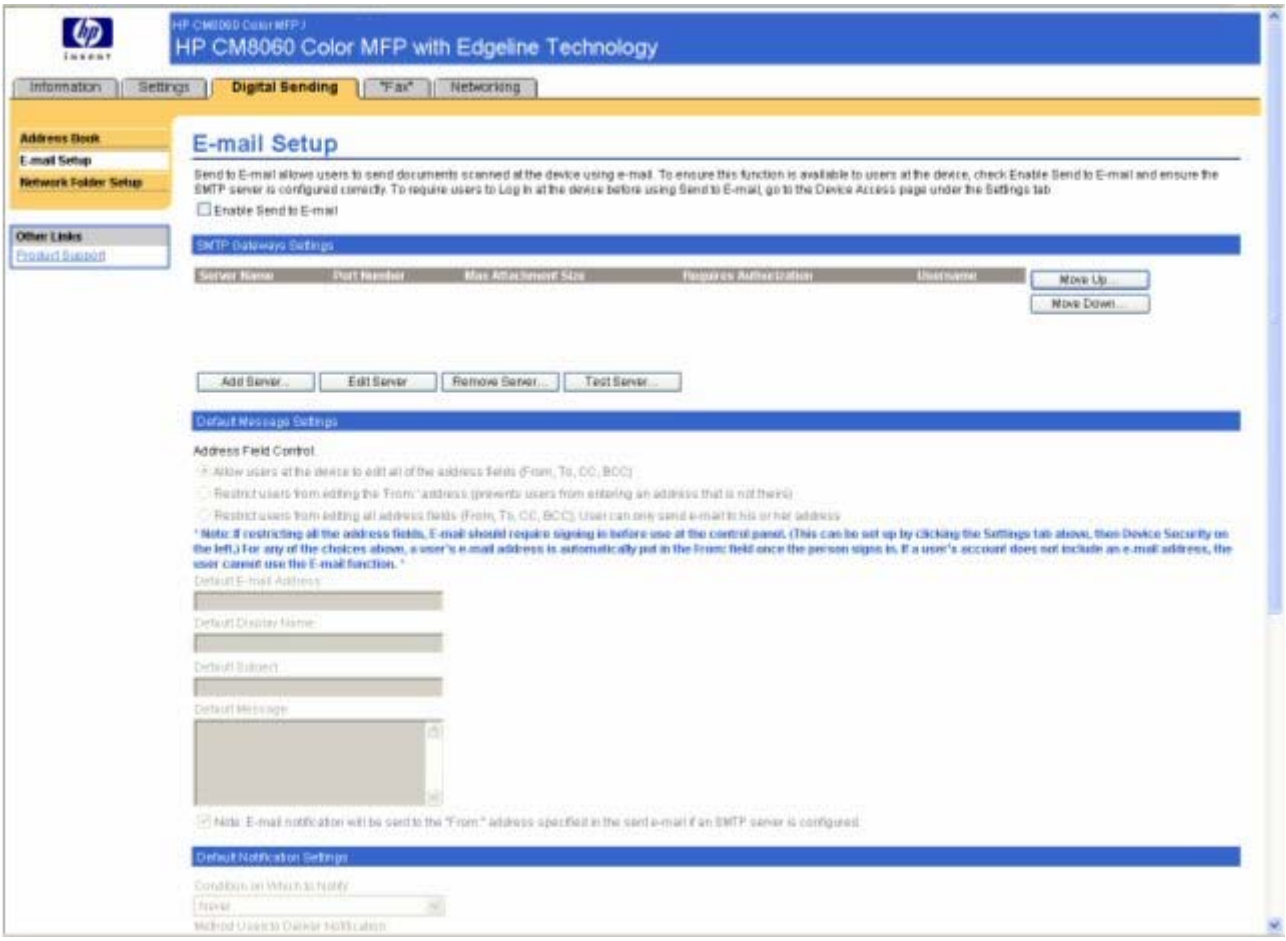


Figure 2-35 HP EWS – **E-mail Setup** page (1 of 2)

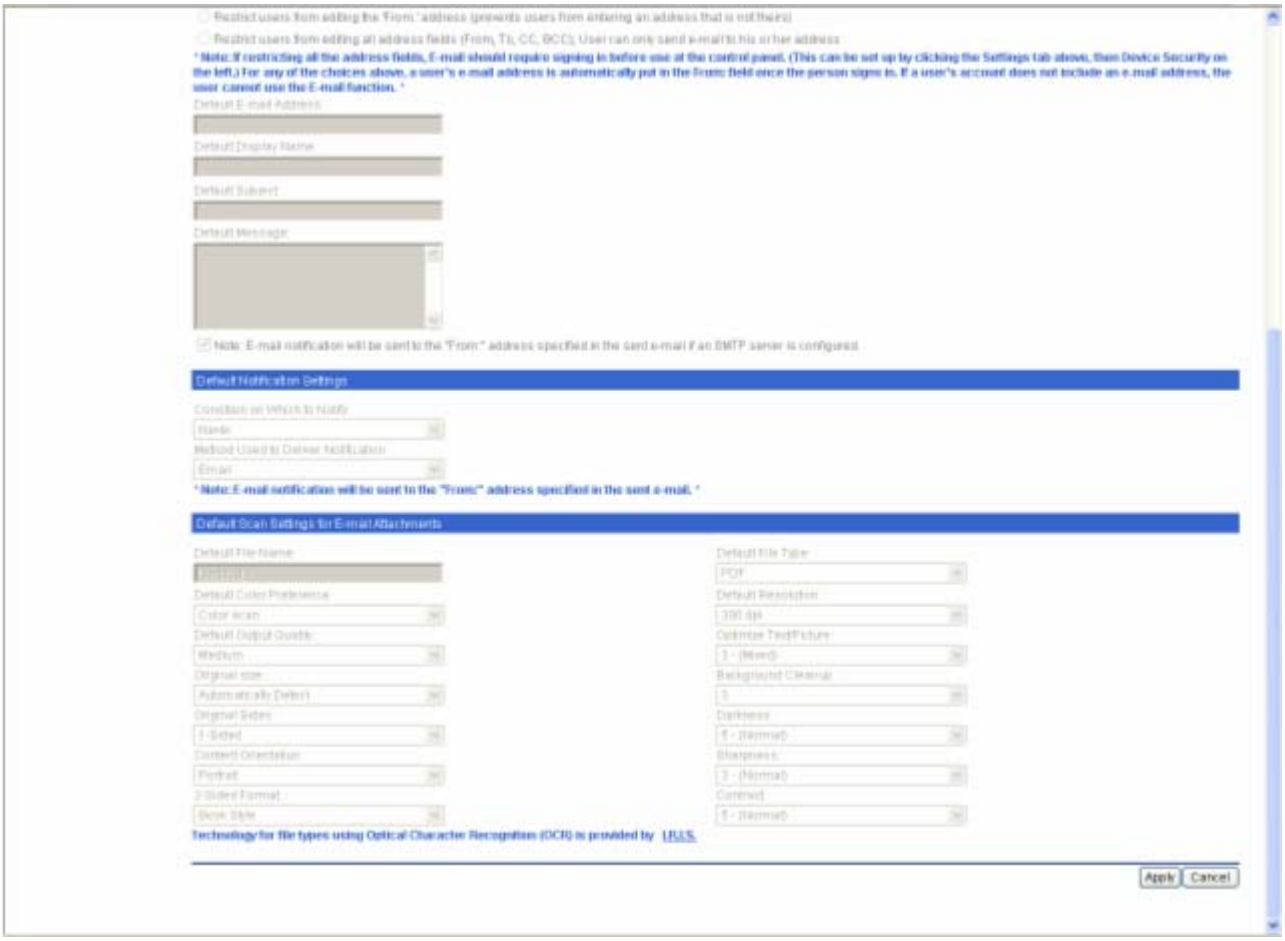


Figure 2-36 HP EWS – **E-mail Setup** page (2 of 2)

Network Folder Setup

The **Network Folder Setup** page is shown in the following figure.

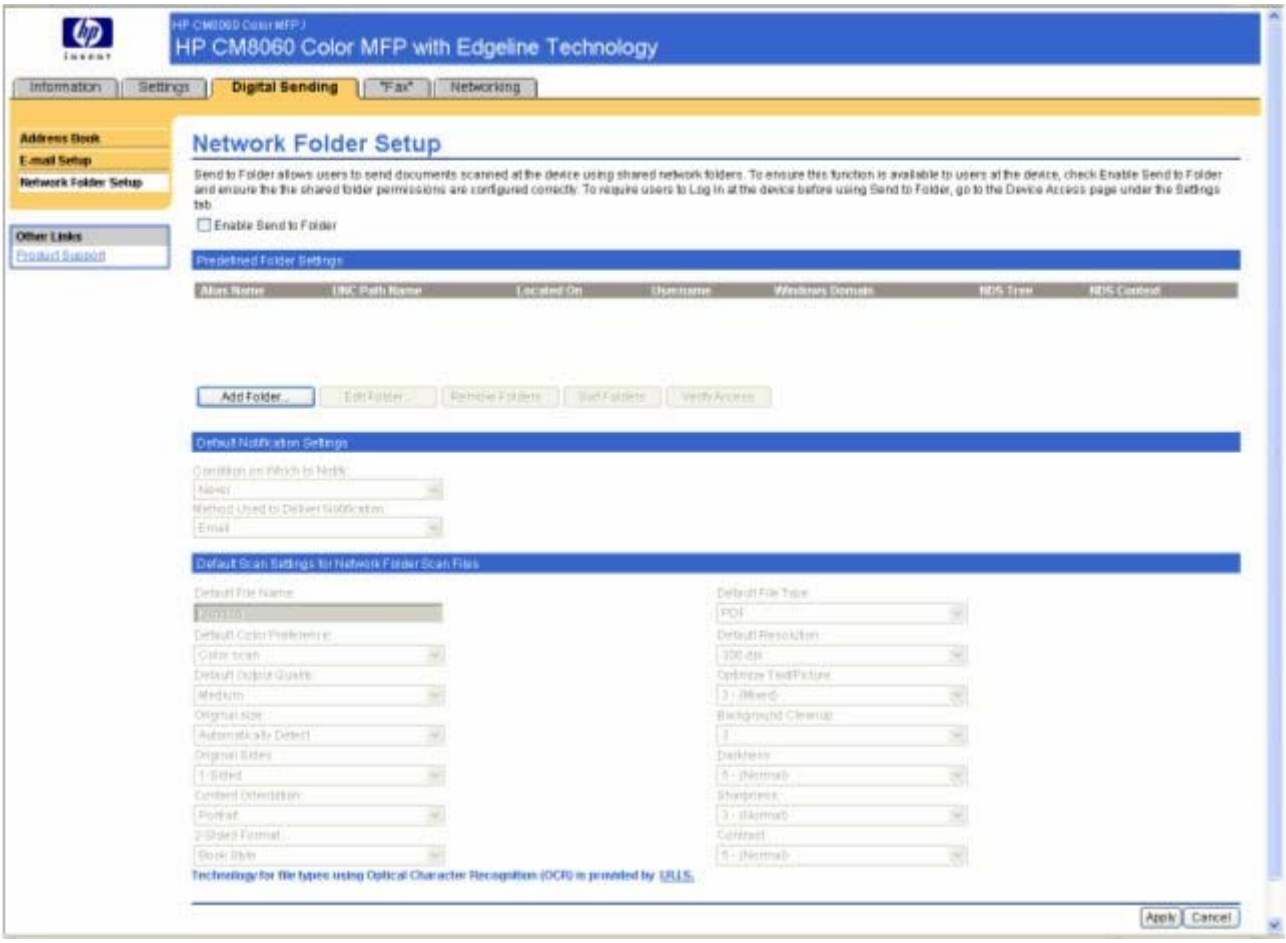


Figure 2-37 HP EWS – **Network Folder Setup** page

Fax tab

Use the pages available on the HP EWS **Fax** tab to control the fax features of the device.

The **Fax** tab allows you to view and change settings for the following features:

- Fax Send Setup
- Fax Activity Log
- Import Speed Dials

Fax Send Setup

The **Fax Send Setup** page is shown in the following figure.

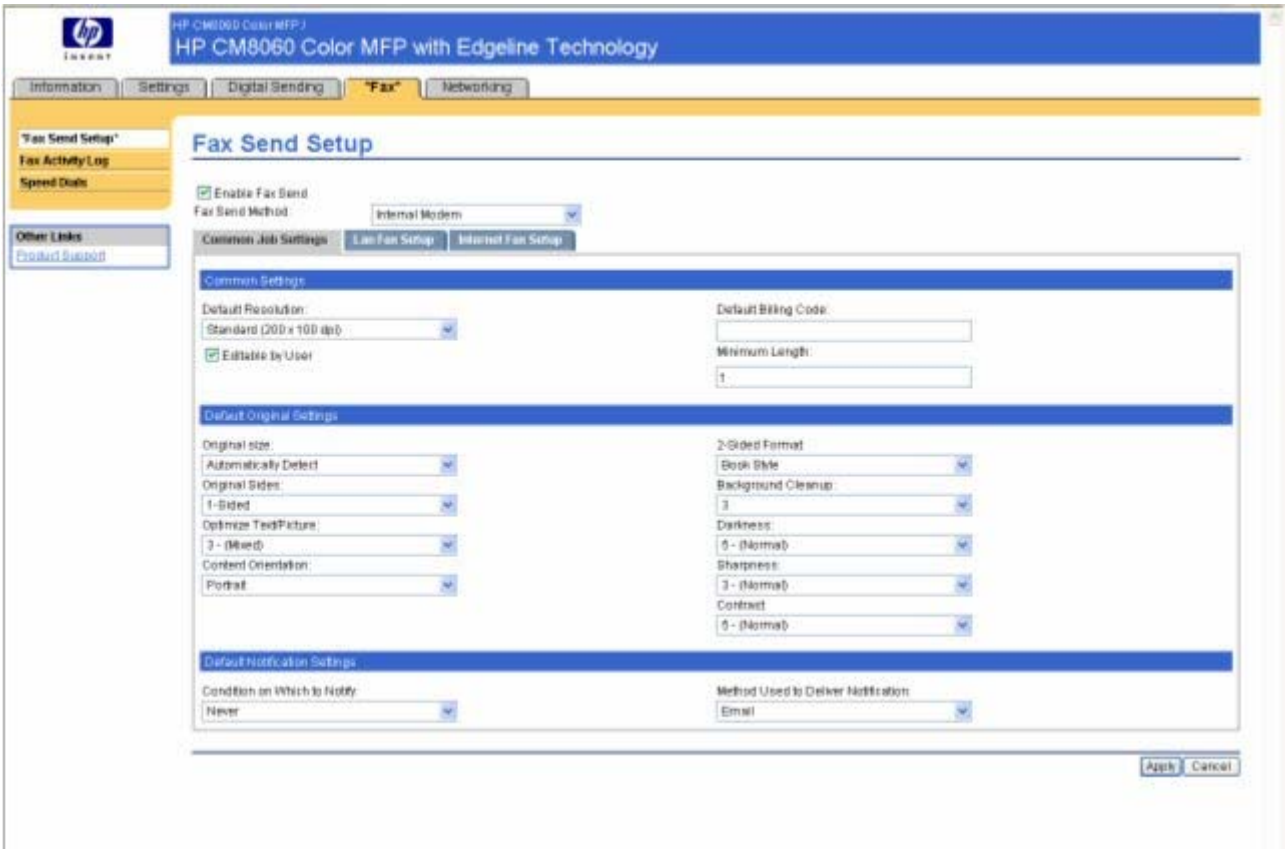


Figure 2-38 HP EWS – **Fax Send Setup** page

Fax Activity Log

The **Fax Activity Log** page is shown in the following figure.

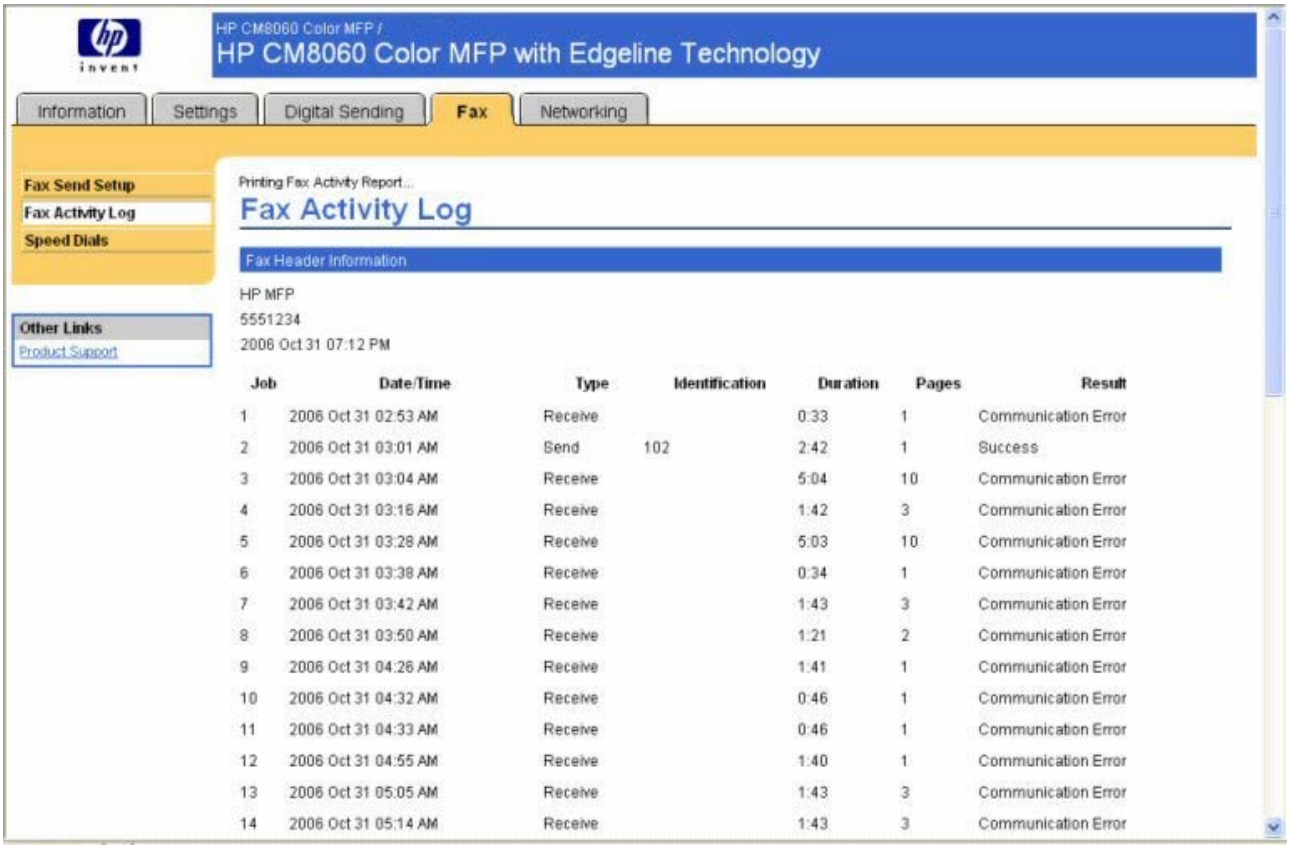


Figure 2-39 HP EWS – **Fax Activity Log** page

Import Speed Dials

The **Import Speed Dials** page is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-40 HP EWS – **Import Speed Dials** page

Networking tab

The HP EWS **Networking** tab is shown in the following figure.

NOTE: Not all of the pages on the tab are shown in this document. For more information, see the *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.

Figure 2-41 HP EWS **Networking** tab – **Network Settings** page

The menu on the left side of the page contains other networking options under three categories:

- Configuration
- Security section
- Diagnostics section

Configuration

- **Network Setting.** From the **Networking** page, enable and configure the following network protocols:
  - TCP/IP settings
  - Network settings:
  - Internetwork packet exchange/Sequenced packet exchange (IPX/SPX)
  - AppleTalk

- Data link control/logical link control (DLC/LLC)
- Simple network management protocol (SNMP)

- **Other Settings**
- **Privacy Settings**
- **Select Language**

Security section

- Settings
- Authorization
- Mgmt. Protocols
- 802.1x authentication
- Firewall

Diagnostics section

- Network Statistics
- Protocol Info
- Configuration Page

Refer to the *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide* on the System Administrator's CD for more information.

Security

The HP EWS pages that appear, and the settings on them, vary according to the specific HP EWS. Two modes of user access are possible:

- General user
- System administrator

To control access to the HP EWS pages, set a password on the **Security** page.

Figure 2-42 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Security** page

In a password-protected HP EWS, only the **Information** tab is available to users who do not log in by using the password. If no password is set (which is the default configuration), all of the tabs are available.

If a password has been set, log on as a system administrator to gain access to the protected HP EWS tabs (**Settings**, **Digital Sending**, **Fax**, and **Networking**).

NOTE: For more information, see the *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.

Kerberos Authentication

Kerberos is a network authentication protocol designed to provide secure authentication for client/server programs by using the secret keys that are delivered with session tickets.

HP EWS login process

A system administrator can use the login process to gain access to sensitive information and carry out privileged tasks. This process provides different page content for different users.

The HP EWS provides two different ways for the user to perform the login process, depending on the current level of protection:

- If an administrator password has been set, the HP EWS presents a **Log In** link in the upper-right of all pages on the **Information** tab (the only tab visible to an unauthenticated user) where the user can log in to the system.
- If no administrator password has been set, any user can open any page and have the rights of a system administrator.

An HP EWS for which no administrator password has been set is an "unprotected system." When an administrator password is set, the HP EWS is a "protected system", and the login process differs.

Topics:

- Protected system
- Unprotected system
- Password behavior

Protected system

When the user first browses to the HP EWS in a protected system, the page that appears is the **Device Status** page on the **Information** tab.

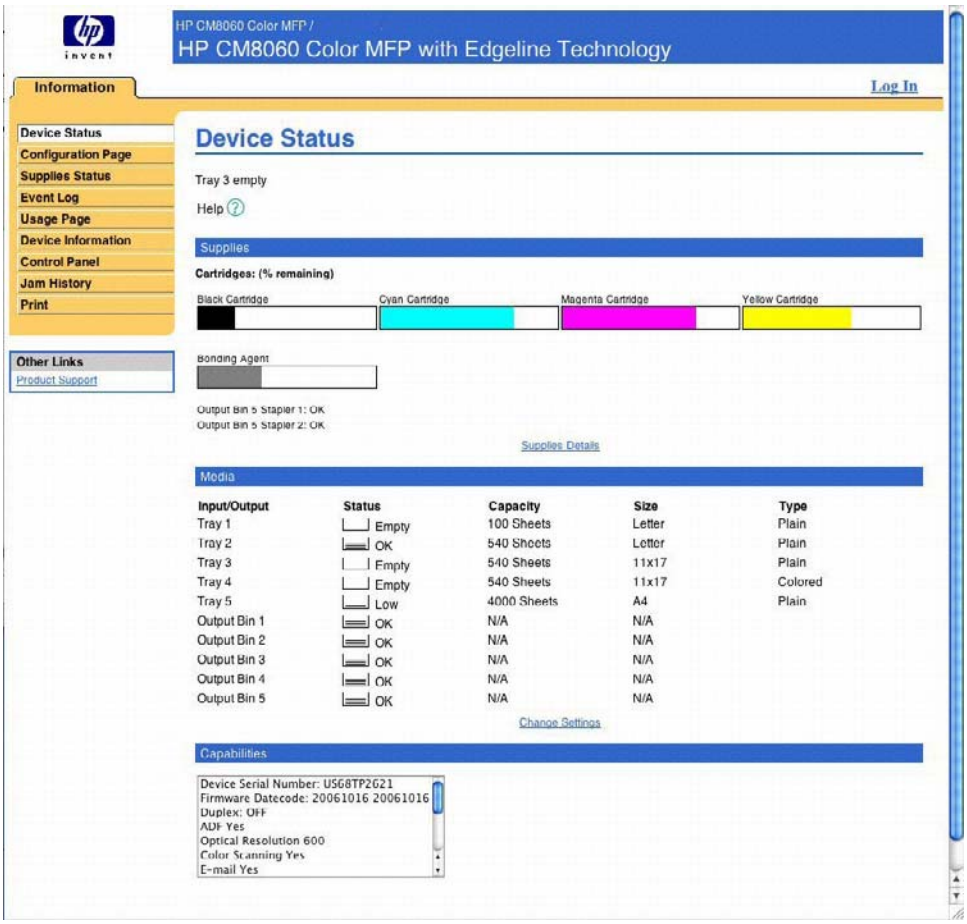


Figure 2-43 HP EWS home page in a password-protected system

All of the pages on the **Information** tab show the **Log In** link in the upper-right corner. When the user clicks that link, an authentication pop-up window appears. To log in as system administrator, type "admin" as the user name, and then type the correct password. The page remains the same, except the **Log In** link changes to a **Log Off** link and all of the tabs are visible, as shown in the following figure.

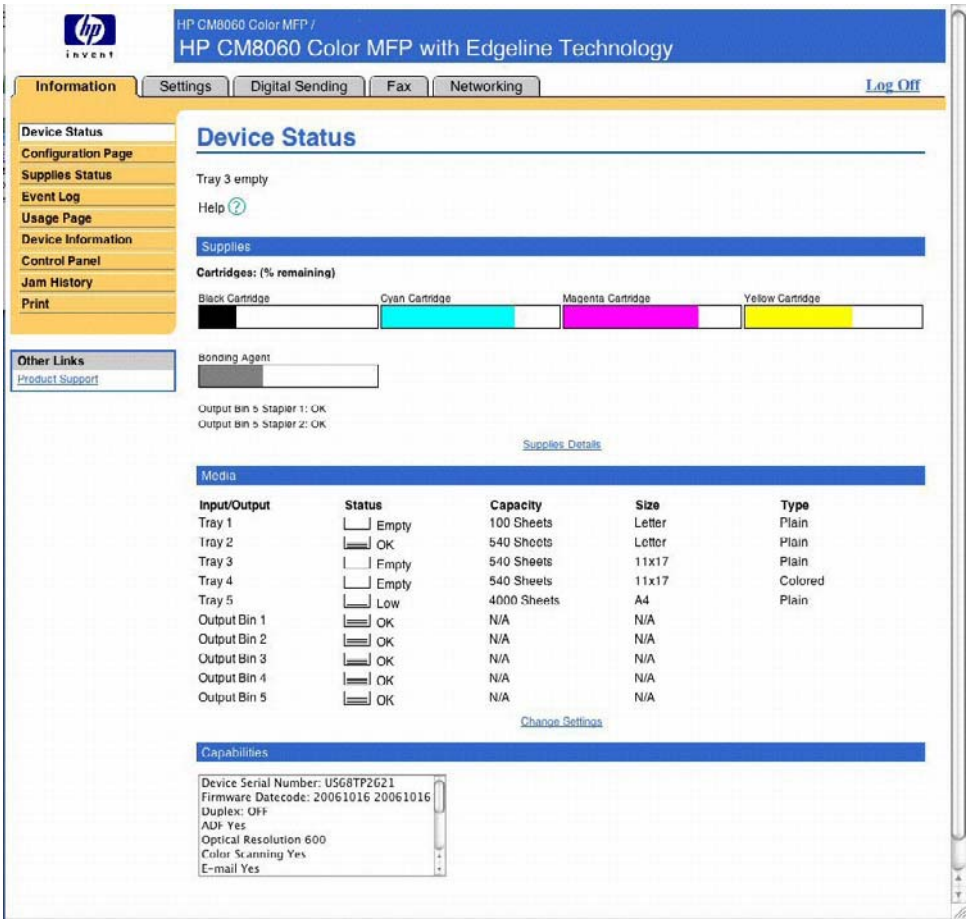


Figure 2-44 HP EWS home page with an admin user logged in

To log out of the system, click the **Log Off** link and close the browser.

Unprotected system

Browsing to the device TCP/IP address in an unprotected system opens the **Device Status** page that appears on the **Information** tab, but all tabs are visible. Access privileges are the same as for the system administrator. All tabs and settings are available for configuration tasks.

Password behavior

No administrator password is set when the device is shipped, which means that the system is unprotected. Any HP EWS user automatically has all system administrator privileges until a password is set. After a password is set, only the system administrator has access to the **Security** page that is used to configure the password. The administration password can be cleared (set to an empty string) to remove the protection from the system and return it to the default configuration.

HP Web Jetadmin

Use the HP Web Jetadmin and a browser to manage HP Jetdirect-connected devices within an intranet. HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool that should be installed only on a single network-administration server.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin, and for the latest list of host systems that support HP Web Jetadmin, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin

3 Install MS Windows printing-system components

Introduction

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology comes with software and installers for MS Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems support the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology, and software is available on the Web. This STR provides procedures for installing and uninstalling the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software.

Topics:

- Font support
- Print-driver installation instructions
- Fax-driver installation instructions

Font support

The following sections list the fonts that are included with MS Windows software, and the fonts that are available on the Windows installation CD that came with the device.

Topics:

- Basic fonts
- Default fonts

Basic fonts

MS Windows software includes these basic fonts, which can be used with any HP printing device:

- Arial
- Arial Bold
- Arial Bold Italic
- Arial Italic
- Courier New
- Courier New Bold
- Courier New Bold Italic
- Courier New Italic
- Symbol
- Times New Roman
- Times New Roman Bold
- Times New Roman Bold Italic
- Times New Roman Italic
- Wingdings

Default fonts

The following default fonts are installed through a Typical Installation or a Typical with Fax Installation of the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software.

Table 3-1 Default fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus Extra Bold	Regular	ALBR85W.TTF
Albertus Medium	Regular	ALBR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Regular	OLVR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Bold	OLVR75W.TTF
Antique Olive	Italic	OLVR56W.TTF

Table 3-1 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
CG Omega	Regular	CGOR45W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold	CGOR65W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold Italic	CGOR66W.TTF
CG Omega	Italic	CGOR46W.TTF
CG Times	Regular	CGTR45W.TTF
CG Times	Bold	CGTR65W.TTF
CG Times	Bold Italic	CGTR66W.TTF
CG Times	Italic	CGTR46W.TTF
Clarendon Condensed	Bold	CLAR67W.TTF
Coronet	Regular	CORONET.TTF
CourierPS	Regular	CPSR45W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold	CPSR65W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold Oblique	CPSR66W.TTF
CourierPS	Oblique	CPSR46W.TTF
Garamond	Antiqua	GARR45W.TTF
Garamond	Halbfett	GARR65W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv	GARR46W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv Halbfett	GARR66W.TTF
Helvetica®	Regular	HELR45W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold	HELR65W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold Oblique	HELR66W.TTF
Helvetica	Oblique	HELR46W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Regular	HELR47W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold	HELR67W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold Oblique	HELR68W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Oblique	HELR48W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book	AVGR45W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book Oblique	AVGR46W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Regular	AVGR65W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Oblique	AVGR66W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Regular	BOKR35W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Italic	BOKR36W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Regular	BOKR75W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Italic	BOKR76W.TTF

Table 3-1 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
ITC Zapf Chancery	Medium Italic	CHANC___.TTF
ITC Zapf Dingbats	Regular	DINGS___.TTF
Letter Gothic	Regular	LETR45W.TTF
Letter Gothic	Bold	LETR65W.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	LETR46W.TTF
Marigold	Regular	MARIGOLD.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold	NCSR75W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold Italic	NCSR76W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Italic	NCSR56W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Roman	NCSR55W.TTF
Palatino	Bold	PALR65W.TTF
Palatino	Bold Italic	PALR66W.TTF
Palatino	Italic	PALR46W.TTF
Palatino	Roman	PALR45W.TTF
SymbolPS	Regular	SYMPS__.TTF
Times*	Bold	TIMR65W.TTF
Times	Bold Italic	TIMR66W.TTF
Times	Italic	TIMR46W.TTF
Times	Roman	TIMR45W.TTF
Univers	Bold	UNVR65W.TTF
Univers	Bold Italic	UNVR66W.TTF
Univers	Medium	UNVR55W.TTF
Univers	Medium Italic	UNVR56W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold	UNVR67W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold Italic	UNVR68W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium	UNVR57W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium Italic	UNVR58W.TTF

Ninety-two additional PS emulation fonts are available on the Windows installation CD.

Table 3-2 Additional PS emulation fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus MT	Regular	PS_12639.TTF
Albertus MT	Italic	PS_12640.TTF
Albertus MT Lt	Regular	PS_14530.TTF

Table 3-2 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Antique Olive CompactPS	Regular	PS_11120.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Regular	PS_11119.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Bold	PS_11118.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Italic	PS_11846.TTF
Apple Chancery	Italic	PS_24516.TTF
Bodoni Poster	Regular	PS_12704.TTF
Bodoni PosterCompressed	Regular	PS_14508.TTF
BodoniPS	Regular	PS_12581.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold	PS_12585.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold Italic	PS_12586.TTF
BodoniPS	Italic	PS_12582.TTF
Candid	Regular	PS_24517.TTF
Chicago	Regular	PS_24518.TTF
Clarendon Light	Regular	PS_14513.TTF
ClarendonPS	Regular	PS_10269.TTF
ClarendonPS	Bold	PS_12968.TTF
Cooper Black	Regular	PS_10369.TTF
Cooper Black	Italic	PS_10370.TTF
Copperplate32bc	Regular	PS_14514.TTF
Copperplate33bc	Regular	PS_14515.TTF
CoronetPS	Italic	PS_10249.TTF
Eurostile	Regular	PS_10267.TTF
Eurostile Bold	Regular	PS_10268.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Bold	PS_14512.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Regular	PS_14511.TTF
Geneva	Regular	PS_24509.TTF
GillSans	Regular	PS_13872.TTF
GillSans	Bold	PS_13874.TTF
GillSans	Bold Italic	PS_13875.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Regular	PS_14053.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Bold	PS_14054.TTF
GillSans ExtraBold	Regular	PS_14051.TTF
GillSans	Italic	PS_13873.TTF
GillSans Light	Italic	PS_13871.TTF

Table 3-2 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
GillSans Light	Regular	PS_13870.TTF
Goudy	Bold	PS_12544.TTF
Goudy	Bold Italic	PS_10695.TTF
Goudy	Regular	PS_12542.TTF
Goudy ExtraBold	Regular	PS_12545.TTF
Goudy	Italic	PS_12543.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Regular	PS_14526.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold	PS_14528.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold Italic	PS_14529.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Italic	PS_14527.TTF
Hoefler Text	Regular	PS_24519.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Regular	PS_24521.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Italic	PS_24522.TTF
Hoefler Text	Italic	PS_24520.TTF
Hoefler Text Ornaments	Regular	PS_24523.TTF
Joanna MT	Regular	PS_14503.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold	PS_14505.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold Italic	PS_14506.TTF
Joanna MT	Italic	PS_14504.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	PS_13778.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Regular	PS_13777.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold	PS_13779.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold Italic	PS_13780.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Regular	PS_12675.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold	PS_12677.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold Italic	PS_12625.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Italic	PS_12623.TTF
MarigoldPS	Regular	PS_94073.TTF
Mona Lisa Recut	Regular	PS_14525.TTF
Monaco	Regular	PS_24524.TTF
New York	Regular	PS_24510.TTF
Optima	Regular	PS_12506.TTF
Optima	Bold	PS_12510.TTF
Optima	Bold Italic	PS_12511.TTF

Table 3-2 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Optima	Italic	PS_12507.TTF
Oxford	Italic	PS_14072.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Italic	PS_11546.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Regular	PS_11545.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold	PS_11547.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold Italic	PS_11548.TTF
Taffy	Regular	PS_14507.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Regular	PS_13501.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold	PS_14023.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold Italic	PS_14024.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Italic	PS_13502.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold	PS_14030.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold Italic	PS_14040.TTF
Univers 55	Regular	PS_14021.TTF
Univers 55	Italic	PS_14022.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Regular	PS_14029.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Italic	PS_14039.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold	PS_13548.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Regular	PS_13547.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold Italic	PS_14481.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Italic	PS_14480.TTF

Print-driver installation instructions

Topics:

- General MS Windows installation instructions
- Detailed MS Windows installation instructions
- Set a default printer

General MS Windows installation instructions

Installation is similar for the Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000 operating systems.

If the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology is connected through a file or print server, the printing-system software must be installed on the server before being installed on any client systems. If the printing-system software is *not* installed on the server first, then bidirectional communication and some driver autoconfiguration methods are not available to the client systems.

For Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000, the person installing the software must have administrator rights on the system.

When the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system installer runs, the uninstaller is added to the system.

Topics:

- Install from the Windows printing-system CD
- Install from a network or from downloaded files

Install from the Windows printing-system CD

Follow these instructions to install the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing system from the Windows installation CD that came with the device.

1. Quit all unnecessary software programs.
2. Insert the Windows installation CD into the CD-ROM drive.

   NOTE: If the CD does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the SETUP.EXE file in the root directory of the CD.

3. Click **Install** and follow the onscreen prompts.

Install from a network or from downloaded files

Follow these instructions when installing printing-system files that have been downloaded from the Web, or when installing files from a network. See the system administrator for the location of the printing-system software file.

1. Browse to the location of the SETUP.EXE file.
2. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file.
3. Click **Install** and continue to follow the instructions until the device is installed. For detailed installation instructions, see Detailed MS Windows installation instructions on page 97.

Detailed MS Windows installation instructions

A series of dialog boxes appear during installation of the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software in MS Windows operating systems.

Topics:

- Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons
- Direct-connect installation through a USB port
- Unsupported operating system dialog box
- Installation dialog-box sequence
- Modify a pre-existing installation
- Install drivers by using Add Printer
- Installer Customization Wizard for Windows
- Point-and-Print installation for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003

Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons

Click the **Help** button on any screen where it appears to find suggestions for and explanations about the installation process.

Click the **Back** button in any installation dialog box to return to the previous dialog box. The specific dialog box depends on previous selections.

Select any options on a screen and click the **Next** button to proceed to the next step in the installation sequence.

To exit the installation sequence without installing the device, follow these steps from any dialog box where the **Cancel** button appears.

1. Click **Cancel**. A dialog box opens that prompts you with this question: "Are you sure you want to cancel the installation?"

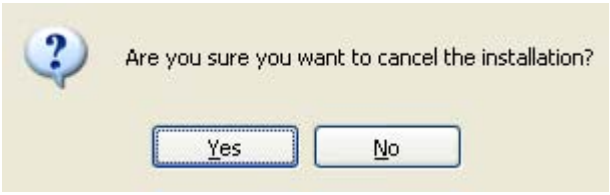


Figure 3-1 **Are you sure you want to cancel the installation?** dialog box

2. Click **Yes**. The **Cancel** dialog box opens, stating that the setup was unable to complete the installation.

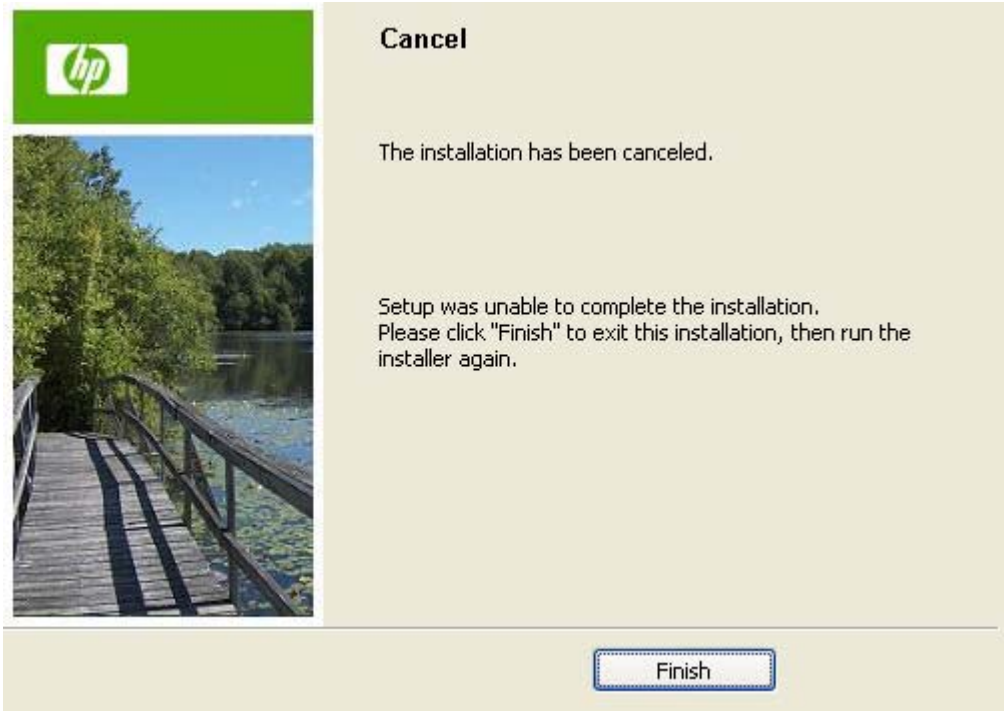


Figure 3-2 **Cancel** dialog box

3. Click **Finish** to exit the installation.

Direct-connect installation through a USB port

The printing-system software should be installed *before* the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology is connected to the computer through a USB connection and turned on. During the installation process, the software generates a prompt to connect the device.

Unsupported operating system dialog box

The MS Windows NT 4.0 and MS Windows 98 operating systems do *not* support the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology. When attempting to install the software in these operating systems, an **Unsupported Operating System** dialog box appears.

An example of an **Unsupported Operating System** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-3 Setup Error – Unsupported Operating System, MS Windows 98

Installation dialog-box sequence

NOTE: Install the printing-system software *before* the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology is connected to the computer through a USB connection and turned on. During the installation process, the software generates a prompt to connect the device. For a network installation, connect the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology to the network and turn it on before installing the printing-system software.

NOTE: The dialog boxes shown in this STR appear in the Windows Vista or Windows XP Professional installation. The order and appearance of dialog boxes can vary among operating systems.

Click **Install** on the main screen of the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows printing-system software CD Browser. The **Welcome to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Setup Wizard** dialog box appears.

NOTE: If you are installing the printing-system software on a system that runs a non-supported default language, a **Language Selection** dialog box appears. Select any other language that is available on the Windows installation CD by clicking the down arrow on the drop-down menu, and then click **OK** to initiate the printing-system setup. The **Welcome to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Setup Wizard** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-4 Welcome to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Setup Wizard dialog box

Read the software-license agreement, and then click **Yes** to proceed with the installation.

The **Printer Connection** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

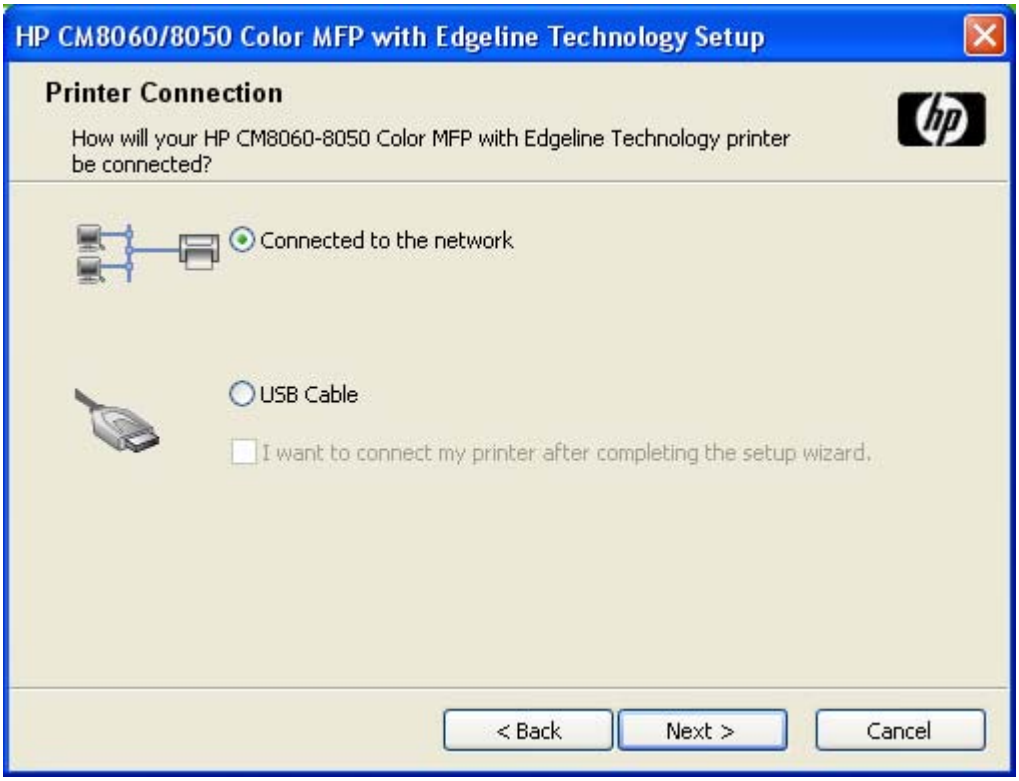


Figure 3-5 **Printer Connection** dialog box

Two options are available in the **Printer Connection** dialog box:

- **Connected to the network**
- **USB Cable**

  The **I want to connect my printer after completing the setup wizard.** check box is unavailable by default. Select **USB Cable**, and then select this check box to install the software now but connect to the device at a later time.

NOTE: The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology does *not* support infrared connections or connections over a parallel port.

NOTE: Install the printing-system software *before* the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology is connected to the computer through a USB connection and turned on. During the installation process, the software generates a prompt to connect the device.

NOTE: When plugged into an individual device, a USB port is created during the driver installation. As a result, plugging in five different devices results in five new copies of the driver and five new USB ports. The extra copies of the driver can be deleted, but the extra ports cannot be deleted unless the extra copies of the driver are deleted while the USB is connected.

If the USB is disconnected, the extra driver copies can be deleted, but the extra USB ports cannot be deleted.

Select **USB Cable** (a direct connection that uses a USB 2.0 cable) and then click **Next**. The **Model** dialog box appears (see Figure 3-20 Model dialog box on page 116).

When installing the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology over the network, select **Connected to the network** in the **Printer Connection** dialog box, and then click **Next**.

NOTE: For a network installation, connect the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology to the network and turn it on *before* continuing to install the printing-system software.

NOTE: "Wired networking" refers to the print device being connected to the network through a network cable. For wireless installation instructions when using an HP Jetdirect ew2400 802.11g Wireless Print Server or an HP Direct 380x802.11B wireless print server, consult the documentation that comes with the print server.

If the network has a firewall that is blocking the installation, the **Firewall Detected** dialog box appears for Windows XP, or the **Disable Your Firewall** dialog box appears for Windows Vista, as shown in the following figures.

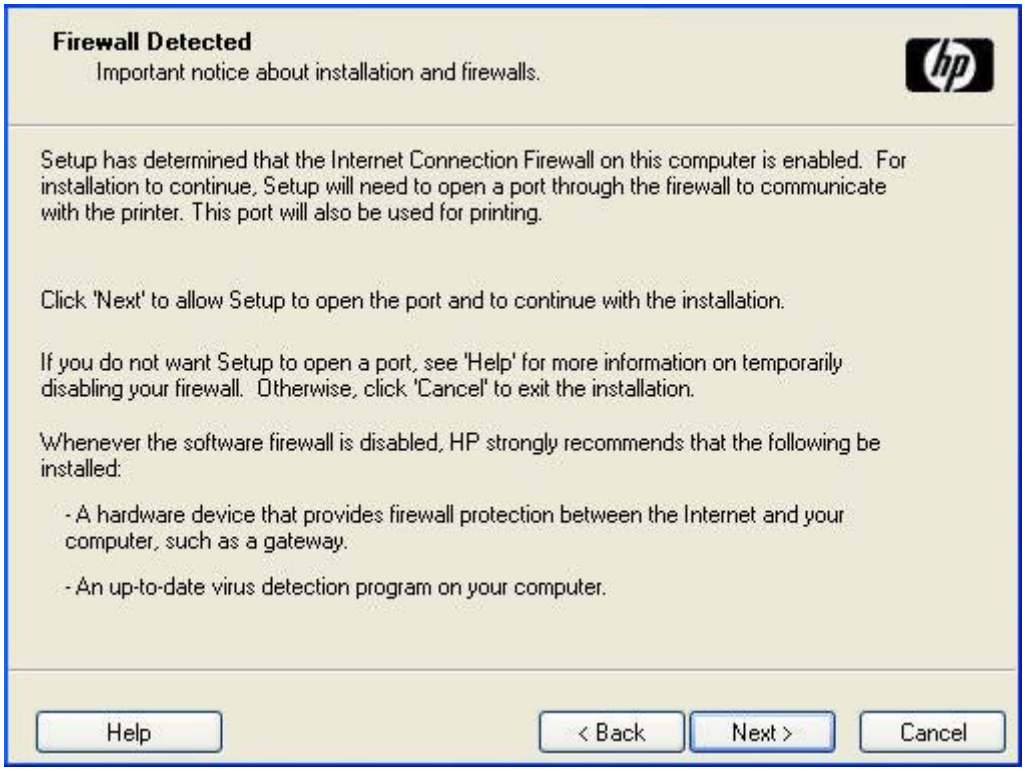


Figure 3-6 **Firewall Detected** dialog box (Windows XP)

Click **Next** to continue. The **Searching** dialog box appears (see Figure 3-8 Searching dialog box on page 104).

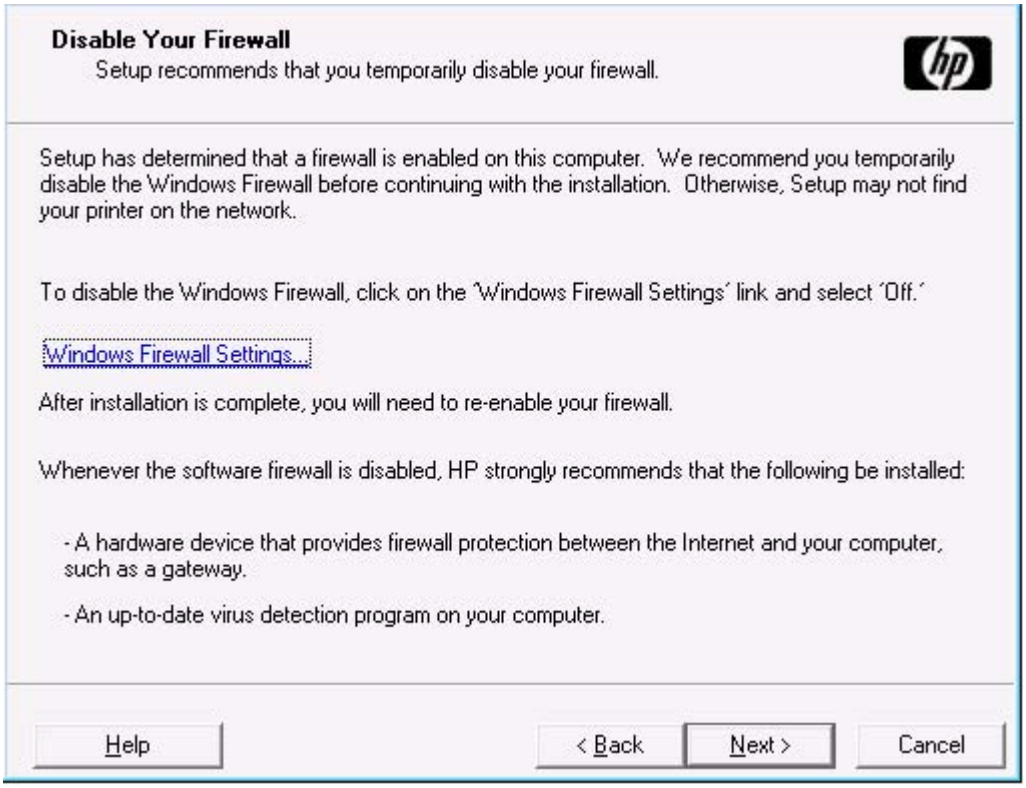


Figure 3-7 **Disable Your Firewall** dialog box (Windows Vista)

Click the **Windows Firewall Settings...** link to open the **Windows Firewall Settings** dialog box. Select **Off (not recommended)**, and then click **OK** to return to the **Disable Your Firewall** dialog box, and then click **Next** to continue. The **Searching** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

NOTE: After installation is complete in Windows Vista, you will be prompted to re-enable the firewall on the **Finish** dialog box.

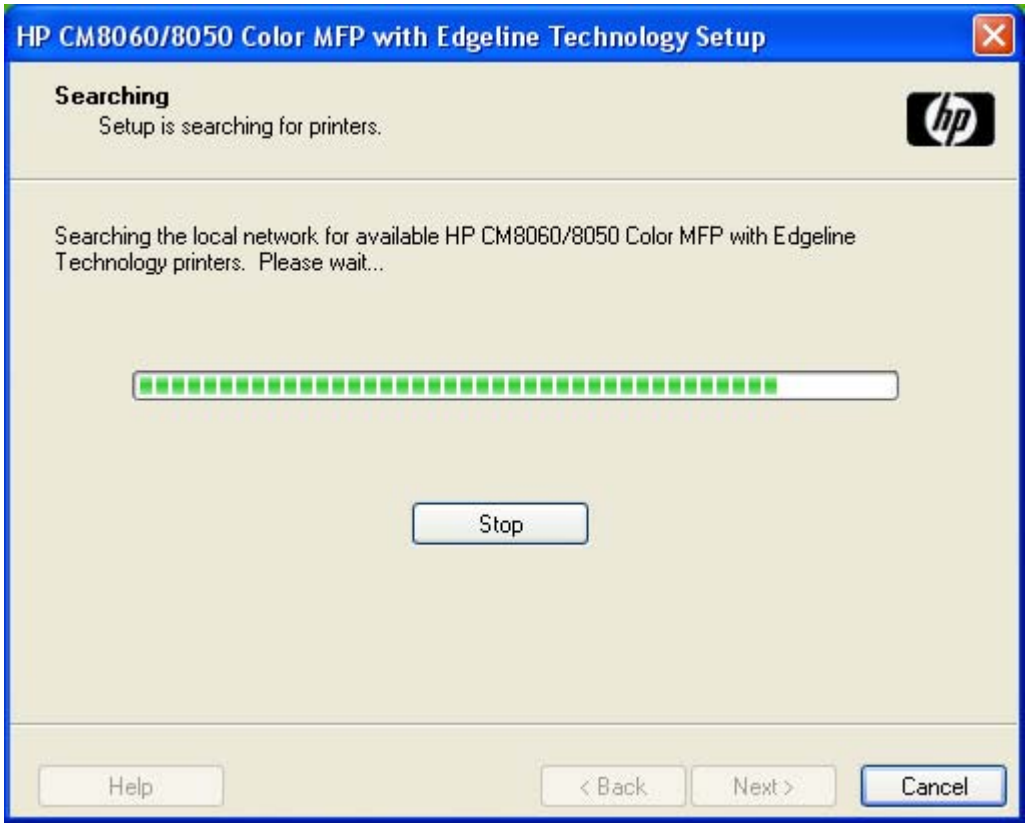


Figure 3-8 **Searching** dialog box

NOTE: When installing the device over a network, allow the search for the first subnet in the network to finish in order to find all available devices. After the first subnet is scanned for available HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology devices, the results appear in the **Printers Found** dialog box. However, the installer continues to search the network for additional devices. The results of the first search usually takes place within 20 seconds. Subsequently, the search of the other subnets for the full list of devices occurs. The results appear in the **Printers Found** dialog box (see Figure 3-11 Printers Found dialog box on page 107).

NOTE: If the device does not appear, the installation process includes the option of using the TCP/IP address for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology, which might be preferable to waiting for the installer to finish the search.

If no device is found during a network installation, the **Printer Not Found** dialog box appears for Windows XP or Windows Vista, as shown in the following figures.

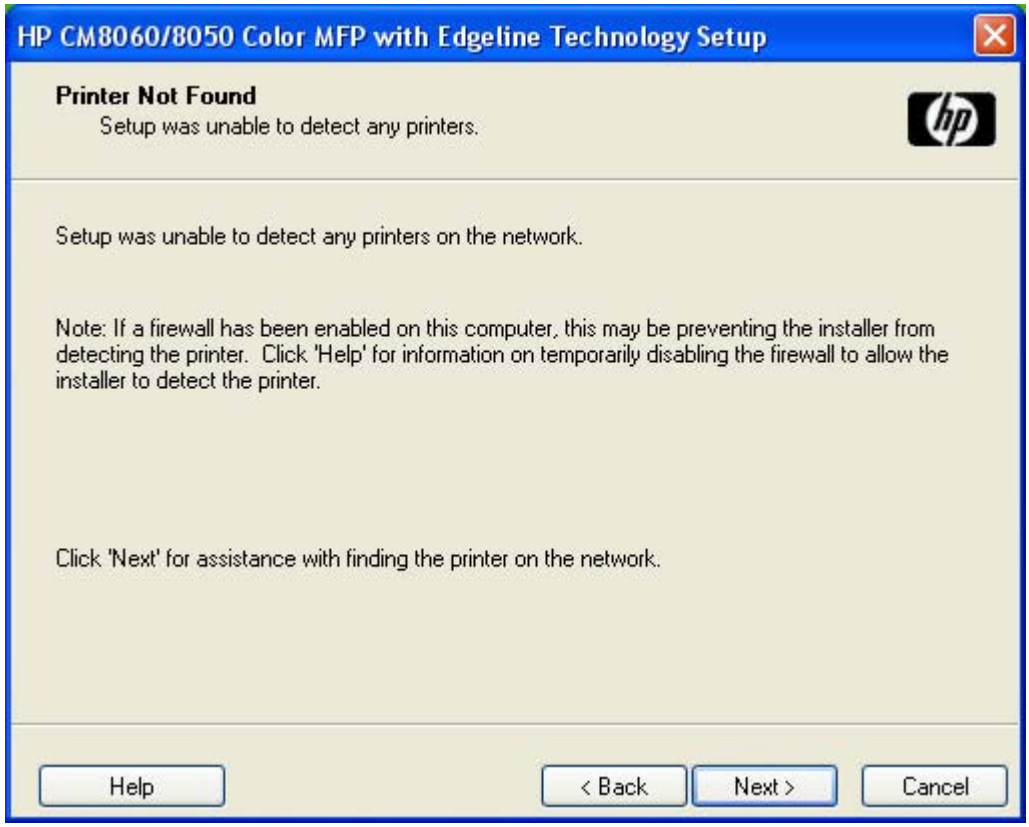


Figure 3-9 **Printer Not Found** dialog box (Windows XP)

If this dialog box appears, the device might not be connected to the network. Ensure that the device is connected and turned on. If a firewall is blocking the installation and you want the installer to open a port through the firewall, click **Next**. The **Check Printer Connection** dialog box appears (see Figure 3-16 Check Printer Connection dialog box on page 112).

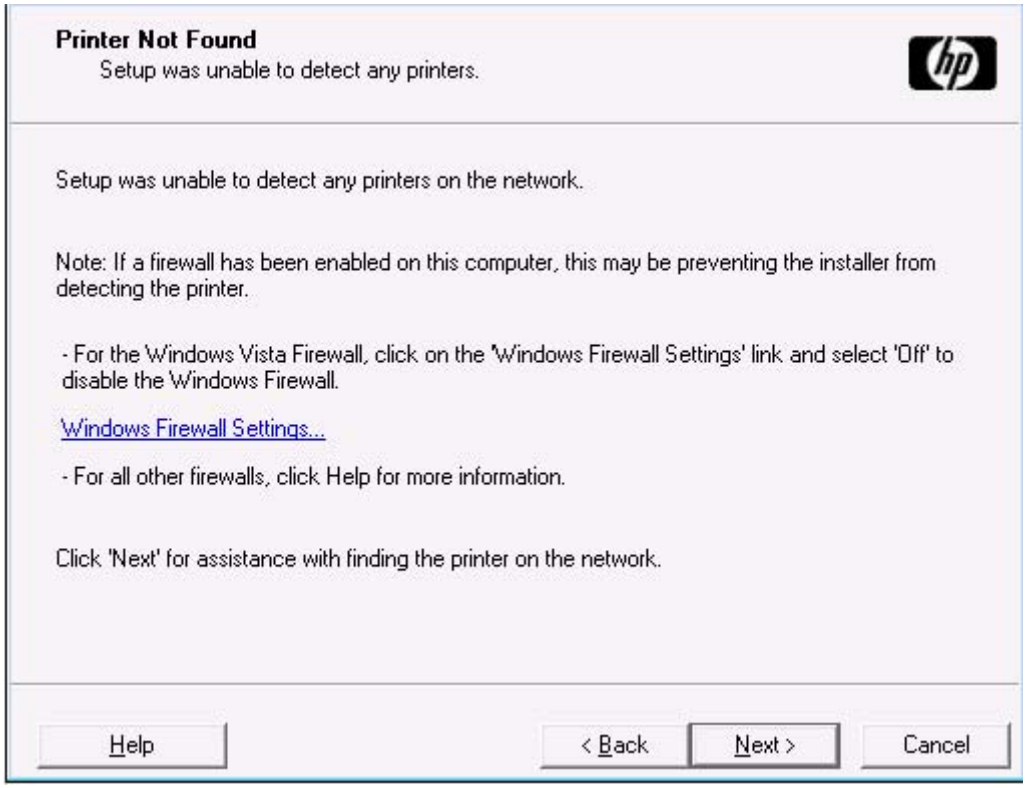


Figure 3-10 **Printer Not Found** dialog box (Windows Vista)

If this dialog box appears, the device might not be connected to the network. Ensure that the device is connected and turned on. If a firewall is blocking the installation, click the **Windows Firewall Settings...** link to open the **Windows Firewall Settings** dialog box. Select **Off (not recommended)**, and then click **OK** to return to the **Printer Not Found** dialog box, and then click **Next**. The **Check Printer Connection** dialog box appears (see Figure 3-16 Check Printer Connection dialog box on page 112).

If the software finds devices, the **Printers Found** dialog box appears, containing a list of matching devices that have been found on the network, as shown in the following figure.

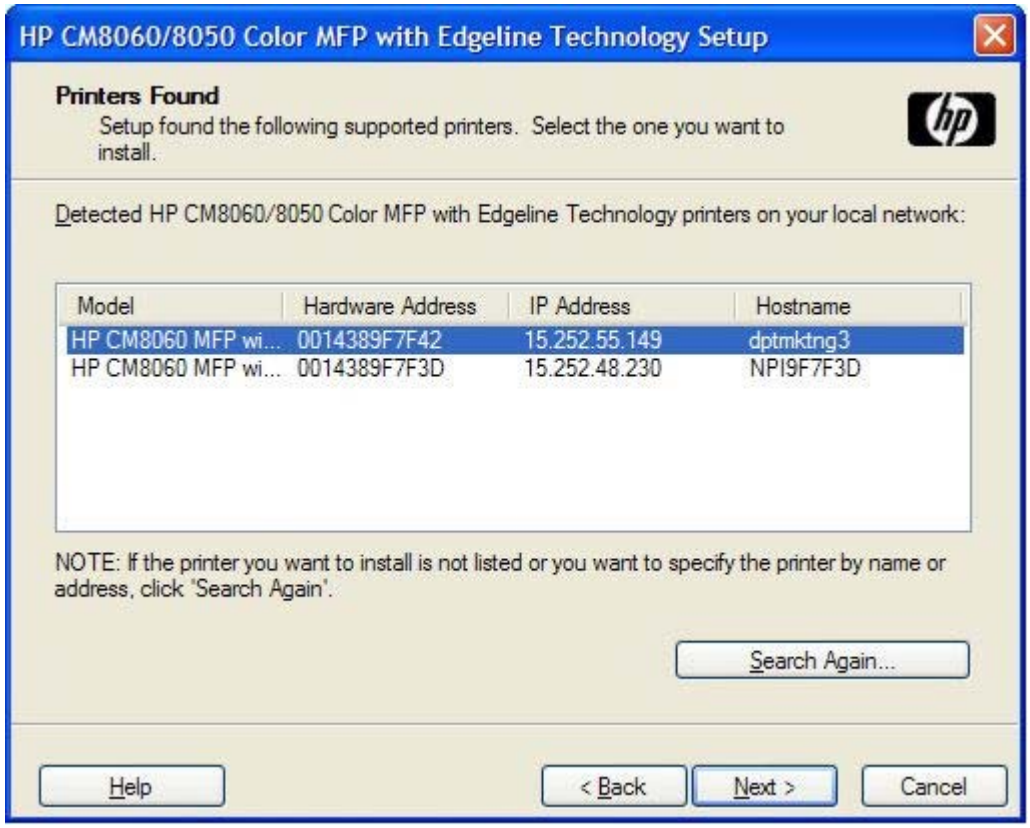


Figure 3-11 **Printers Found** dialog box

Select the device to install and click **Next**. The **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box opens (see Figure 3-13 Confirm Network Settings dialog box on page 109).

If the device to install is not listed and you know its TCP/IP address, click **Search Again...**. The **Check Printer Connection** screen appears (see Figure 3-16 Check Printer Connection dialog box on page 112).

If a single device is found, the **Printer Found** dialog box appears, containing a list of matching devices on the network. The **Printer Found** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

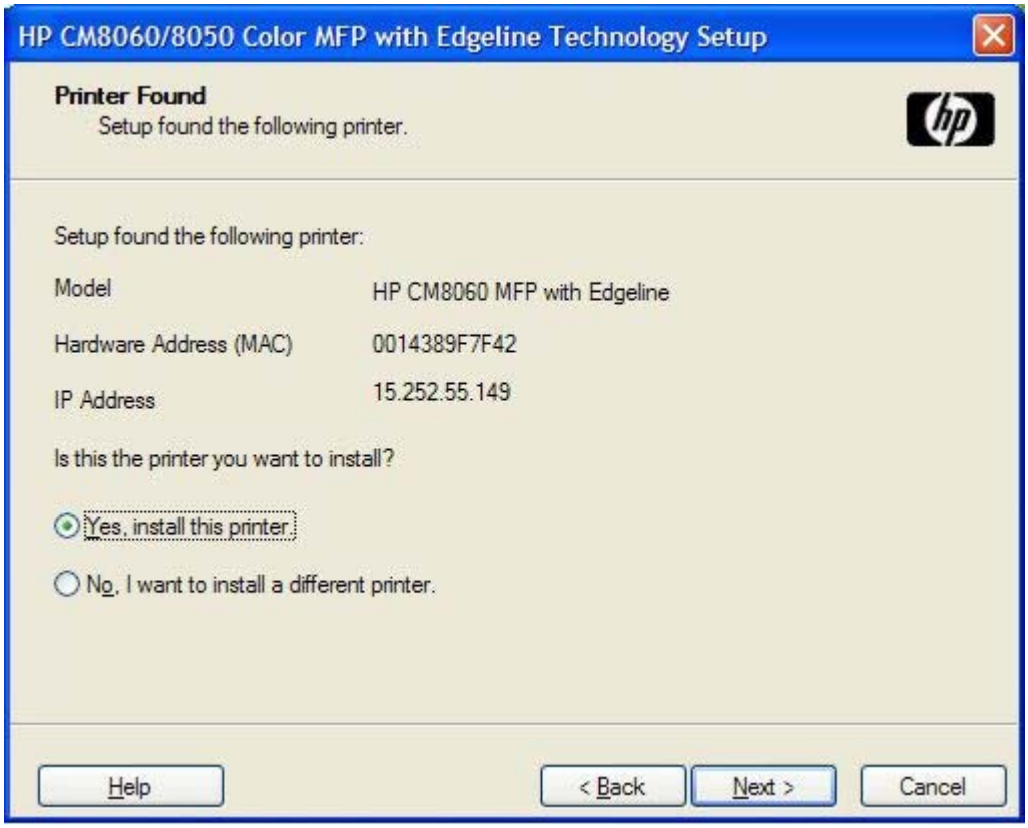


Figure 3-12 **Printer Found** dialog box

To install a different device, select **No, I want to install a different printer.** and then click **Next**. The **Check Printer Connection** dialog box opens, advising you to make sure the cable is properly connected, and giving you the option of searching again for a network device or specifying a device by address (see Figure 3-16 Check Printer Connection dialog box on page 112).

To install the device listed, select **Yes, install this printer.** and then click **Next**. The **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

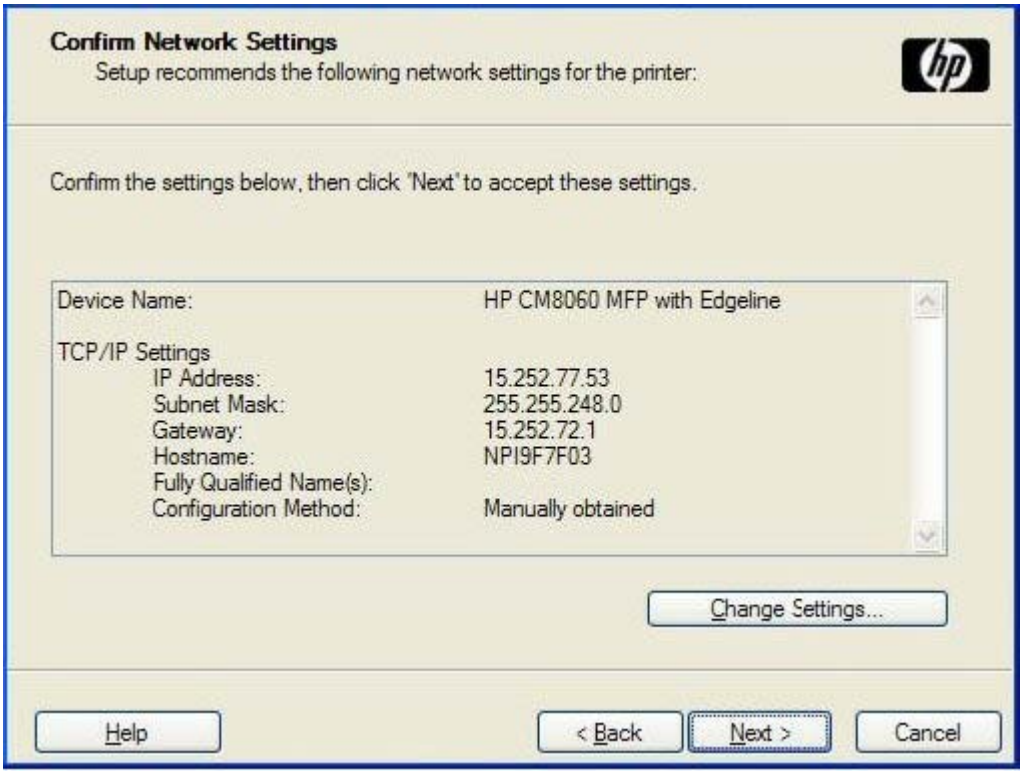


Figure 3-13 **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box

In the **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box, click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Installation Type** dialog box appears (see Figure 3-21 Installation Type dialog box on page 117).

If you click **Change Settings...**, the **Confirm Change Setting** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

WARNING! When the TCP/IP configuration is changed by using the **Change Settings** button, the actual settings in the device change. Make changes to these settings only with the advice of the system administrator.

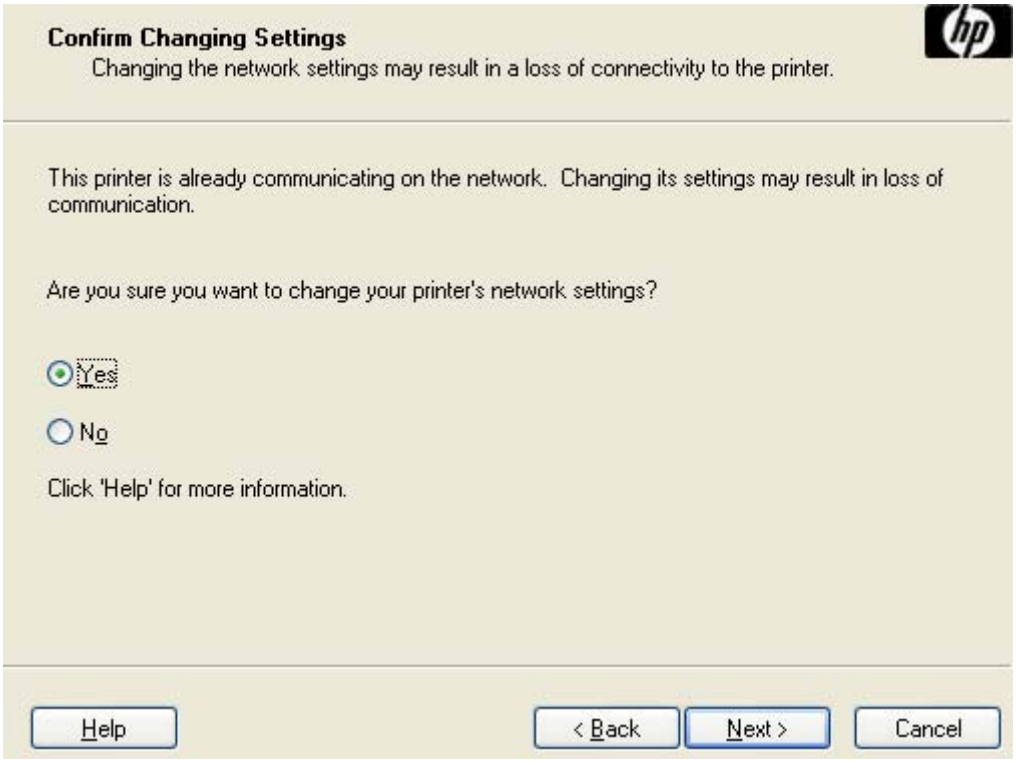


Figure 3-14 **Confirm Changing Setting** dialog box

If you select **Yes** and click **Next**, the **Change TCP/IP Settings** dialog box opens (see Figure 3-15 Change TCP/IP Settings dialog box on page 111).

If you select **No** and click **Next**, the **Installation Type** dialog box appears (see Figure 3-21 Installation Type dialog box on page 117).

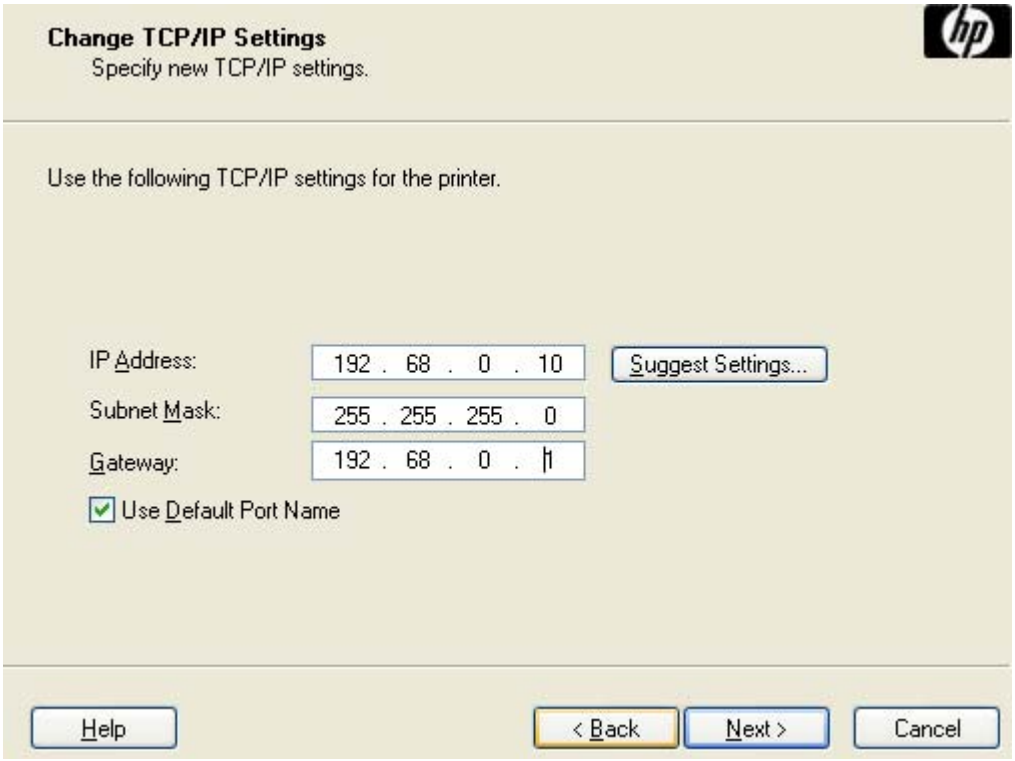


Figure 3-15 **Change TCP/IP Settings** dialog box

If you change information in the **IP Address:**, **Subnet Mask:**, or **Gateway:** fields (without clicking **Next**) and then click **Suggest Settings...**, the fields refresh with information that was found by the installer and reported in the **Printer Found** screen.

Type a different TCP/IP Address, Subnet Mask, or Gateway address and then click **Next** to open the **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box (see Figure 3-13 Confirm Network Settings dialog box on page 109).

If you clear the **Use Default Port Name** check box and click **Next**, the **Set Port Name** dialog box opens (see Figure 3-19 Set Port Name dialog box on page 115).

The **Check Printer Connection** dialog box, which appears when **No, I want to install a different printer.** is selected in the **Printer Found** dialog box or if the system failed to detect the device over the network, is shown in the following figure.

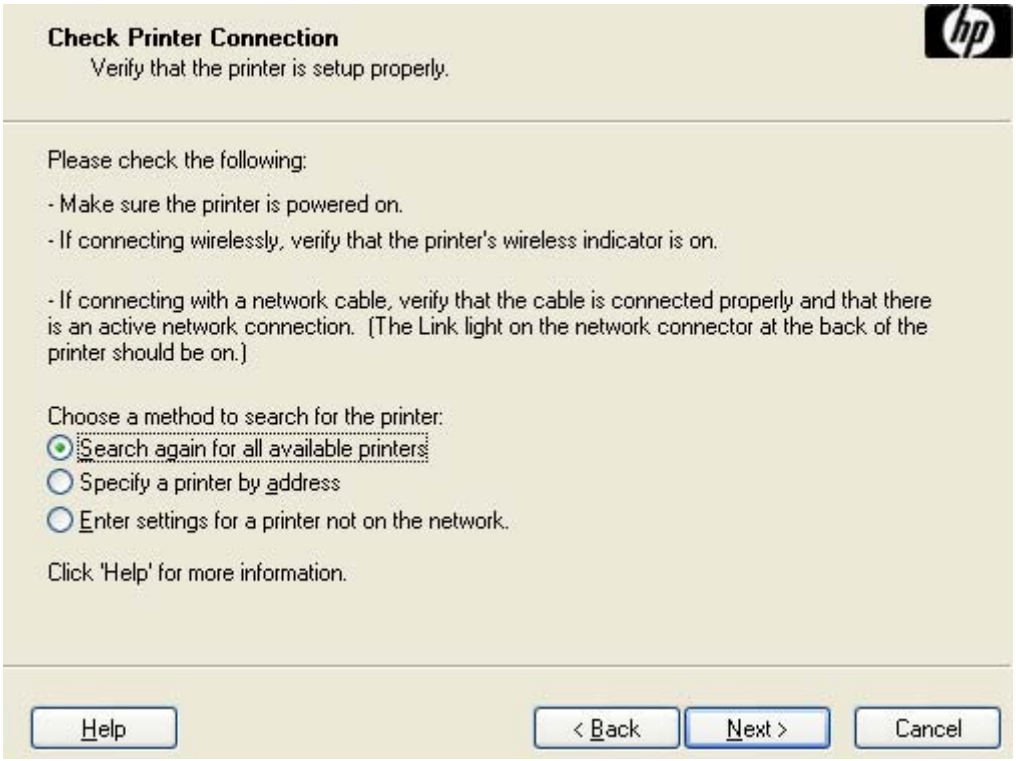


Figure 3-16 **Check Printer Connection** dialog box

If you select **Search again for all available printers** and then click **Next**, the **Searching** dialog box opens (see Figure 3-8 Searching dialog box on page 104).

If you select **Specify a printer by address** and then click **Next**, the **Specify Printer** dialog box opens. The **Specify Printer** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

If you select **Enter settings for a printer not on the network.** and then click **Next**, the **Printer Settings** dialog box appears (see Figure 3-18 Printer Settings dialog box on page 114).

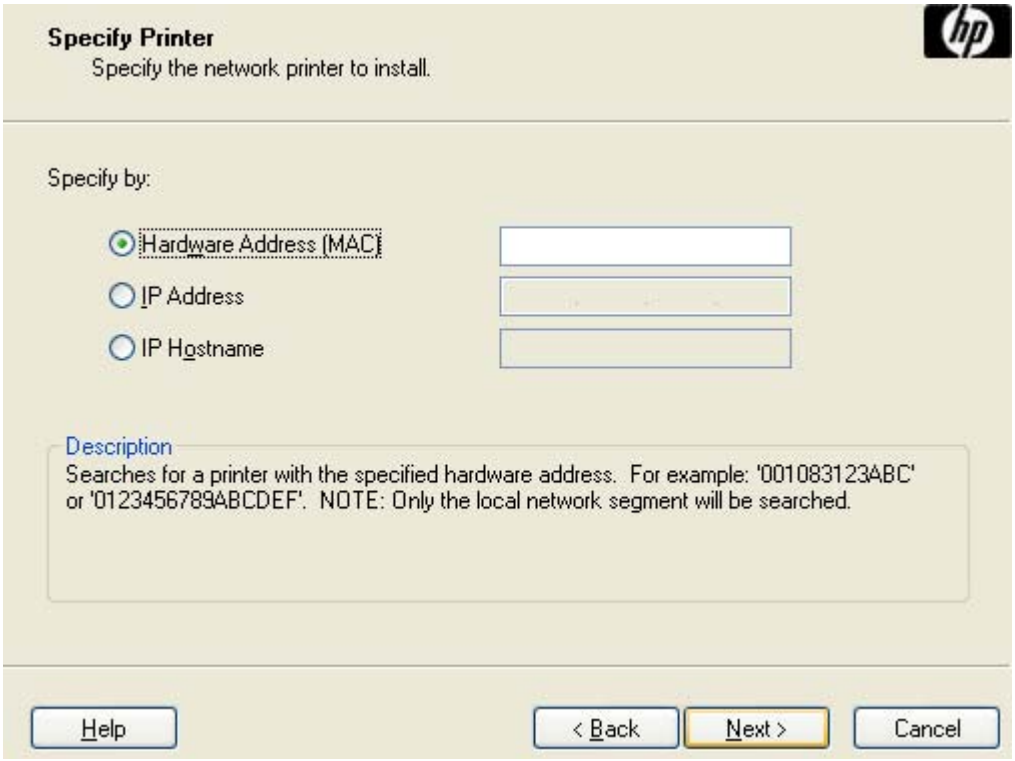


Figure 3-17 **Specify Printer** dialog box

Specify a device by selecting one of the following options and typing the required information:

- **Hardware Address (MAC)**
- **IP Address**
- **IP Hostname**

When you click **Next**, the **Searching** dialog box opens. When the search is finished, the **Printer Found** dialog box opens (see Figure 3-12 Printer Found dialog box on page 108).

If you click **Enter settings for a printer not on the network** in the **Check Printer Connection** dialog box and then click **Next**, the **Printer Settings** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

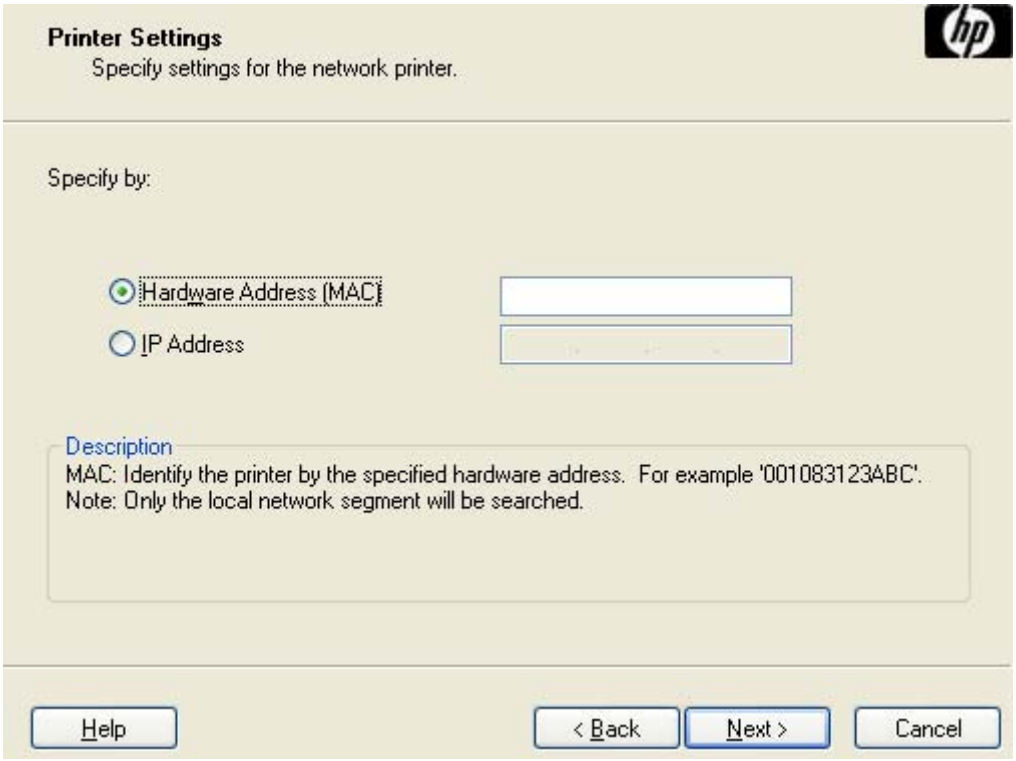


Figure 3-18 **Printer Settings** dialog box

To install the device by using the hardware address, select **Hardware Address (MAC)**, type the device hardware address in the field, and then click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Set Port Name** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

To install the device using the TCP/IP address, select **IP Address**, type the device TCP/IP address in the field, and then click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Set Port Name** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-19 **Set Port Name** dialog box

Accept the default port name, or type a port name in the **Port Name:** field and click **Next** to open the **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box (see Figure 3-13 Confirm Network Settings dialog box on page 109).

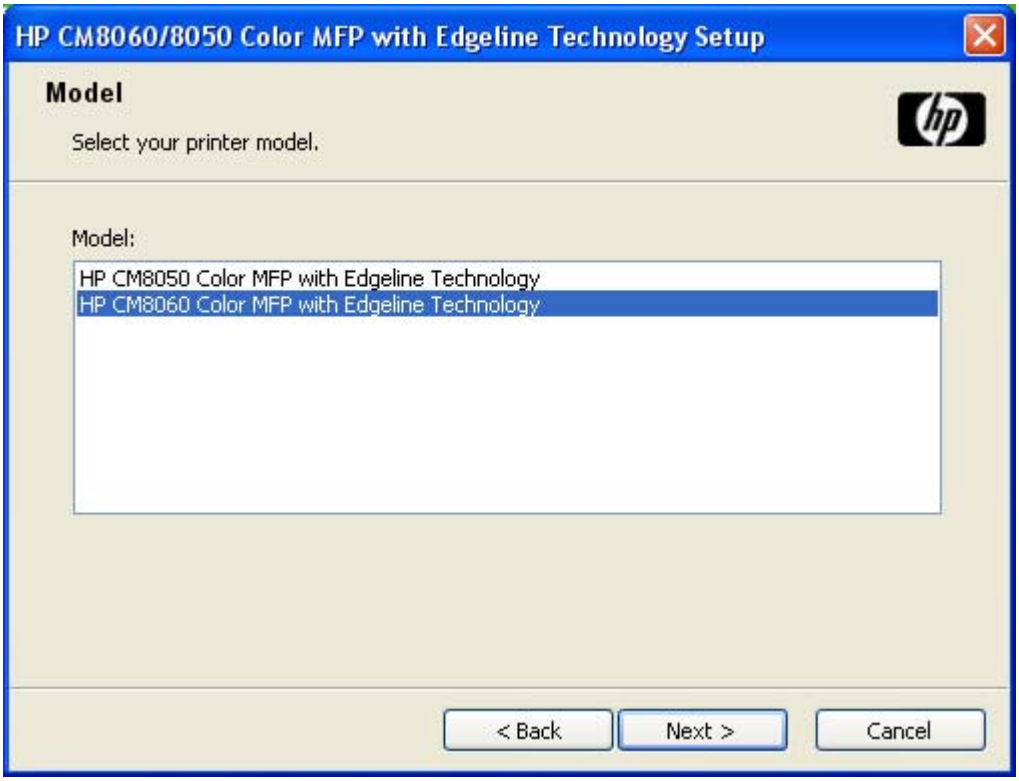


Figure 3-20 **Model** dialog box

NOTE: The **Model** dialog box appears *only* during a software-first, direct connection installation.

Select the device model, and then click **Next** to open the **Installation Type** dialog box.

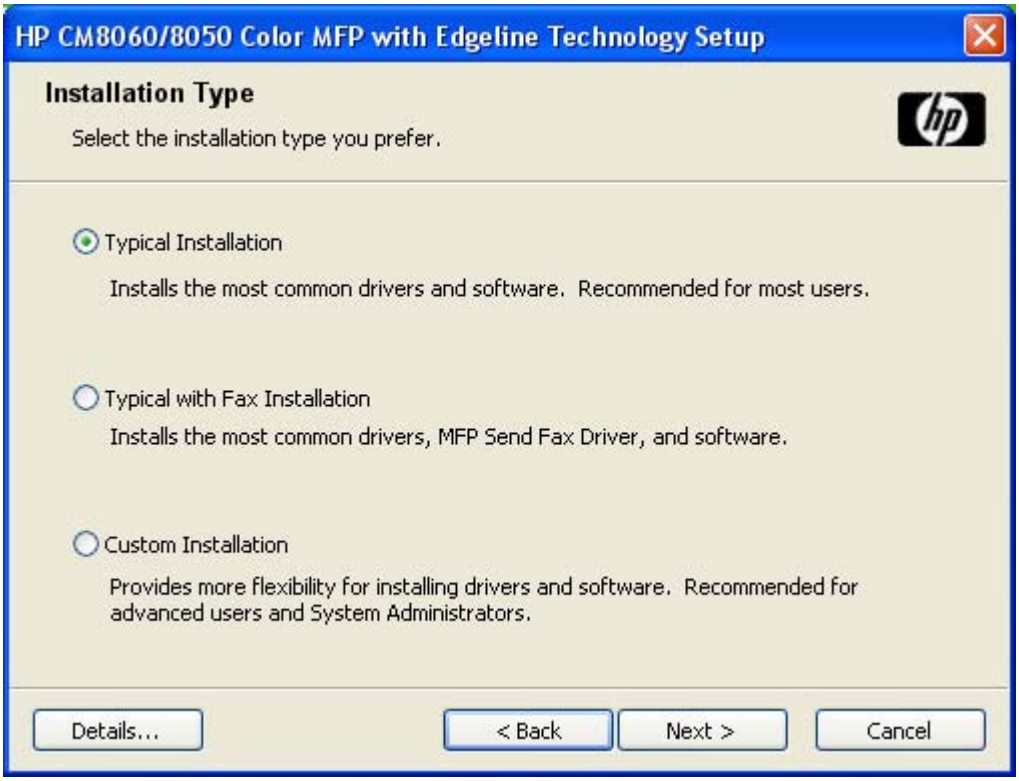


Figure 3-21 **Installation Type** dialog box

NOTE: For a **USB Cable** connection (a "direct connection" using a USB 2.0 cable), the **Typical with Fax Installation** installation type is *not* available.

To view details about the installation types, click **Details...**. The **Details** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

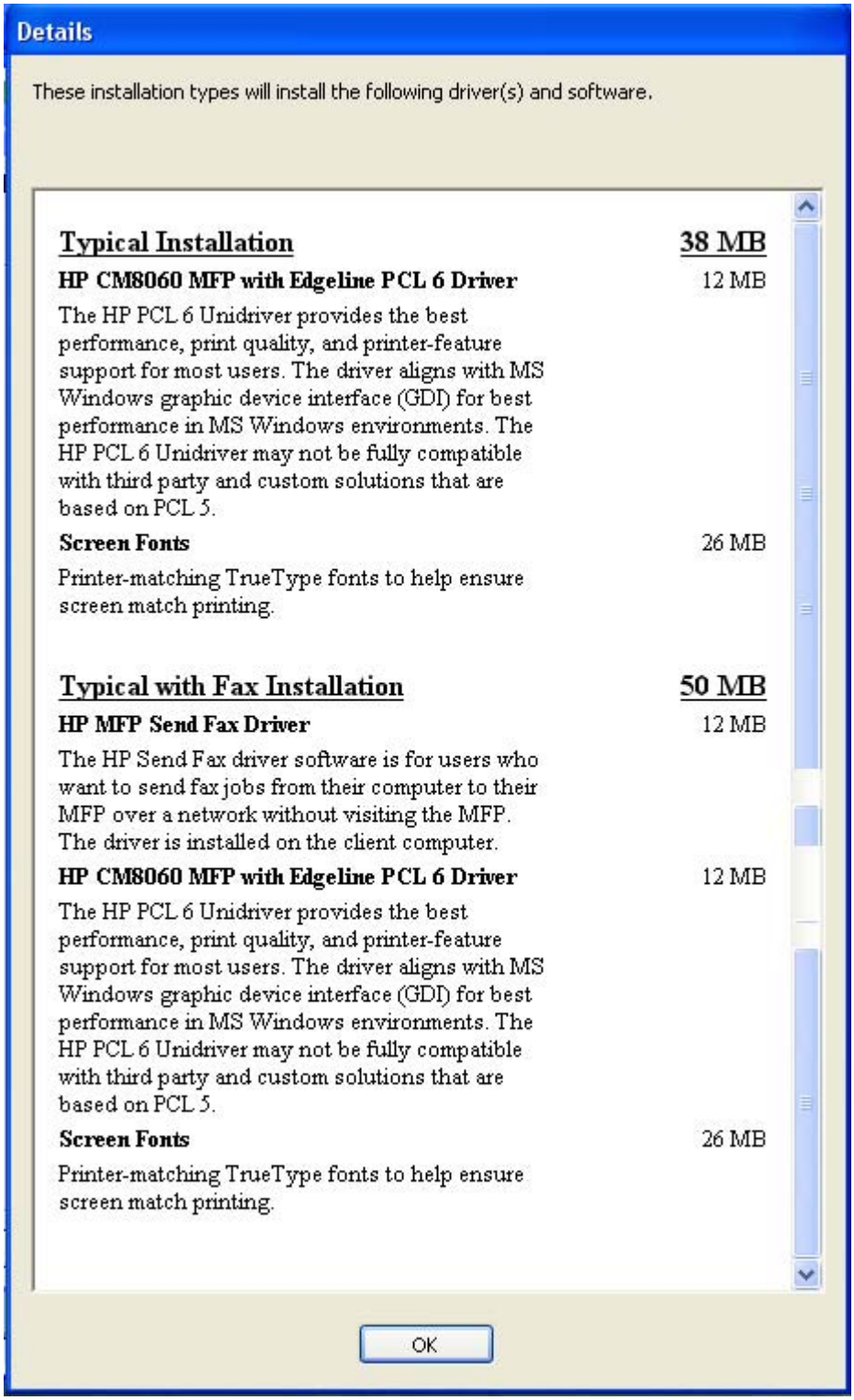


Figure 3-22 Installation type**Details** dialog box

Click **OK** to return to the **Installation Type** dialog box.

Select **Typical Installation** to install only the HP PCL 6 driver and screen fonts. If you select **Typical Installation** and then click **Next**, the **Ready to Install** dialog box opens (see Figure 3-25 Ready to Install dialog box on page 121).

Select **Typical with Fax Installation** to install the HP PCL 6 driver, the HP MFP Send Fax driver, and screen fonts. If you select **Typical with Fax Installation** and then click **Next**, the **Ready to Install** dialog box opens (see Figure 3-25 Ready to Install dialog box on page 121).

If you select **Custom Installation** and then click **Next**, the **Feature Selection** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

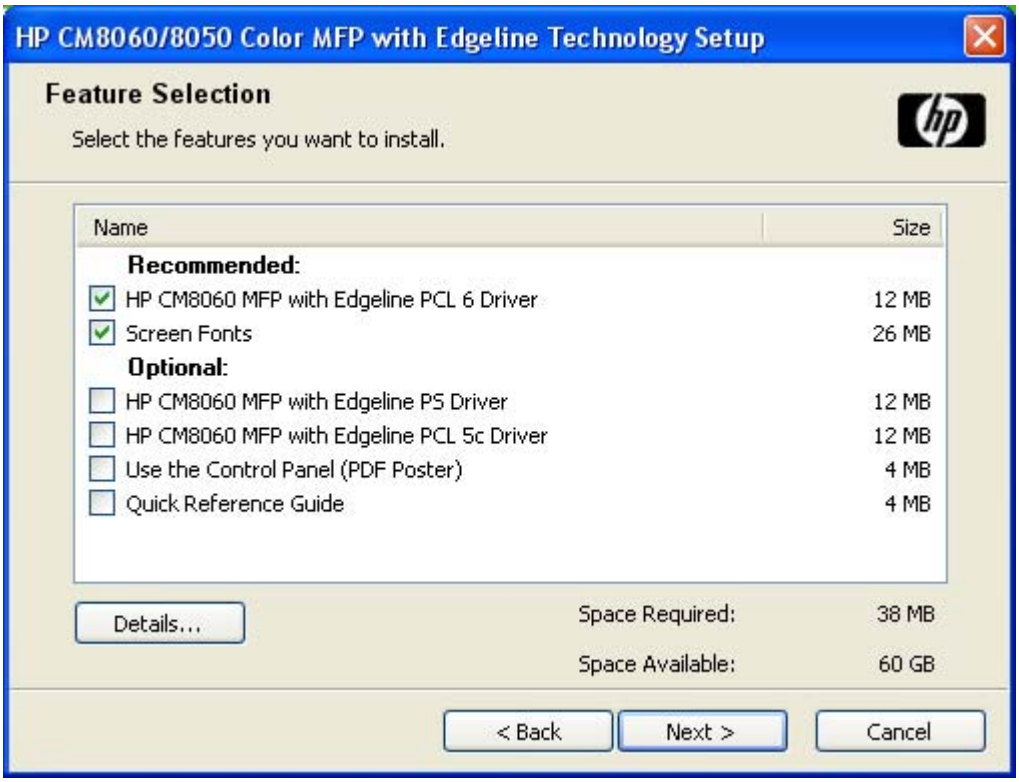


Figure 3-23 **Feature Selection** dialog box

An empty check box indicates that the feature is *not* installed. A check mark appears next to any driver or document that is to be installed.

Information about the space required and the space available on the hard drive appears in the dialog box.

Select any combination of features for the installer. It is possible to create a custom installer that installs features without including a print driver. Select the drivers and support documents to install.

To view details about the features, click **Details...**. The **Details** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

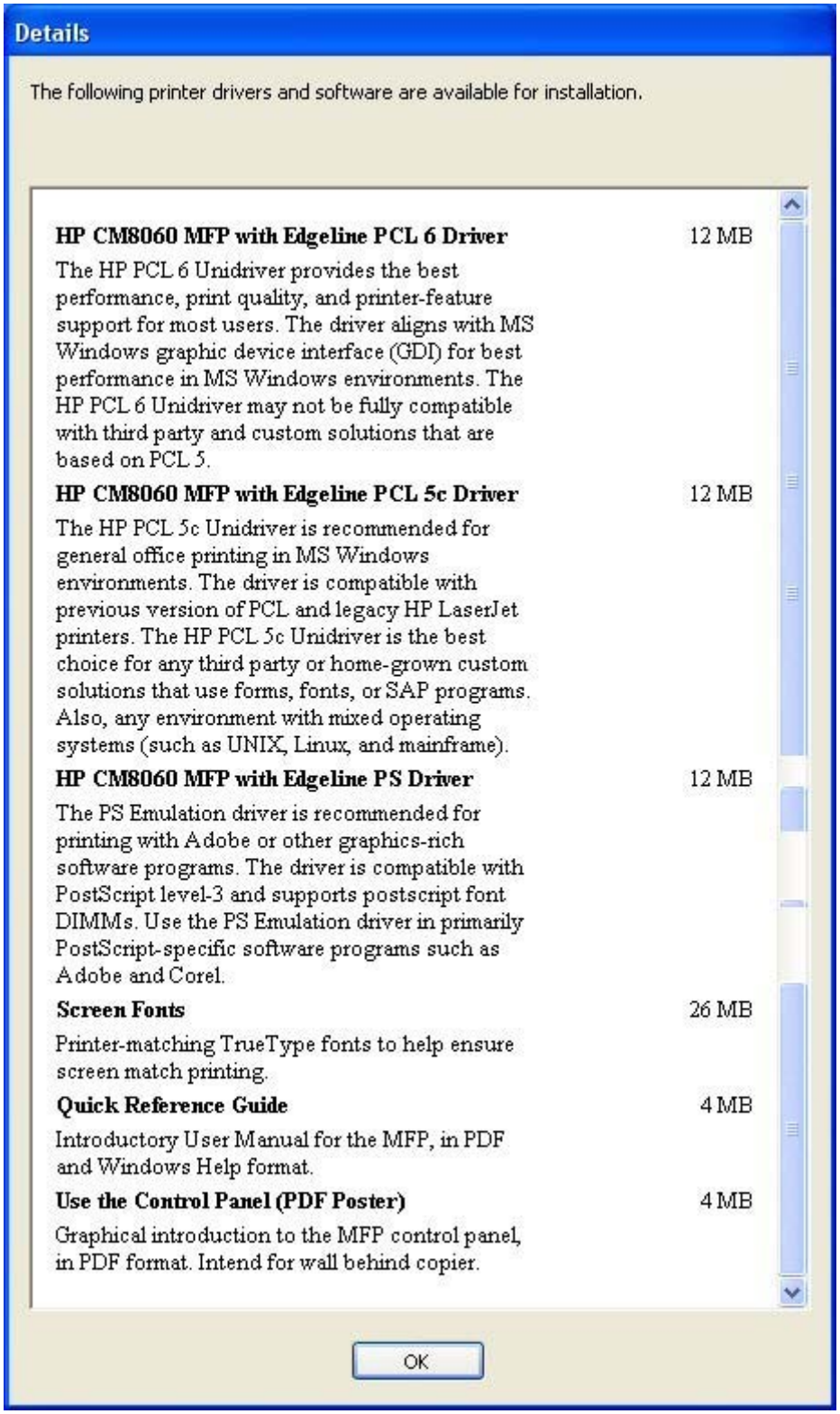


Figure 3-24 **Details** dialog box

Click **OK** to return to the **Feature Selection** dialog box.

In the **Feature Selection** dialog box, click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Ready to Install** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

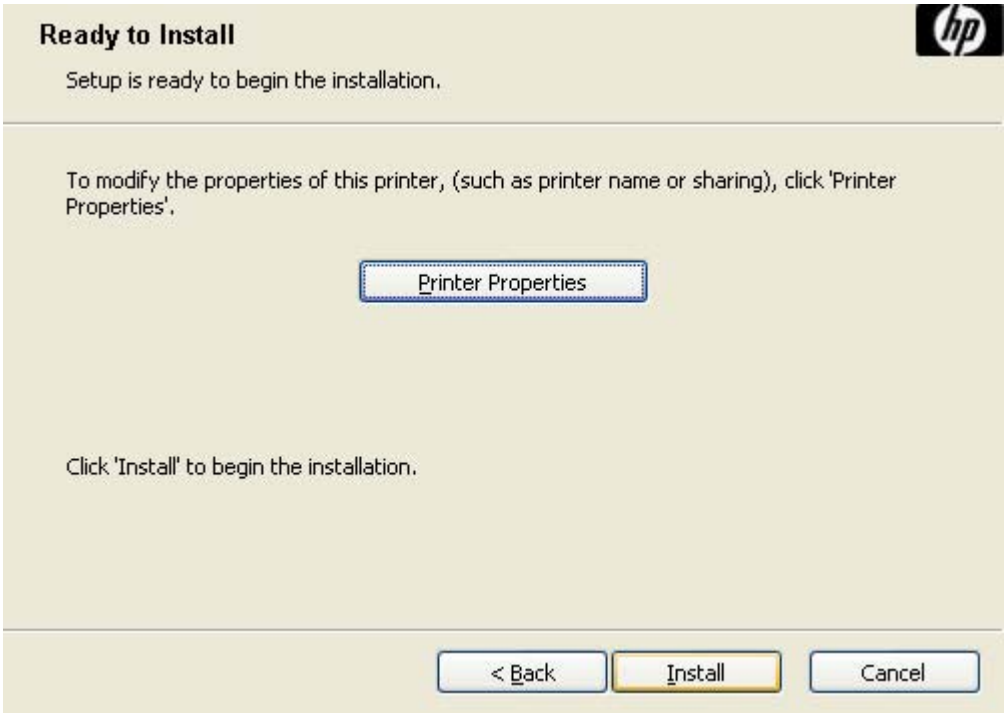


Figure 3-25 **Ready to Install** dialog box

Click **Install** to start the installation process.

Click **Printer Properties** to open the **Printer Properties** dialog box.

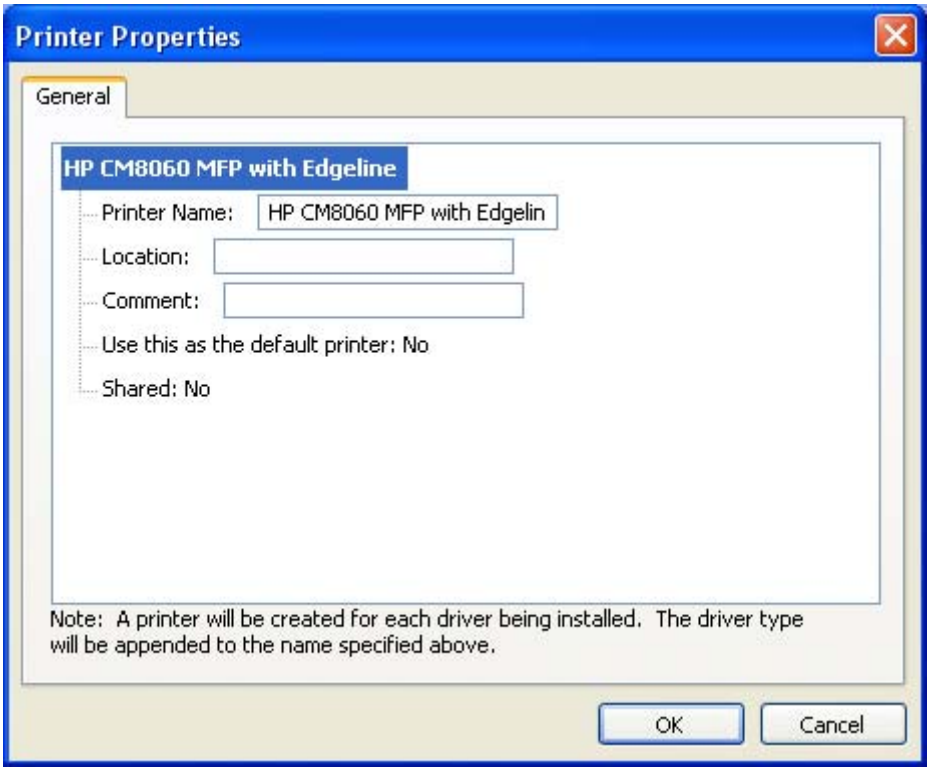


Figure 3-26 Printer Properties **General** tab

On the **General** tab, the device name can be changed by typing a new name in the **Printer Name:** field.

Use the **Location:** and **Comment:** fields to describe the device, as appropriate.

To use the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology as the default device, select the **Use this as the default printer** and select **Yes** in the drop-down menu. **No** is selected by default.

If the device is being installed on a network and it will be shared among users, select **Shared** and then click **Yes** in the drop-down menu. The device is not shared by default.

Click **OK** to return to the **Ready to Install** dialog box.

NOTE: If you share the device on Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows 2000 operating systems, type a name. Additional print driver support for other operating systems is also available.

If the device is not shared, additional driver support is not available.

In the **Ready to Install** dialog box, click **Next** to begin the process of copying and installing the printing-system software folders and files. The **Installation Status** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-27 **Installation Status** dialog box

This dialog box remains on the screen until the installation is complete.

When the installation is complete, the **Finish** dialog box appears for Windows XP or Windows Vista, as shown in the following figures.

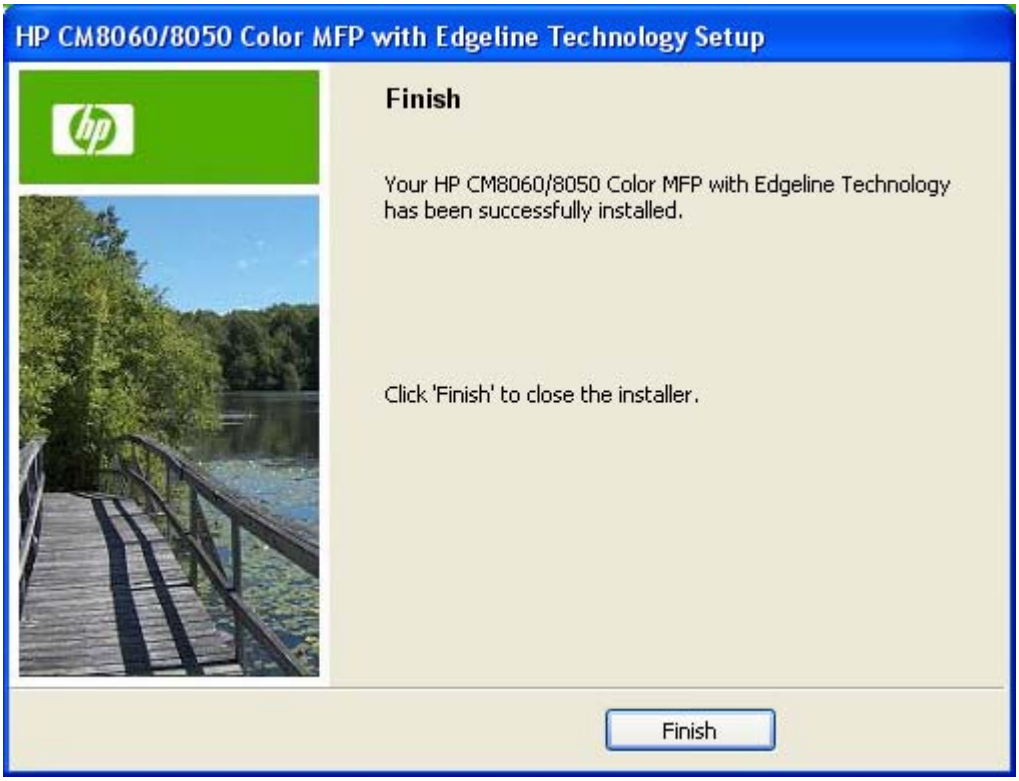


Figure 3-28 **Finish** dialog box (Windows XP)

Click **Finish** to close the **Finish** dialog box and exit the installer.

NOTE: Depending on the type of installation and selected options, additional steps might appear after you click **Finish**.

The **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Next Steps** dialog box appears (see Figure 3-30 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Next Steps — Congratulations dialog box on page 126).

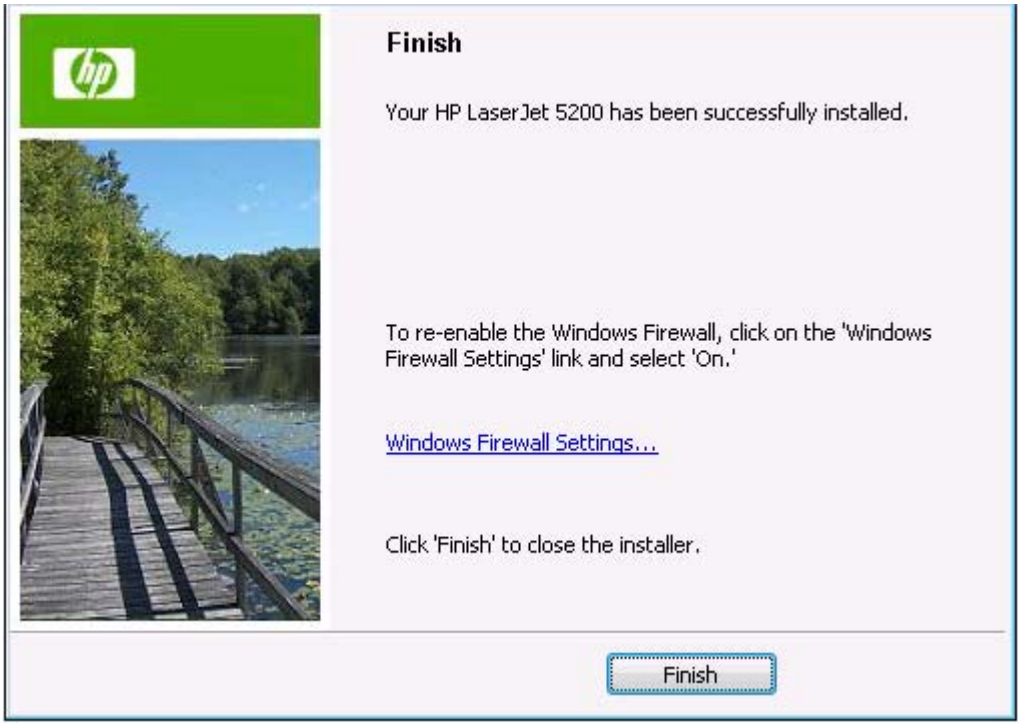


Figure 3-29 **Finish** dialog box (Windows Vista)

Click the **Windows Firewall Settings...** link to open the **Windows Firewall Settings** dialog box. Select **On (recommended)**, and then click **OK** to return to the **Finish** dialog box.

Click **Finish** to close the **Finish** dialog box and exit the installer.

NOTE: Depending on the type of installation and selected options, additional steps might appear after you click **Finish** and you might be prompted to restart the computer.

The **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Next Steps** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

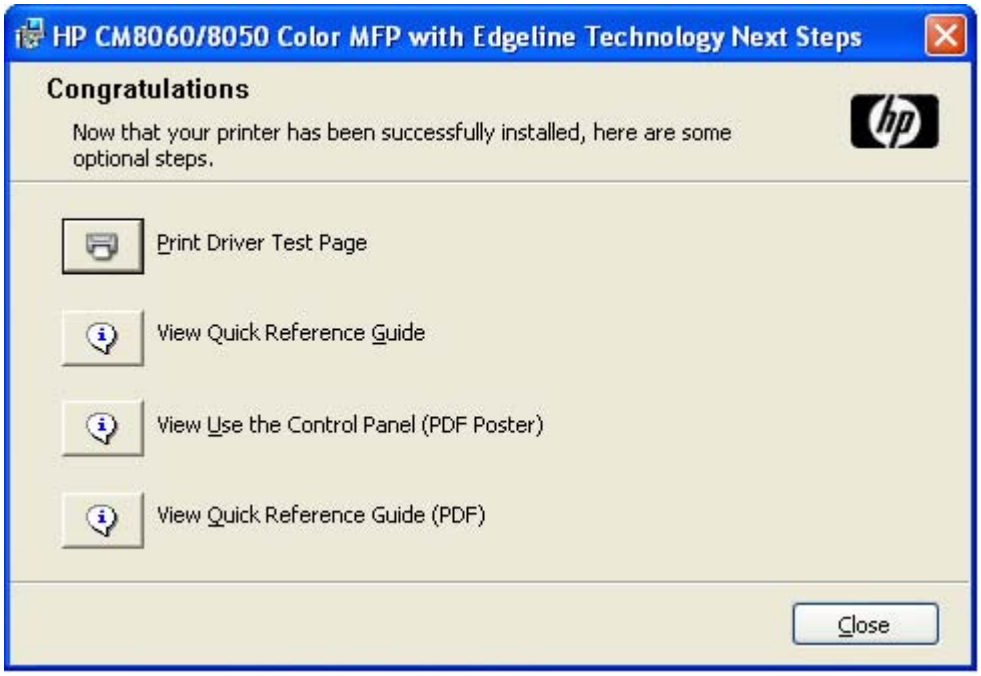


Figure 3-30 **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Next Steps — Congratulations** dialog box

To verify that the device is connected, click **Print Driver Test Page**.

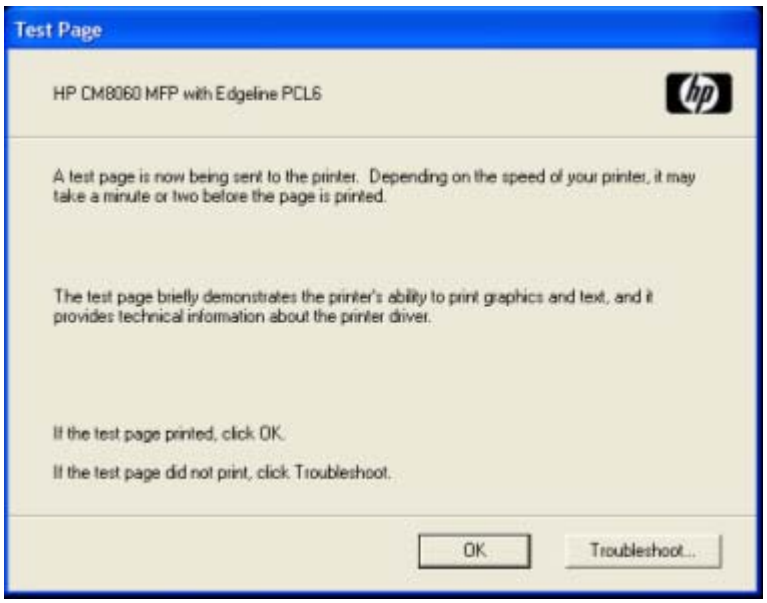


Figure 3-31 **Test Page** dialog box

If the test page prints correctly, click **OK** to continue. If it does not print, open the **Printer Properties** tab and try to print another test page, or click **Troubleshoot**.

Modify a pre-existing installation

If an HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology has been previously installed, the appearance of the main installation screen changes on the CD Browser, and the install-printer setting

changes to **Modify Installation**. A pre-existing installation also changes the sequence of installation screens.

When you click **Modify Installation** on the main Windows installation CD Browser screen, the **Setup Maintenance** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

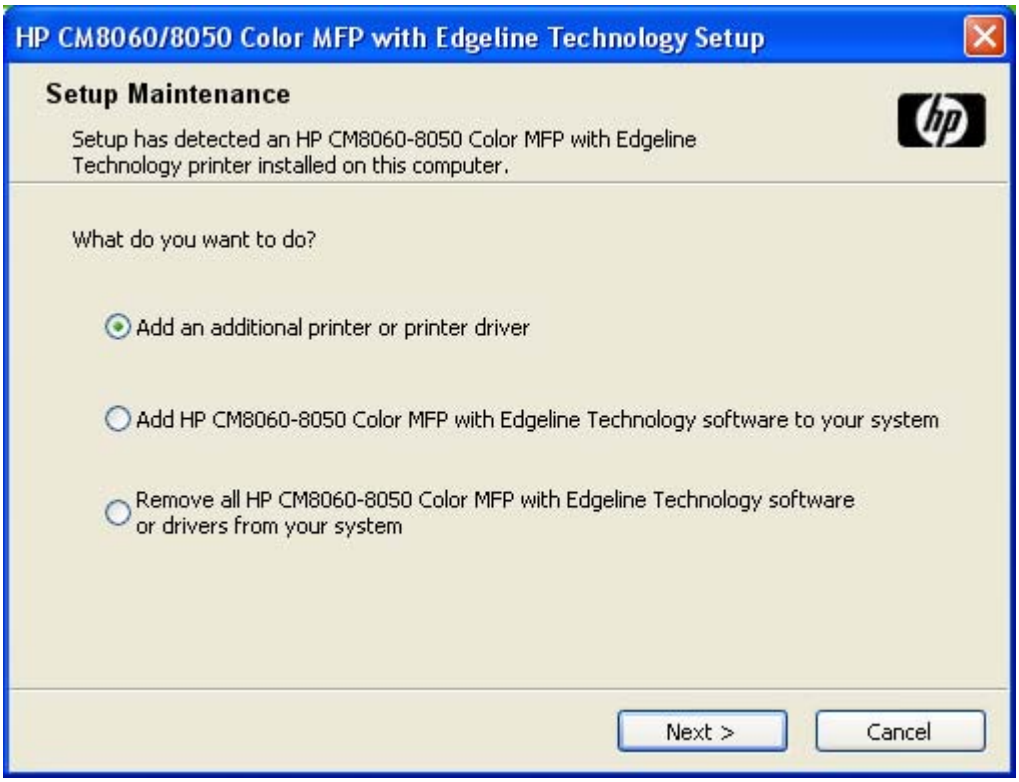


Figure 3-32 **Setup Maintenance** dialog box

Select the **Add an additional printer or printer driver** option and then click **Next** to add a print driver other than the one that was added during the previous installation. When you select this option, the installer discovers a list of available devices upon which to install the software, and a list appears from which to choose the installation type.

Select the **Add HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology software to your system** option and then click **Next** to add additional software, or to upgrade drivers you have previously installed on the system. When you select this option, the installer does *not* perform discovery of the previous installation. The options that appear are the same as those that appear when the original installation was performed (see Figure 3-24 Details dialog box on page 120).

Select the **Remove all HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology software or drivers from your system** option and then click **Next**. The **Ready to Remove** dialog box appears, a shown in the following figure.

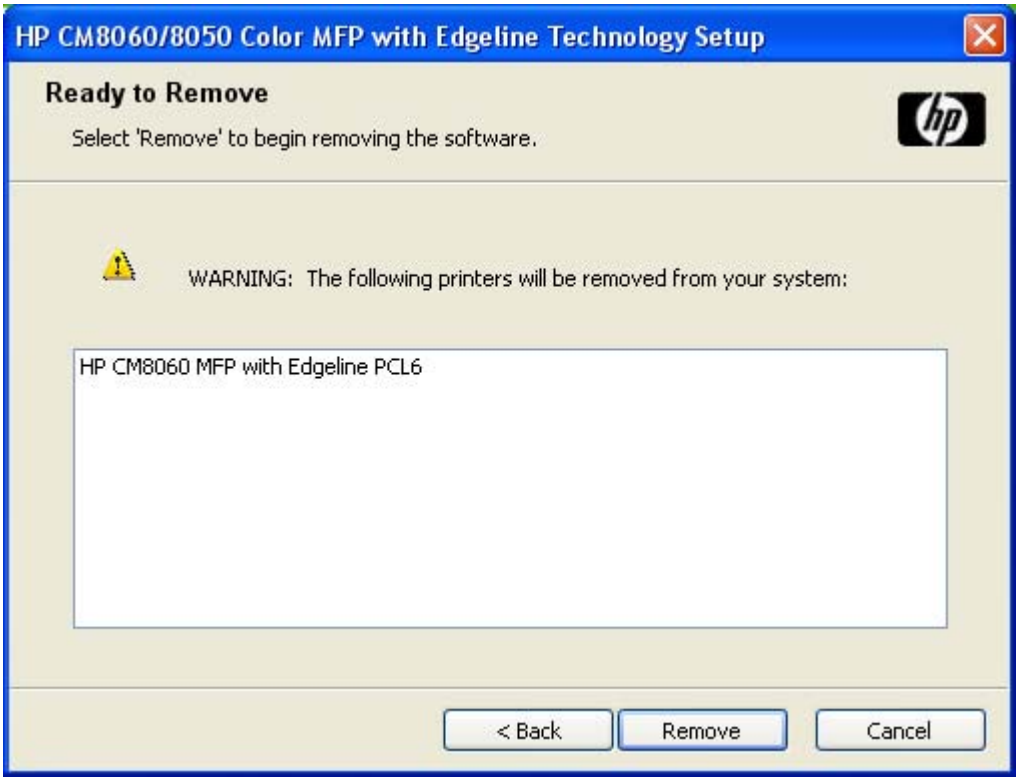


Figure 3-33 **Ready to Remove** dialog box

Click **Remove** to uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software. The **Un-installation Status** dialog box appears and remains on the screen until the uninstallation is complete.

When the uninstallation is complete, the **Finish** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

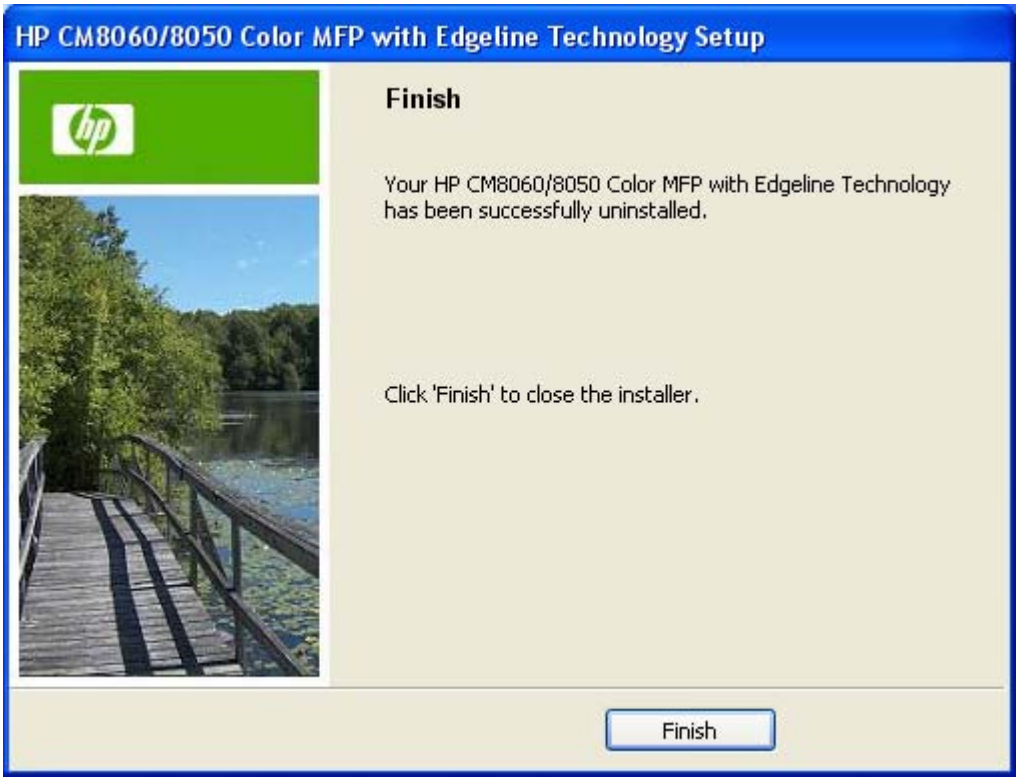


Figure 3-34 Uninstallation **Finish** dialog box

Click **Finish** to close the **Finish** dialog box and exit the installer.

Install drivers by using Add Printer

If the computer is running a 64-bit MS Windows operating system, install the corresponding 64-bit driver. The 64-bit drivers are included on the software CD-ROM. Use the following steps to install a driver by using the **Add Printer Wizard**.

1. Insert the Windows installation CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Go to the **Add Printer** feature in MS Windows.

   In Windows XP, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**. The **Printers and Faxes** window appears. Click **Add Printer**. The **Add Printer Wizard** screen appears.

   In Windows 2000, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, click **Printers**, and then click **Add Printer**. The **Add Printer Wizard** screen appears.
3. Use the **Add Printer Wizard** to find and connect to the device.

4. Select the **Have disk** option on the **Install Printer Software** screen, and navigate to one of the driver files on the Windows software CD in Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003:

   - To install the HP PCL 6 driver, select the following file:

     \Drivers\<operating system>\PCL6\hpc8060u.inf

   - To install the HP PCL 5 driver, select the following file:

     \Drivers\<operating system>\PCL5\hpc8060t.inf

   - To install the PS Emulation driver, select the following file:

     \Drivers\<operating system>\PS\hpc8060v.inf

   - To install the HP MFP Send Fax driver, select the following file:

     For 32-bit: \Driver\<your operating system>\SendFax\hpc4730e.inf

     For 64-bit: \Driver\<operating system>\SendFax\hpc4730w.inf

5. Complete the wizard steps. The driver is installed as part of the process.

Installer Customization Wizard for Windows

System administrators can use the **Installer Customization Wizard** to customize the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology installer by preconfiguring the installation options in a response file. To start the utility, click **Optional Software** on the main menu of the Windows software CD Browser, and then click **Installer Customization Wizard**.

NOTE: For detailed information about the **Installer Customization Wizard**, see the *Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.

Topics:

- Run the Installer Customization Wizard
- Dialog boxes
- Distribution

Run the Installer Customization Wizard

The **Installer Customization Wizard** runs from the Windows software installation CD. It runs separately from the common Microsoft Installer (MSI), and has its own interface.

Running the **Installer Customization Wizard** produces one installation package and a response file (RESPONSE.INI) for a single-system installation. The installation package might work for multiple systems that have the same response information, or the RESPONSE.INI file can be directly edited for system-configuration differences. The *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide* provides the exact text for replacing entries in the RESPONSE.INI file.

To run the Installer Customization Wizard

1. Insert the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Windows software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the CD Browser main screen, click **Optional Software**.
3. Click **Installer Customization Wizard**.
4. Follow the instructions in the dialog boxes to complete the installer customization.

Dialog boxes

NOTE: If you are installing the printing-system software on a system that runs a non-supported default language, a **Language Selection** dialog box appears. Select any other language that is available on the Windows installation CD by clicking the down arrow on the drop-down menu, and then click **OK** to initiate the printing-system setup. The **Welcome to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Installation Customization Wizard** dialog box appears.

The **Welcome to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Installation Customization Wizard** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

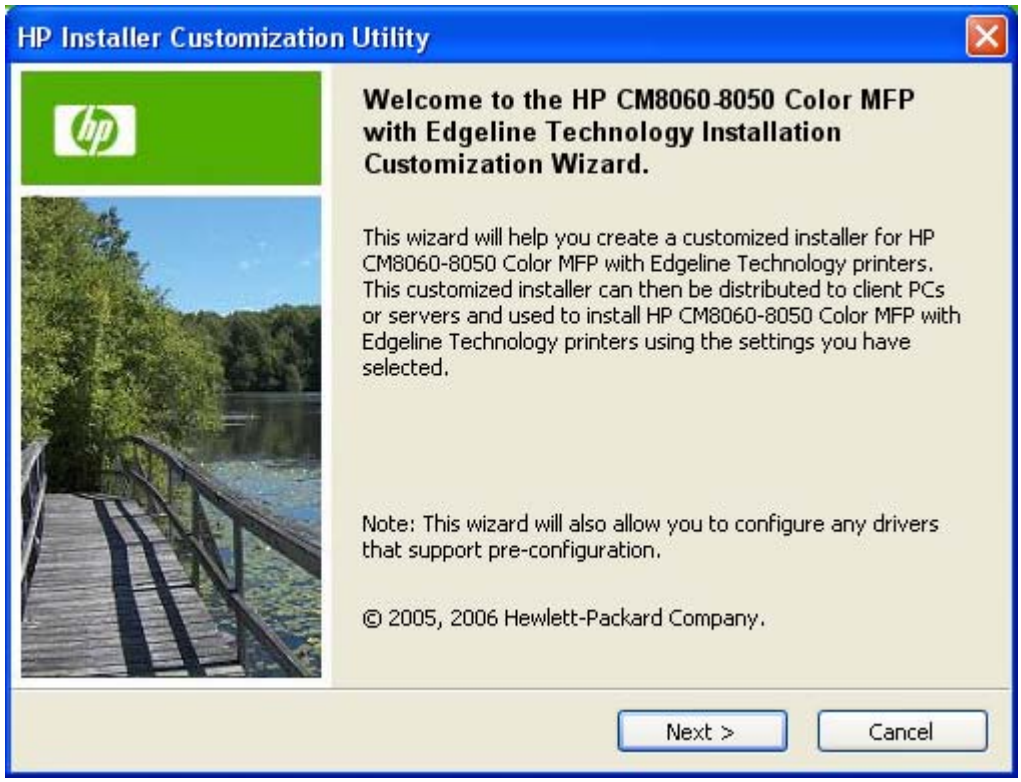


Figure 3-35 Welcome to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Installation Customization Wizard dialog box

Click **Next**. The **Software License Agreement** dialog box appears , as shown in the following figure.

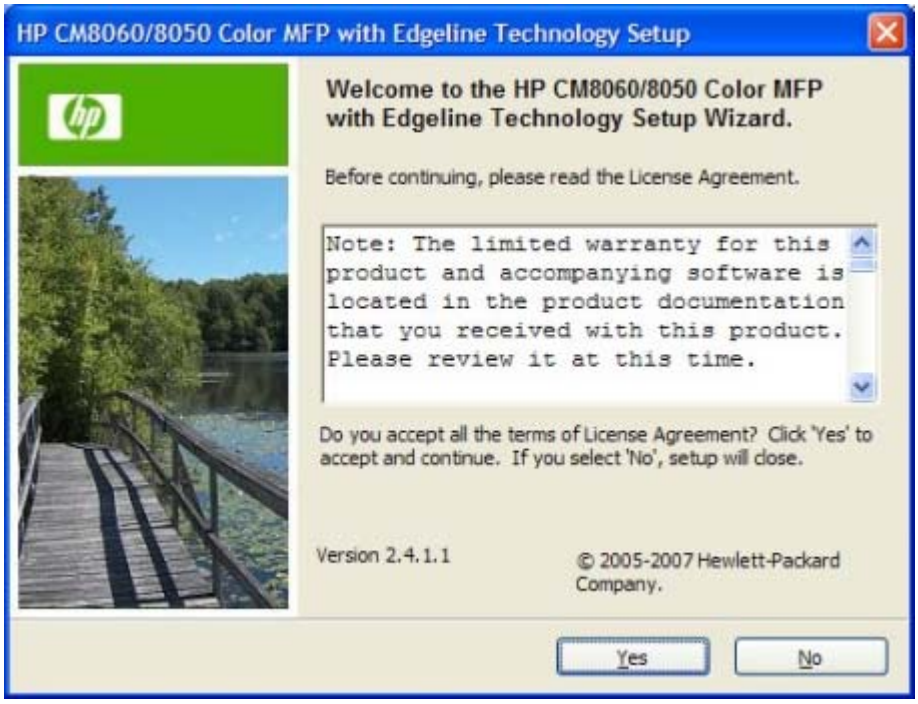


Figure 3-36 **Software License Agreement** dialog box

To cancel the installation, click **Cancel** on this or any other screen where it appears (see Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons on page 97).

Read the software-license agreement, select **I agree**, and then click **Next** to open the **Language** dialog box , as shown in the following figure.

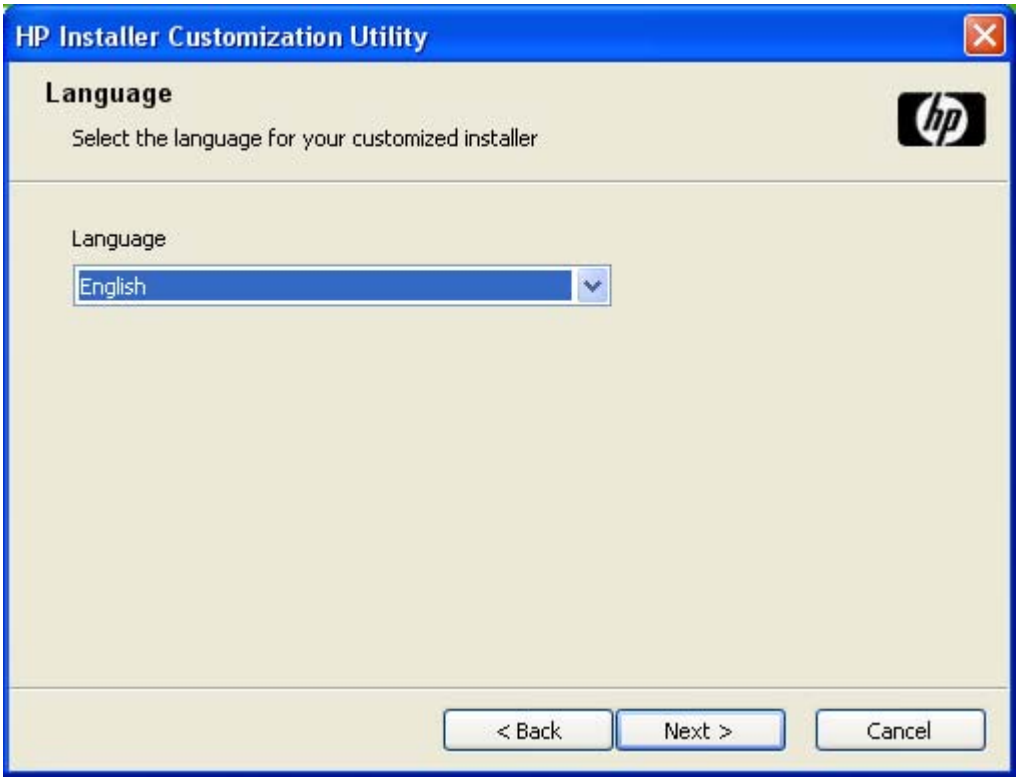


Figure 3-37 **Language** dialog box

Select the language in which the customization package will be installed. The language selection is recorded in the response file.

NOTE: After installation, the language used in the driver is limited to the one that was selected in the **Language** dialog box during installation. Maintenance mode does *not* provide options for changing the language.

To change the language on a system that used an Installer Customization Wizard installation, uninstall the software, and then install a new device in order to restore the option to install other languages.

Click **Next** to open the **Printer Port** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

Click **Back** on this or any screen where it appears to return to a previous screen.

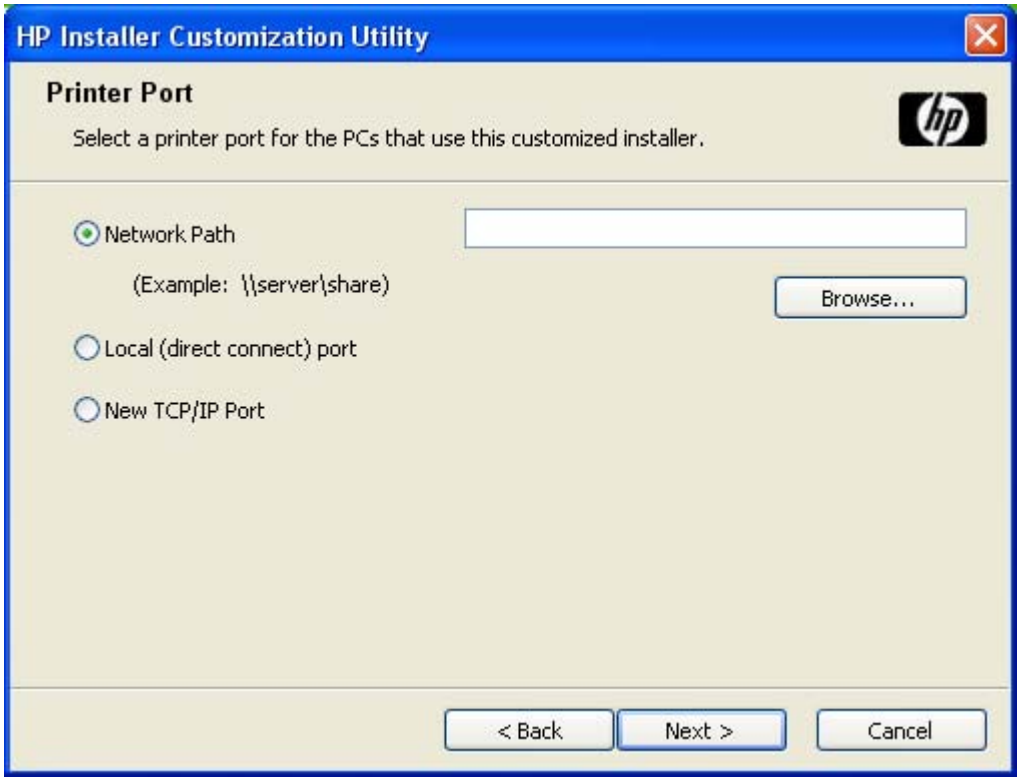


Figure 3-38 **Printer Port** dialog box

Select **Network Path** to make the text field available for a queue-name entry. If you select **Network Path** and click **Browse...**, the **Browse for Printer** dialog box opens.

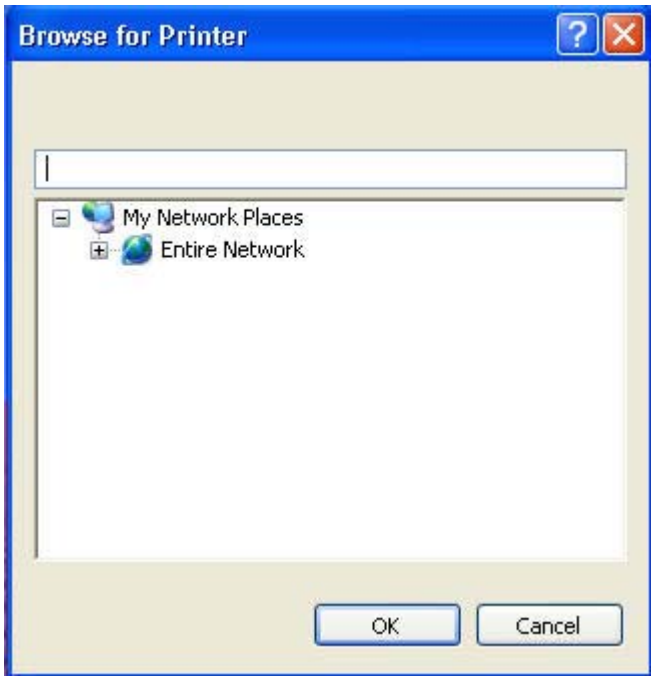


Figure 3-39 **Browse for Printer** dialog box

Navigate to a device and click **OK** to record the path in the **Network Path** field in the **Printer Port** dialog box. Click **Cancel** to close the **Browse for Printer** dialog box.

Type a network path or use the **Browse for Printer** dialog box to complete the **Network Path** field, and then click **Next** to open the **Model** dialog box (see Figure 3-43 Model dialog box on page 137).

In the **Printer Port** dialog box, select **Local (direct connect) port** and then click **Next** to open the **Model** dialog box (see Figure 3-43 Model dialog box on page 137).

In the **Printer Port** dialog box, select **New TCP/IP Port** and then click **Next** to open the **Specify TCP/IP Port** dialog box. This dialog box includes all custom network ports that are available on the local system. To use any custom network port for the customized installer, the port must be created identically on the system where it will be used.

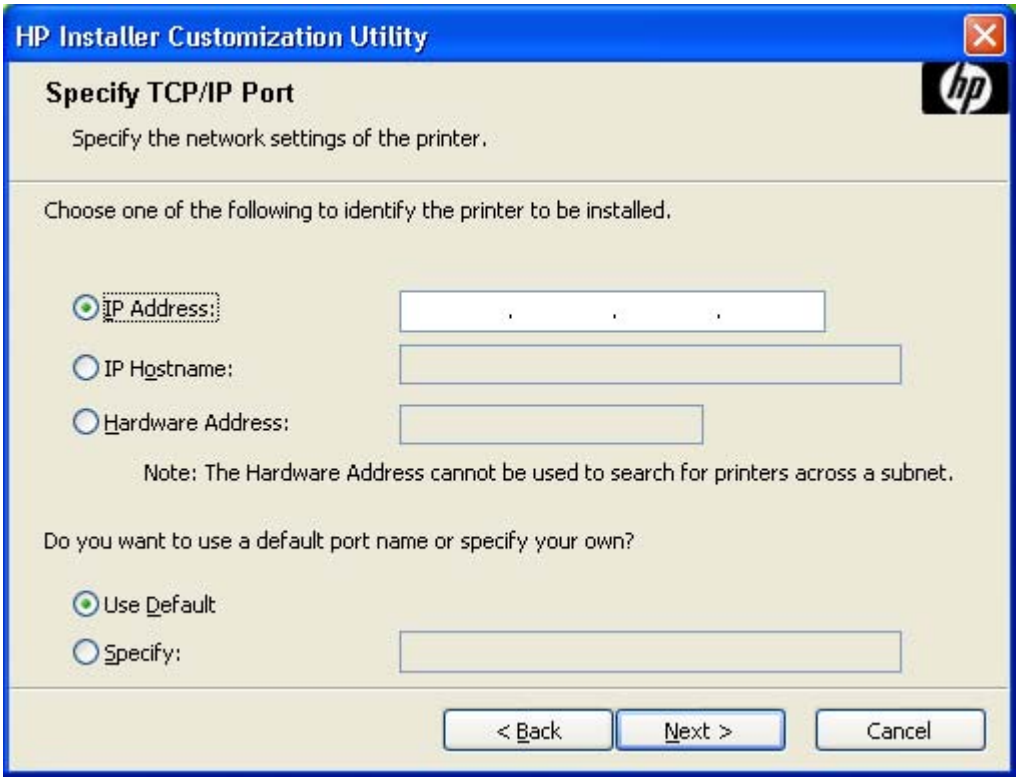


Figure 3-40 **Specify TCP/IP Port** dialog box

Select **IP Address:** to make the field available for typing the TCP/IP address for the device. Only numerals are allowed in this field. If this option is selected, type at least one digit in the **IP Address** field to prevent an error message from appearing and prompting for a valid IP address.

Select **IP Hostname** to make the field available for typing the IP hostname for the device. Any characters are allowed in this field, but an error message appears if spaces are included in the field. If this option is selected, type at least one character in the **IP Hostname** field to prevent an error message from appearing and prompting for a valid IP hostname.

Select **Hardware Address** to make the field available for typing the hardware address of the device. Any characters are allowed in this field, but the entry is limited to 12 characters. If this option is selected, type at least one character in the **Hardware Address** field to prevent an error message from appearing and prompting for a valid hardware address.

After selecting any of the options, type the appropriate name or address and then click **Next**. The **Model** dialog box opens (see Figure 3-43 Model dialog box on page 137).

For each of the options in the **Specify TCP/IP Port** dialog box, either use the default port name, as specified in each of the three options, or specify a different name.

To use the default port name, select **Use Default** and click **Next**. To specify a different name, click **Specify**, type a port name, and click **Next**. The **Port Creation Options** dialog box appears.

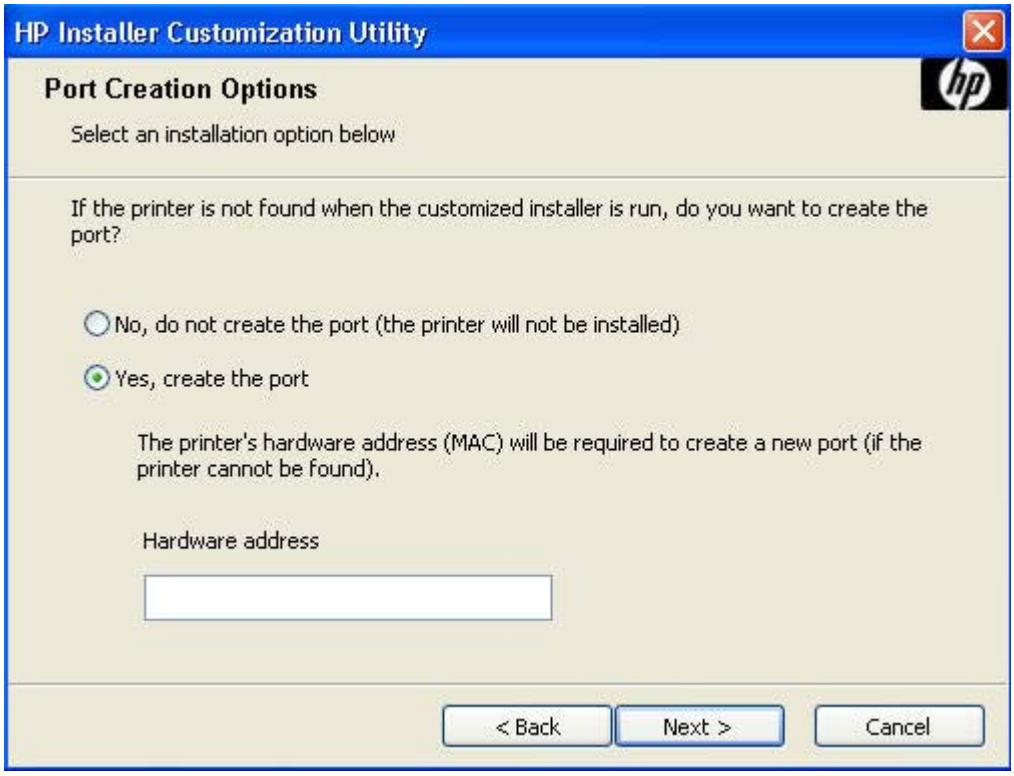


Figure 3-41 **Port Creation Options** dialog box

Select **No, do no create the port (the printer will not be installed)** if you do not want to create a port.

If you select **Yes, create the port**, type the device hardware address in the **Hardware Address** field and then click **Next** to open the **Model** dialog box.

If you click **Next** without typing a hardware address, a network setup error message appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-42 **Please enter a Hardware address.**: Network Setup Error dialog box

NOTE: To print a configuration page to see the hardware address, see Print the configuration page on page 275.

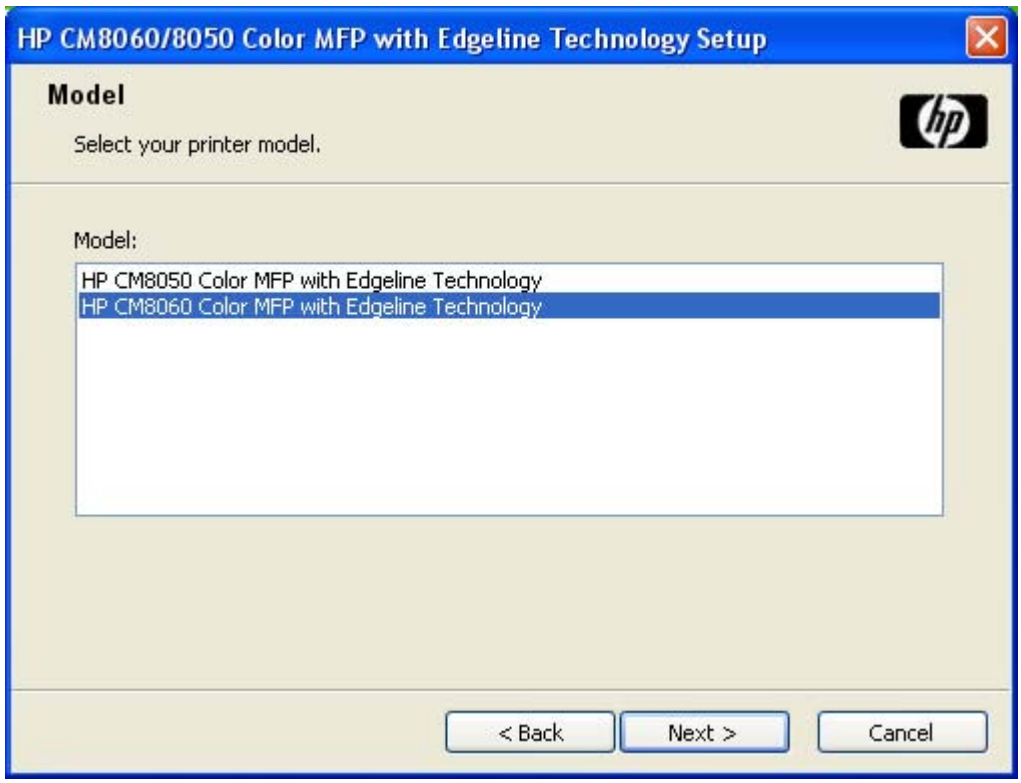


Figure 3-43 **Model** dialog box

Select the device model and click **Next**. The **Drivers** dialog box appears.

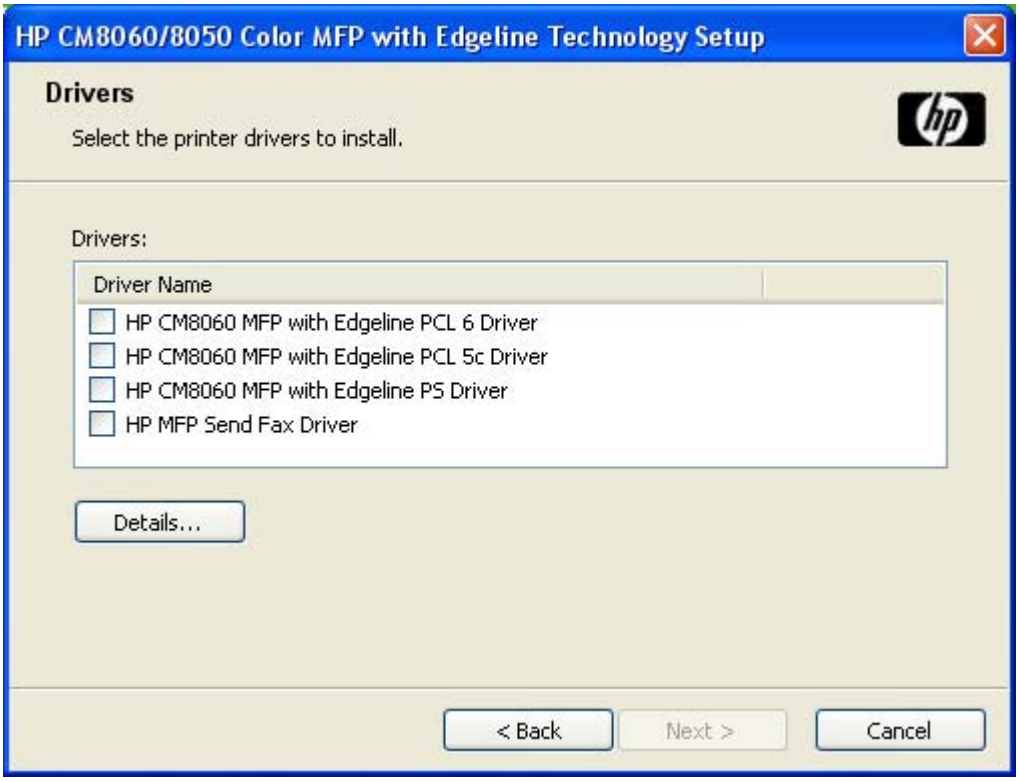


Figure 3-44 **Drivers** dialog box

Any combination of features can be selected for the installer, and none depends on any other selection. It is possible to create a custom installer that installs features without including a print driver. Select the drivers to install.

To view details about the drivers, click **Details...**. The driver **Details** dialog box appears.

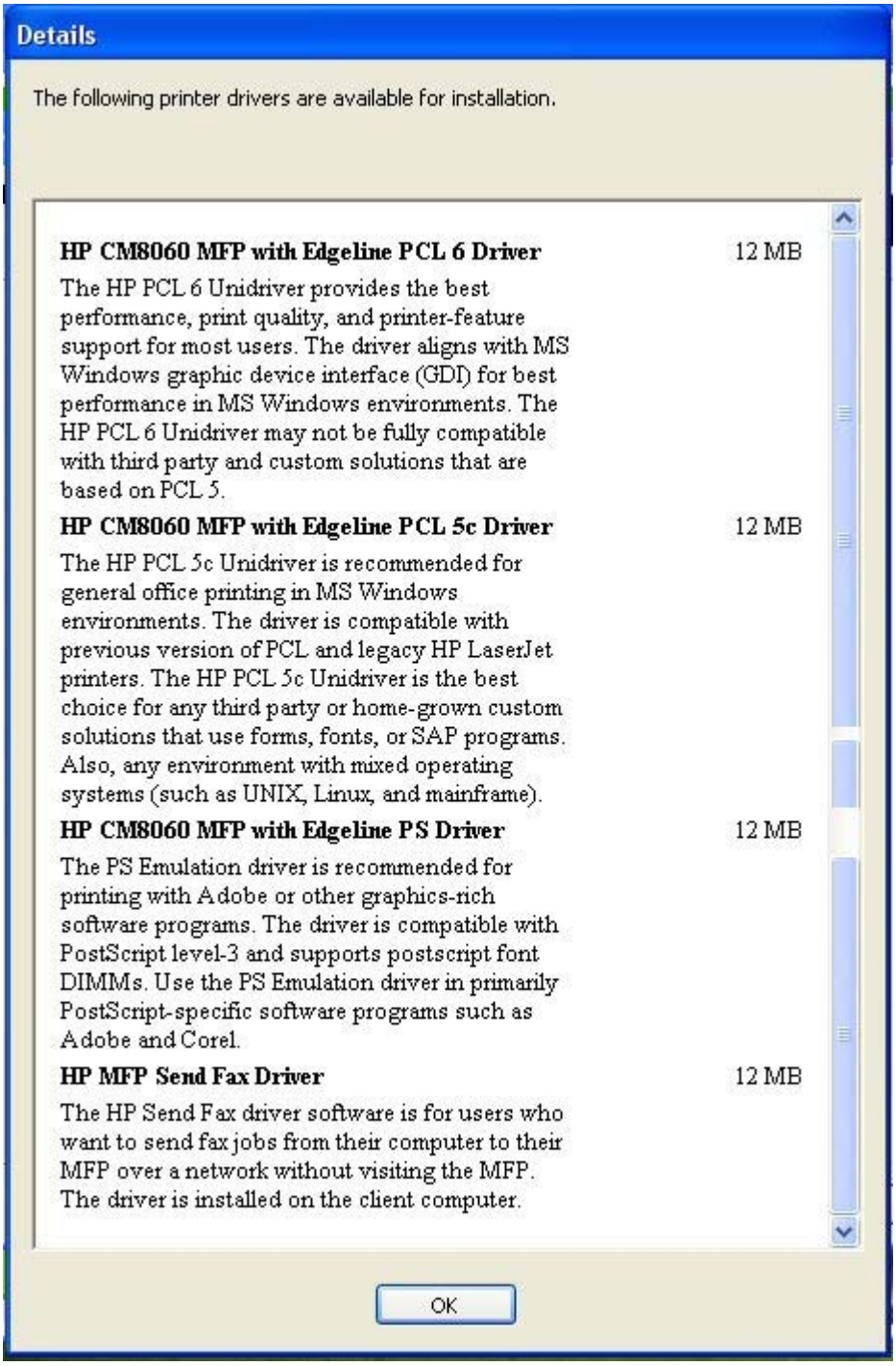


Figure 3-45 Driver **Details** dialog box

All of the drivers that are available on the **Drivers** dialog box are described in the **Details** dialog box. Click **OK** to return to the **Drivers** dialog box.

On the **Drivers** dialog box, select one or more drivers, and click **Next** to continue the installation.

The **Driver Configuration** dialog box appears.

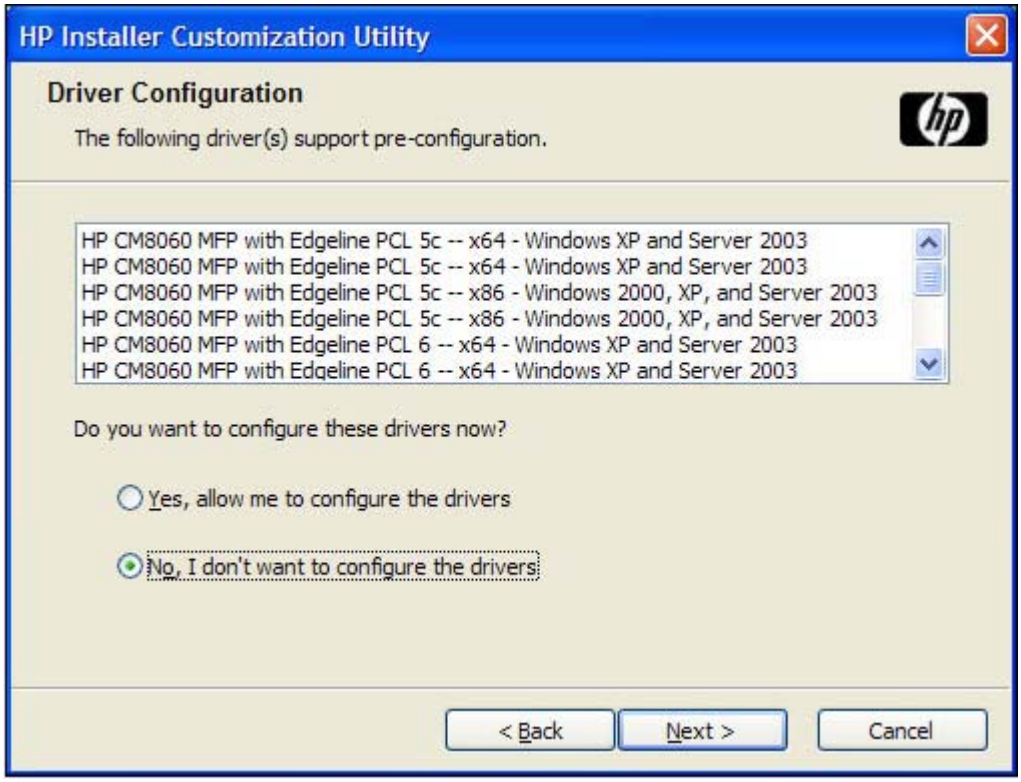


Figure 3-46 **Driver Configuration** dialog box

To preconfigure the driver settings, select **Yes, allow me to configure the drivers**, and click **Next**. The **Driver Configuration** dialog box changes to show two tabs:

- **Printing Preferences**
- **Device Settings**

These tabs are shown in the following figures.

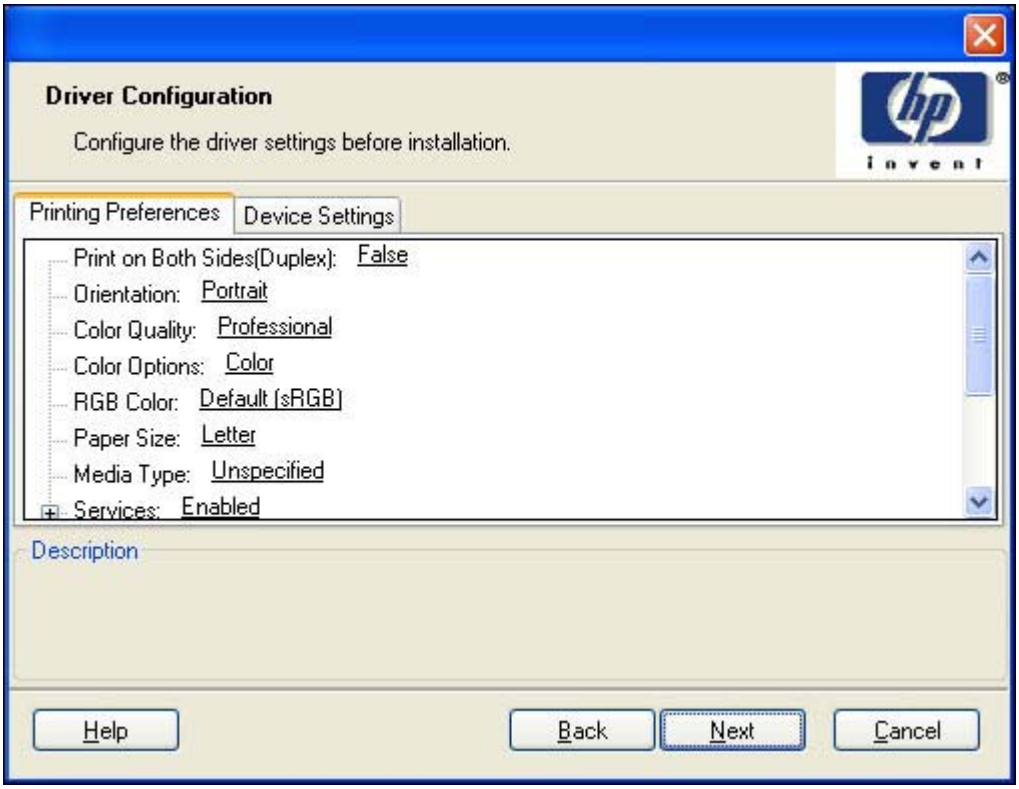


Figure 3-47 **Printing Preferences** tab

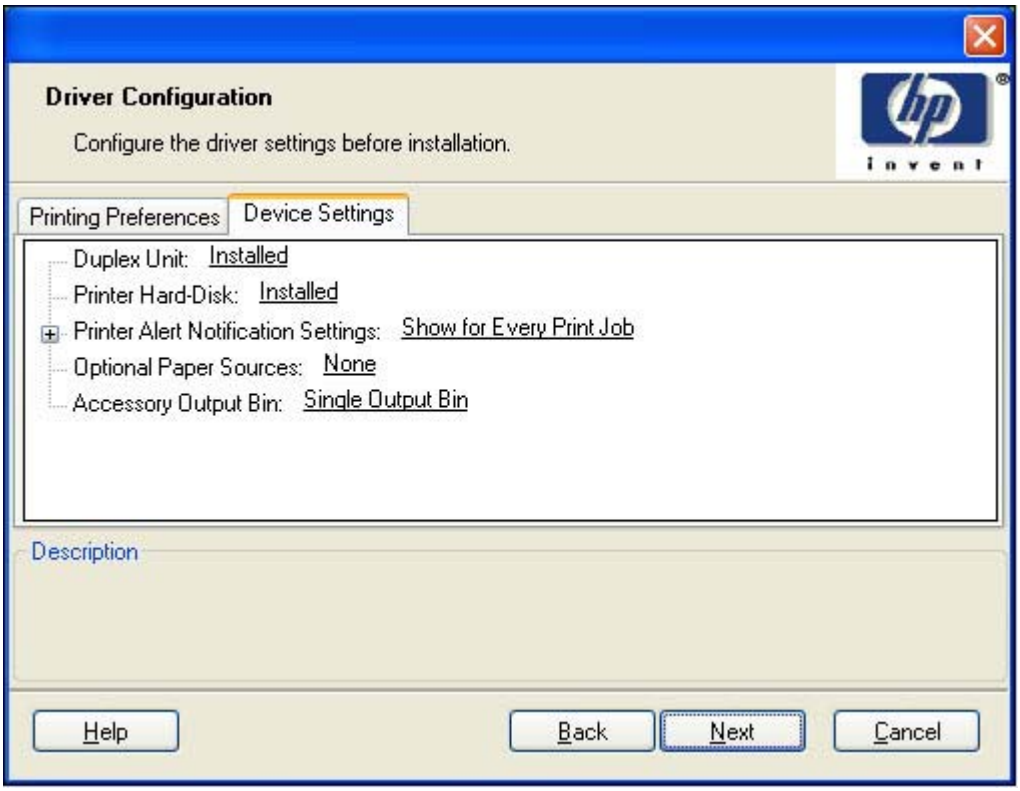


Figure 3-48 **Device Settings** tab

Select the settings on each tab. For each setting, a drop-down menu appears that lists the options. If the setting can be locked, a **Lock** check box appears beside the drop-down arrow. For example, the **Print on Both Sides (Duplex)** setting can be locked to ensure that users use double-sided printing.

In some instances, an **Invalid Selection** message might appear. For example, when **Left Edge Binding** is selected for the **Booklet Printing** option, an error message appears, as shown in the following figure.

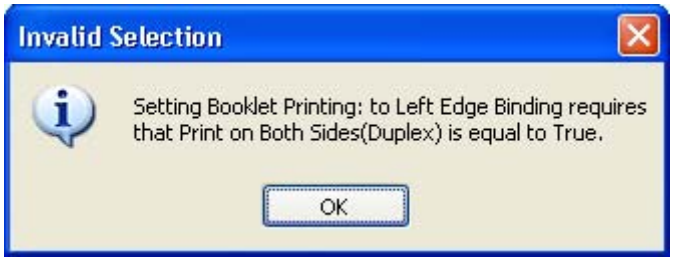


Figure 3-49 **Invalid Selection** dialog box

When the settings have been selected, click **Next** to continue the installation.

The **Additional Software** dialog appears.

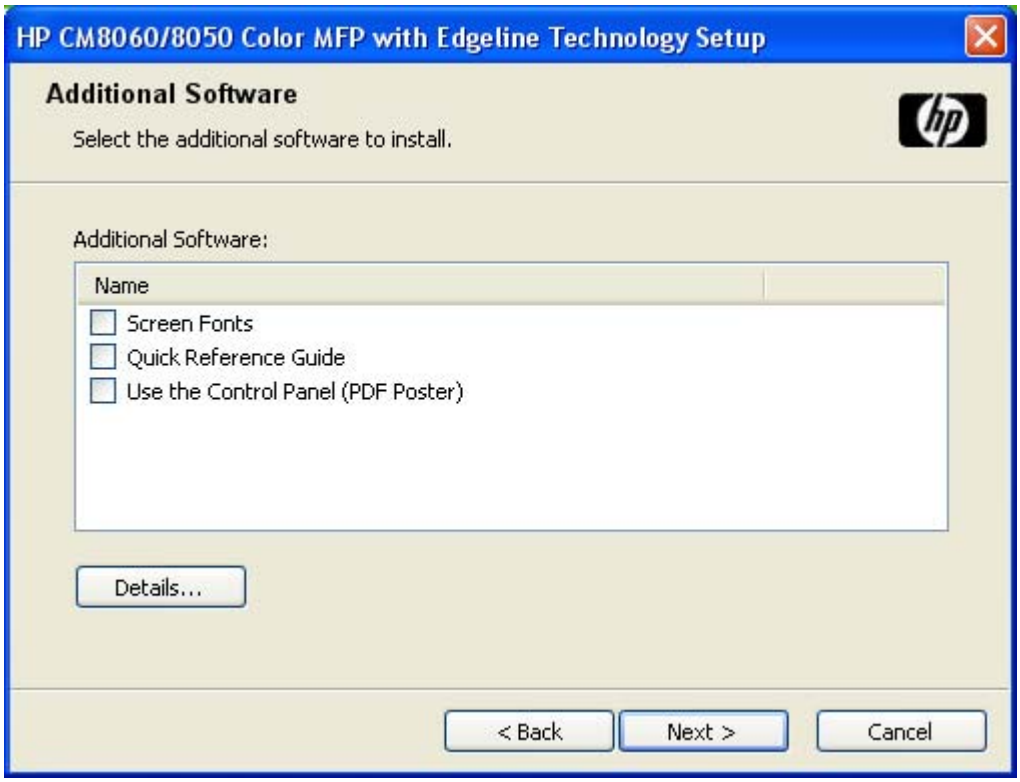


Figure 3-50 **Additional Software** dialog box

To view details about the additional software, click **Details**. The additional software **Details** dialog box appears.

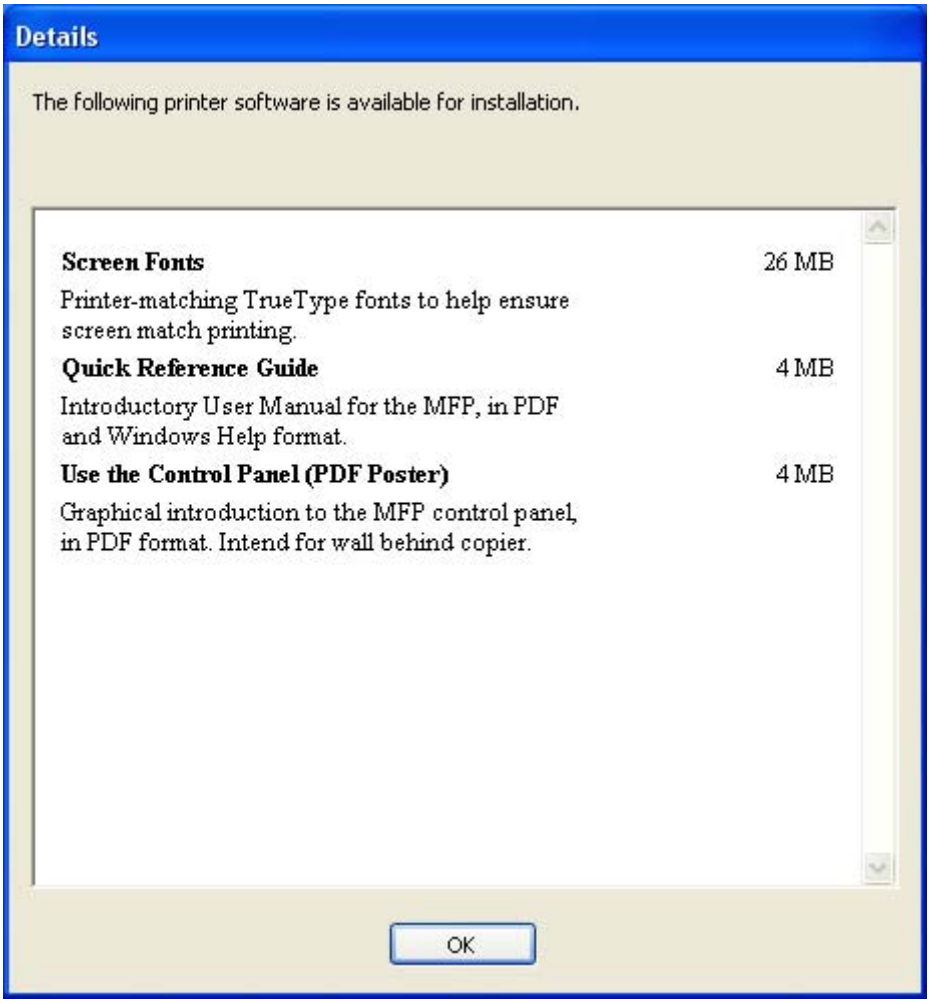


Figure 3-51 Additional software **Details** dialog box

All the software selected in the **Additional Software** dialog box is described in the **Details** dialog box. Click **OK** to return to the **Additional Software** dialog box.

In the **Additional Software** dialog box, click **Next** to open the **Custom Installer Location** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

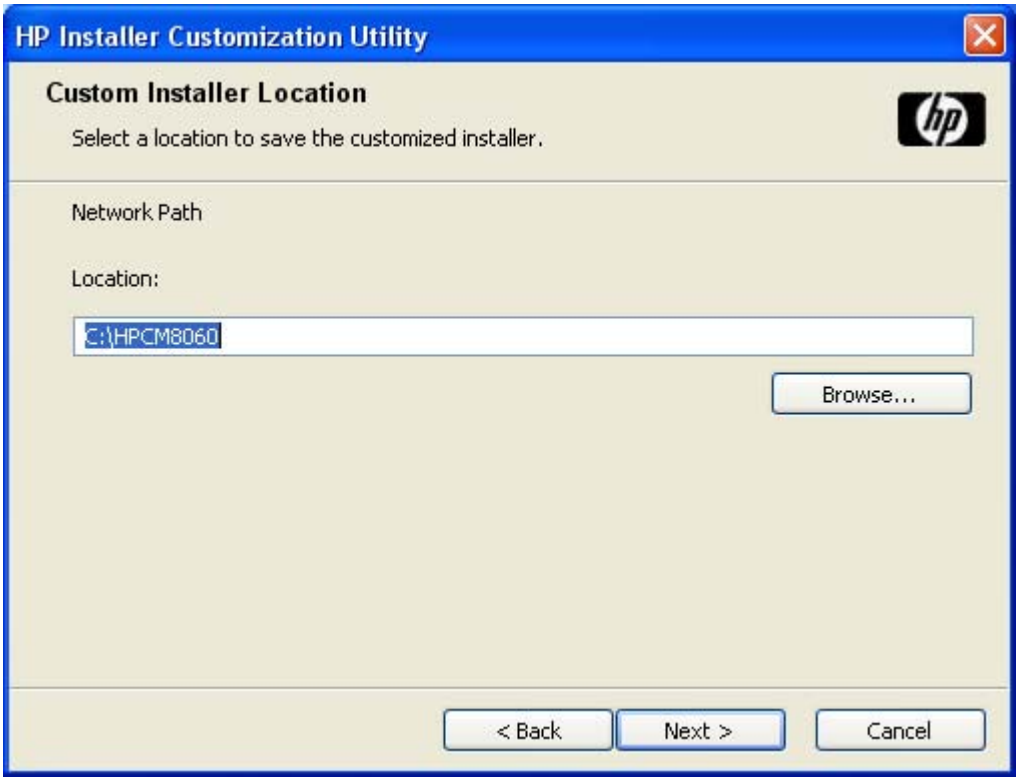


Figure 3-52 **Custom Installer Location** dialog box

Use the **Location:** text field to type a location in which to save the custom installer. The field is large, but is limited as to the number of characters that it can accommodate.

To change the location of the custom installer, click **Browse...**, navigate to the appropriate folder in which to save the custom installer, and click **OK** to return to the **Custom Installer Location** dialog box.

Click **Next** to open the **Ready to Create Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

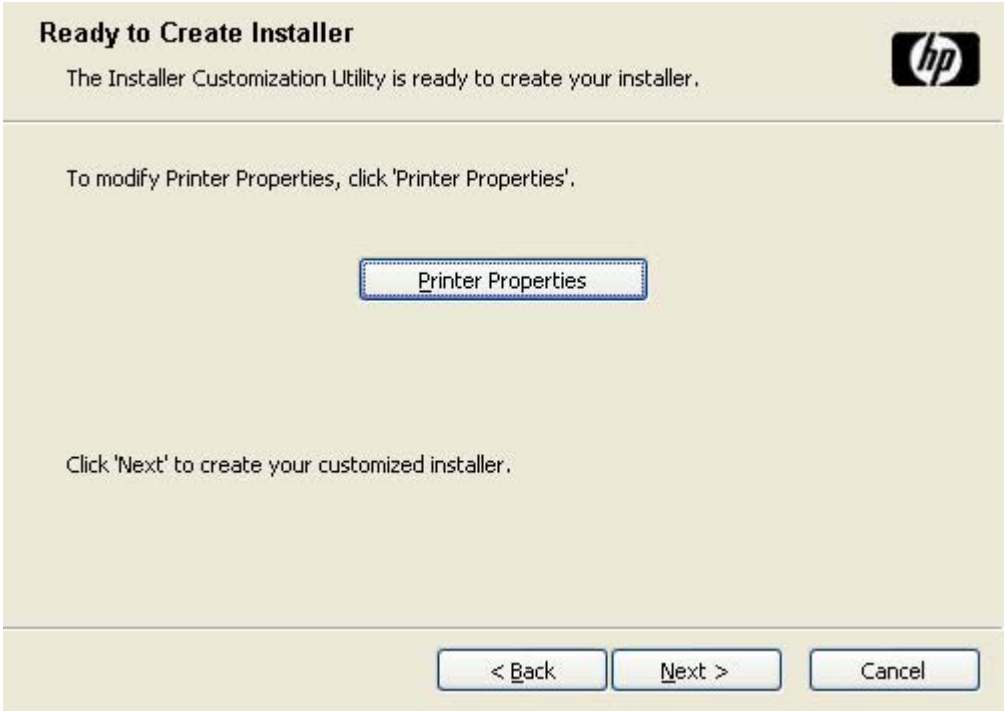


Figure 3-53 **Ready to Create Installer** dialog box

NOTE: The location for the installer package defaults to `c:\<name of printer>`.

NOTE: During installation, several files, including system files, are placed at the root of the directory that appears in the **Location** field. Make sure that enough space is available on the directory before continuing.

Click **Printer Properties** to open the **Printer Properties** dialog box.

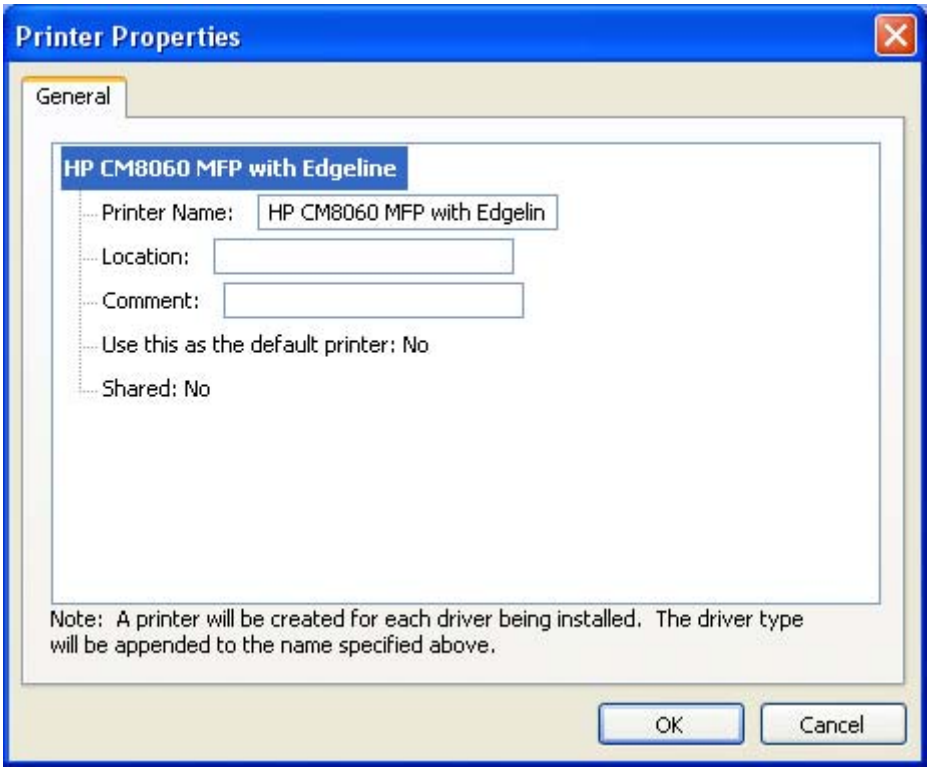


Figure 3-54 Printer Properties **General** tab

NOTE: Click any of the device properties to make the field available for typing or to see the drop-down menu selections.

On the **General** tab, change the device name by typing a new name in the **Printer Name** field.

Use the **Location** and **Comment** fields to describe the device, or leave these fields blank.

To use the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology as the default device, select **Yes** in the **Use this as the default printer** drop-down menu.

To share the device over a network, select **Yes** in the **Shared** drop-down menu. The default setting is **No**.

Click **OK** to return to the **Ready to Create Installer** dialog box.

In the **Ready to Create Installer** dialog box, click **Next** to begin the process of copying and installing the printing-system software folders and files. The **Installing** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

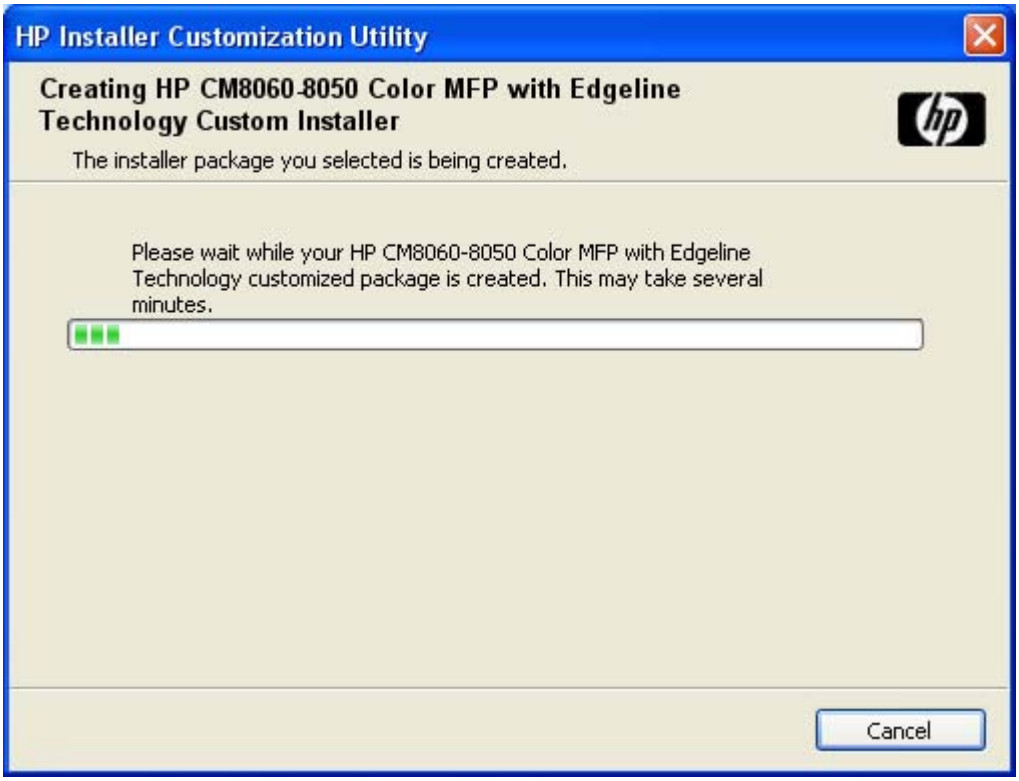


Figure 3-55 **Installing** dialog box

This dialog box remains on the screen until the status bar fills.

Click **Cancel** to close the Installer Customization Wizard without creating the customized printing-system software package.

When the creation is complete, the **Finish** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

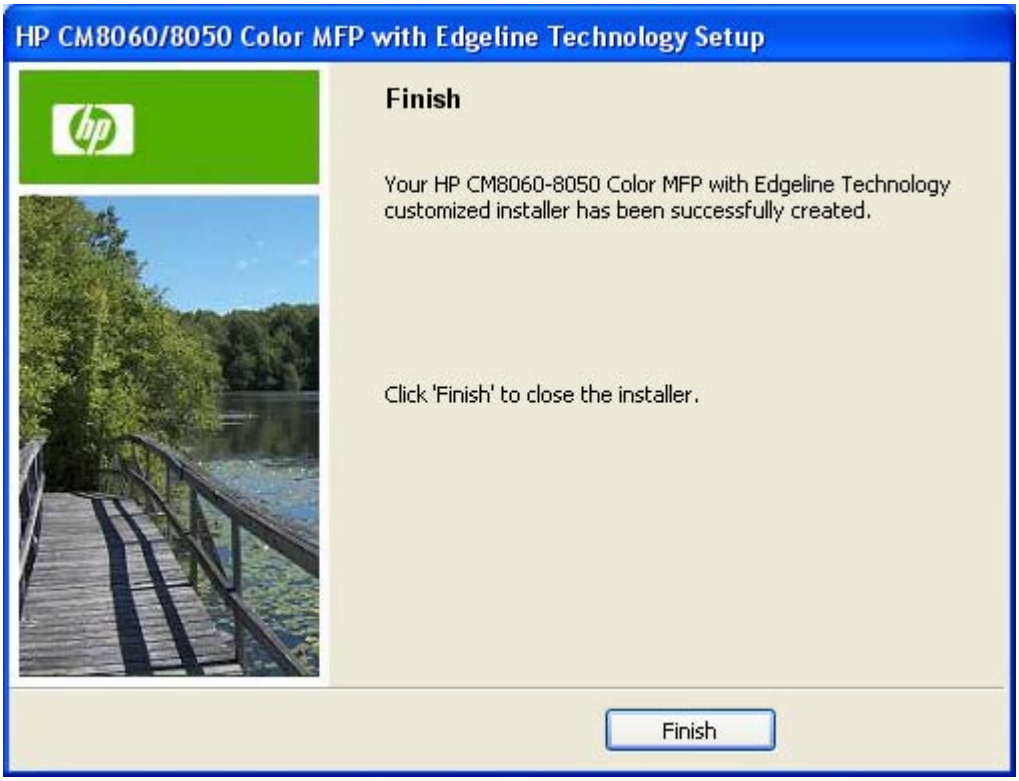


Figure 3-56 **Finish** dialog box

Click **Finish** to close the Finish dialog box and exit the **Installer Customization Wizard**.

Distribution

The installation package is now ready for distribution. It is the same as the package on the Windows printing-system CD, except that it is limited to one language, and it contains the selected features and options. To install the custom installation package, run the SETUP.EXE file from the root of the package.

For detailed information, see the *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.

Point-and-Print installation for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003

Use the following information to install a print driver by using the Microsoft Point-and-Print feature when you do not connect directly to the device on the network.

Point and Print is a Microsoft term that describes a two-step driver installation process. The first step is to install a shared driver on a network print server. The second step is to "point" to the print server from a network client so that the client can use the print driver.

This section outlines the procedures for installing print drivers by using Point and Print. If these procedures are not successful, contact Microsoft. HP provides print drivers that are compatible with the Point-and-Print feature, but this is a function of the MS Windows operating systems, *not* of HP print drivers.

Administrator privileges are necessary to install the print driver on a Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 operating system.

In a homogenous operating system environment (one in which all of the clients and servers are running in the same operating system), the same print driver version that is vended from the server to the clients in a Point and Print environment also runs and controls the print queue configuration on the server. However, in a mixed operating system environment (one in which servers and clients might run on different operating systems), conflicts can occur when client computers run a version of the print driver that is different from the one on the print server.

In an effort to increase operating system stability, Microsoft determined that, starting with Windows 2000 and continuing with all future operating systems, print drivers would run as *user*-mode processes. User-mode drivers run in a protected part of the operating system, as do all of the normal end-user processes and software programs. A user-mode print driver that functions incorrectly can terminate (or "crash") only the process in which it is running—not the whole operating system. Because access to critical system resources is restricted, overall operating system stability is increased.

Set a default printer

This section applies to the Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000 operating systems.

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Set As Default**. A check mark appears next to the menu option.

Fax-driver installation instructions

Use the HP MFP Send Fax driver software to send fax jobs from the computer to the device over a network. The fax driver is installed on the client computer.

This STR provides information about the HP MFP Send Fax driver that is used with the HP Analog Fax Accessory when it is installed in the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology.

The following operating systems support this driver:

- Windows Vista
- Windows XP
- Windows Server 2003
- Windows 2000

For additional information, see the *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.

Topics:

- Minimum firmware
- Install the HP MFP Send Fax driver on MS Windows

Minimum firmware

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology requires firmware support for the HP MFP Send Fax driver. To support the driver, the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology must have the minimum firmware version installed. To determine if the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology has a minimum supporting firmware version, print a configuration page from the control panel to check the firmware datecode, and verify that the PC Send Fax menu item appears on the control panel.

To print a configuration page:

1. Touch Administration.
2. Touch Information.
3. Touch Configuration Page.
4. Touch Print.

The firmware datecode is listed in the **Device Information** section of the configuration page.

To ensure the PC Send Fax menu item is enabled:

1. On the control panel, touch Administration.
2. Scroll to and touch Initial Setup.
3. Scroll to and touch Fax Setup.
4. Scroll to and touch PC Fax Send. If PC Fax Send does not appear, update the firmware.

5. Touch Enabled.

6. Touch Save.

To update the firmware, see Remote firmware updates on page 274. After the firmware is updated, or if the firmware is already current, install the HP MFP Send Fax driver.

Install the HP MFP Send Fax driver on MS Windows

To install the fax driver, follow the instructions in Print-driver installation instructions on page 96. Select the **Typical with Fax Installation** installation type, or select the **Custom Installation** installation type and select the **HP MFP Send Fax Driver** as part of the custom installation.

4 HP MFP Send Fax driver

Introduction

If an optional analog fax accessory is installed in the device, and the device is connected to an analog phone line, you can use the device to send and receive faxes. If an analog fax accessory is *not* installed, you can send faxes by using a LAN fax service or an Internet fax service.

NOTE: If an analog fax accessory is *not* installed, the device cannot receive faxes.

Use the HP MFP Send Fax driver to send faxes from a computer to one or more network-connected devices. Access the HP MFP Send Fax driver by printing from an application and selecting the appropriate driver in the Print dialog box:

- **HP CM8060 MFP with Edgeline Fax** for the HP CM8060 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology
- **HP CM8050 MFP with Edgeline Fax** for the HP CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology

Other settings for the driver are available by accessing the driver settings.

This STR describes the settings that are available for the HP MFP Send Fax driver. These settings are located on the control tabs, the controls, and the control dialog boxes that are displayed through the driver **Properties** tabs, the **Printing Preferences** tabs, the **Printing Defaults** tabs, and the **Document Properties** tabs.

Most of the tabs and settings available on these driver dialog boxes are standard Windows print settings and selections. *Only* the settings and selections specific to the HP MFP Send Fax driver are covered.

Topics:

- Access to the HP MFP Send Fax driver
- Help system
- Driver Properties tabs features
- Printing Preferences, Printing Defaults, and Document Properties tabs features

NOTE: For information about sending faxes directly from the device control panel, see the *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.

Access to the HP MFP Send Fax driver

Topics:

- Driver Properties tabs
- Printing Preferences tabs
- Printing Defaults tabs
- Document Properties tabs

Driver Properties tabs

These tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections. To gain access to the driver **Properties** tabs:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.

The following **Properties** fax-driver control tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Color Management**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

In addition to the driver **Properties** tabs, three other tab sets are associated with the HP MFP Send Fax driver:

- **Printing Preferences** tabs
- **Printing Defaults** tabs
- **Document Properties** tabs

The tab sets look identical, but have different uses. The following table describes the function of each of the tab sets.

Table 4-1 Printing Defaults, Printing Preferences, Document Properties

Tab set title	Description
Printing Preferences	Use the control tabs to set the default values that apply to the **local user** of the HP MFP Send Fax driver
Printing Defaults	Use the control tabs to set the default values that apply to **all sharing users** of the HP MFP Send Fax driver (for example, through a shared device)
Document Properties	Control-tab settings apply to the software program only; changes are lost after the software program is closed

The **Printing Preferences** tabs, the **Printing Defaults** tabs, and the **Document Properties** tabs have the same three control tab sets:

- **Advanced**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Services**

Printing Preferences tabs

To gain access to the **Printing Preferences** tabs:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences...**.

OR

1. From within most software programs, click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. In the printer drop-down list, select the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.

The appearance and names of the fax driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system.

Printing Defaults tabs

To gain access to the **Printing Defaults** tabs:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Advanced** tab.
6. Click the **Printing Defaults** button.

The appearance and names of the fax driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system.

Document Properties tabs

To gain access to the **Document Properties** tabs:

1. From within most software programs, click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. In the printer drop-down list, select the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.

The appearance and names of the fax driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system. These driver settings apply while the software program is open.

Help system

The HP MFP Send Fax driver includes a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.

Windows provides a Help system that gives basic information about a setting or function on the driver **Properties** control tabs and associated dialog boxes. Because this help information is not customized for the HP MFP Send Fax driver, the descriptions might be more applicable for print programs than to the HP MFP Send Fax driver.

What's this? Help

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000 support **What's this?** Help. You can gain access to **What's this?** Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a control and then click **What's this?**. A pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the **?** button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the **X**, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. When you use this special cursor to select a control, the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Press the F1 key, and the Help window for the selected control appears.

Context-sensitive Help

Click the **Help** button on a driver tab or in a dialog box to see a context-sensitive Help message.

Driver Properties tabs features

Topics:

- General tab
- Sharing tab
- Ports tab
- Advanced tab
- Device Settings tab
- About tab

General tab

To gain access to the **General** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **General** tab.

The **General** tab provides the following controls for the HP MFP Send Fax driver:

- Change the driver name in the box next to the device icon.
- Specify the physical location of the device in the **Location:** field. This location appears in the **Printers and Faxes** folder.
- Type a comment about the device in the **Comment:** field.
- Click the **Printing Preferences...** button to open the **Printing Preferences** control tabs.
- Click the **Print Test Page** button to open the HP MFP Send Fax driver user interface for sending a fax.

Sharing tab

To gain access to the **Sharing** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Sharing** tab.

The **Sharing** tab provides the following controls for the HP MFP Send Fax driver:

- Click **Share this printer** to share the HP MFP Send Fax driver. Type the **Share Name** to enable this feature.
- Click **Additional Drivers** to share the HP MFP Send Fax driver in other operating-system environments. (Only Windows XP and x64 Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/ Windows 2000.)

Ports tab

To gain access to the **Ports** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Ports** tab.

The **Ports** tab provides the following controls for the HP MFP Send Fax driver:

- Modify the HP MFP Send Fax driver port by clicking **Add Port**, **Delete Port**, or **Configure Port**.
- Click **Enable printer pooling** to allow the HP Send Fax job to be sent to multiple devices.

Advanced tab

To gain access to the **Advanced** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Advanced** tab.

The **Advanced** tab provides the following controls for the HP MFP Send Fax driver:

- Click **Always Available** to send the Send Fax job immediately (default).
- Click **Available from** to hold the Send Fax job in the spooler during an unavailable time span. The Send Fax job is released during an available time span.

  Configure the available time span by clicking the up and down arrows next to the time fields.
- Click the **New Driver** button to update the existing HP MFP Send Fax driver. See Upgrade the HP MFP Send Fax driver on page 160 for more information.
- Ensure that the following default spooler settings are selected:
  - **Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster**
  - **Start printing immediately**
  - **Print spooled documents first**
  - **Enable advanced printing features**

NOTE: The spooler settings are active and should *not* be changed from the default settings for the HP MFP Send Fax driver.

1. Click the **Printing Defaults** button to open the **Printing Defaults** dialog box.
2. Click the **Print Processor** button to open the **Print Processor** dialog box. Do *not* change the default settings.
3. Click the **Separator Page** button to create a separator page for the fax job.

NOTE: The **Separator Page** feature is *not* supported for the HP MFP Send Fax driver.

Upgrade the HP MFP Send Fax driver

Use this method of upgrading the HP MFP Send Fax driver to retain the phone book that was established in an earlier HP MFP Send Fax driver version.

NOTE: The newer versions of the HP MFP Send Fax driver has a phone book export feature.

To update the HP MFP Send Fax driver:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Advanced** tab.
6. Click **New Driver** and follow the instructions in the **Add Printer Driver Wizard**. (See Install drivers by using Add Printer on page 129.)

Device Settings tab

To gain access to the **Device Settings** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click **Device Settings**.

The following figure shows the **Device Settings** tab.

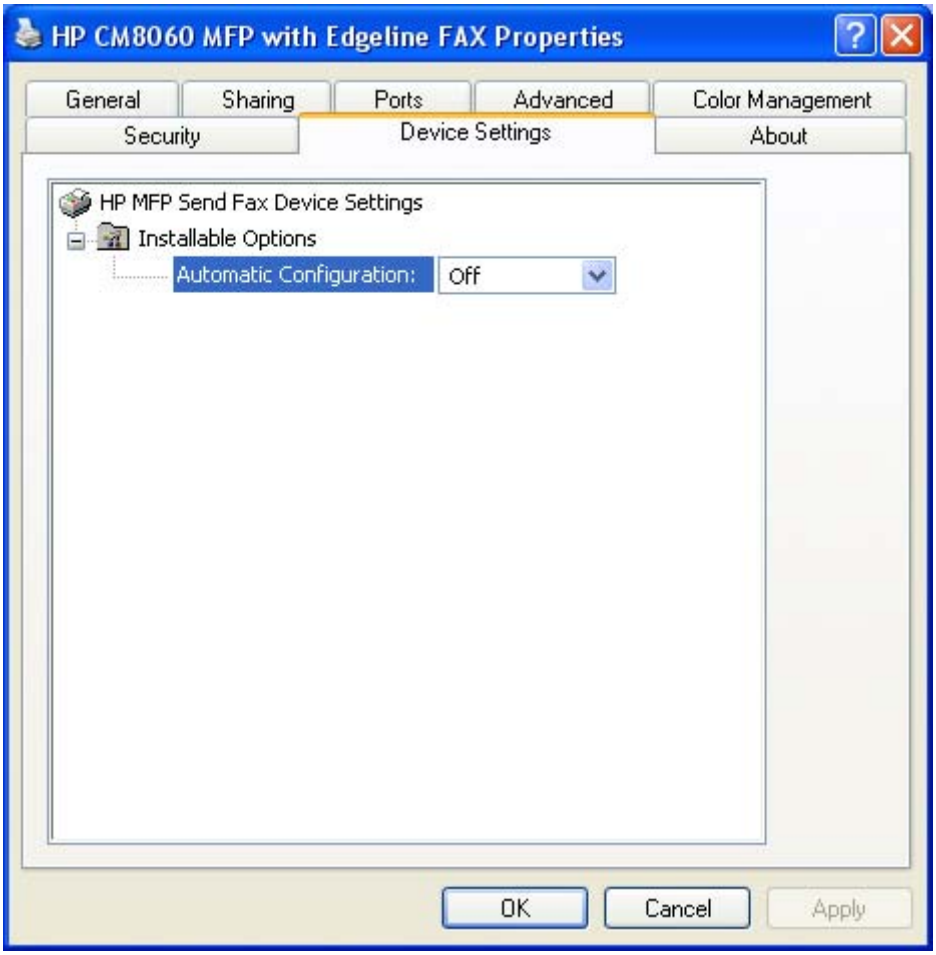


Figure 4-1 Device Settings tab

The **Device Settings** tab provides the following control for the HP MFP Send Fax driver:

- **Installable Options**. Use the **Automatic Configuration** pull-down menu to perform an **Update Now** function.

  The HP MFP Send Fax driver queries the device for any setting or configuration changes. Normally, this is not required because the driver will automatically perform this function each time the driver is opened.

  The default setting is **Off**. After an automatic configuration is performed, the setting returns to **Off**.

About tab

To gain access to the **About** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.

3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **About** tab.

The **About** tab provides detailed information about the HP MFP Send Fax driver. It contains an overall build number (in parenthesis after the model name) together with specific information about each of the components. The following figure shows the **About** tab.

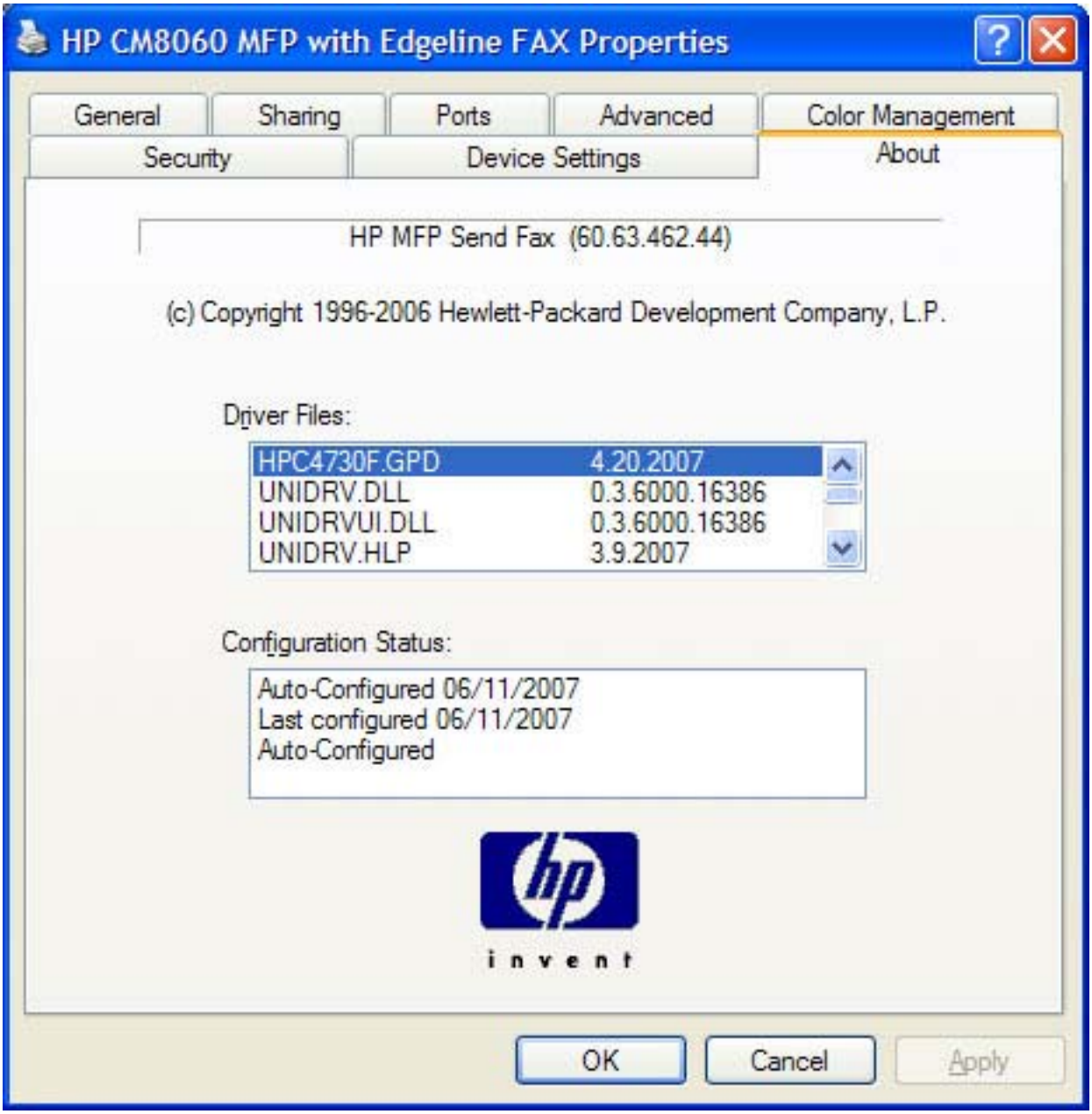


Figure 4-2 About tab

The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the administrator preferences have been set, the date that the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is default or user-defined.

To determine the latest version, compare the overall build number (in parenthesis after the model name) and the GPD number (in the Driver Files: field). If the overall build number has increased, this is the latest version of the driver.

If the overall build number is the same, check the version number of the GPD file. The driver that has the highest GPD version number is the latest driver.

Printing Preferences, Printing Defaults, and Document Properties tabs features

For information about accessing each of these tabs, see Access to the HP MFP Send Fax driver on page 154.

Topics:

- Advanced tab
- Paper/Quality tab
- Services tab

Advanced tab

To gain access to the **Advanced** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Advanced** tab.

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages and to configure special controls that are not commonly used. Also use this tab to control print-driver features such as paper size and number of copies (although most current software programs support these features in the print dialog box or through the page settings in the software program).

The following figure shows the **Advanced** tab.

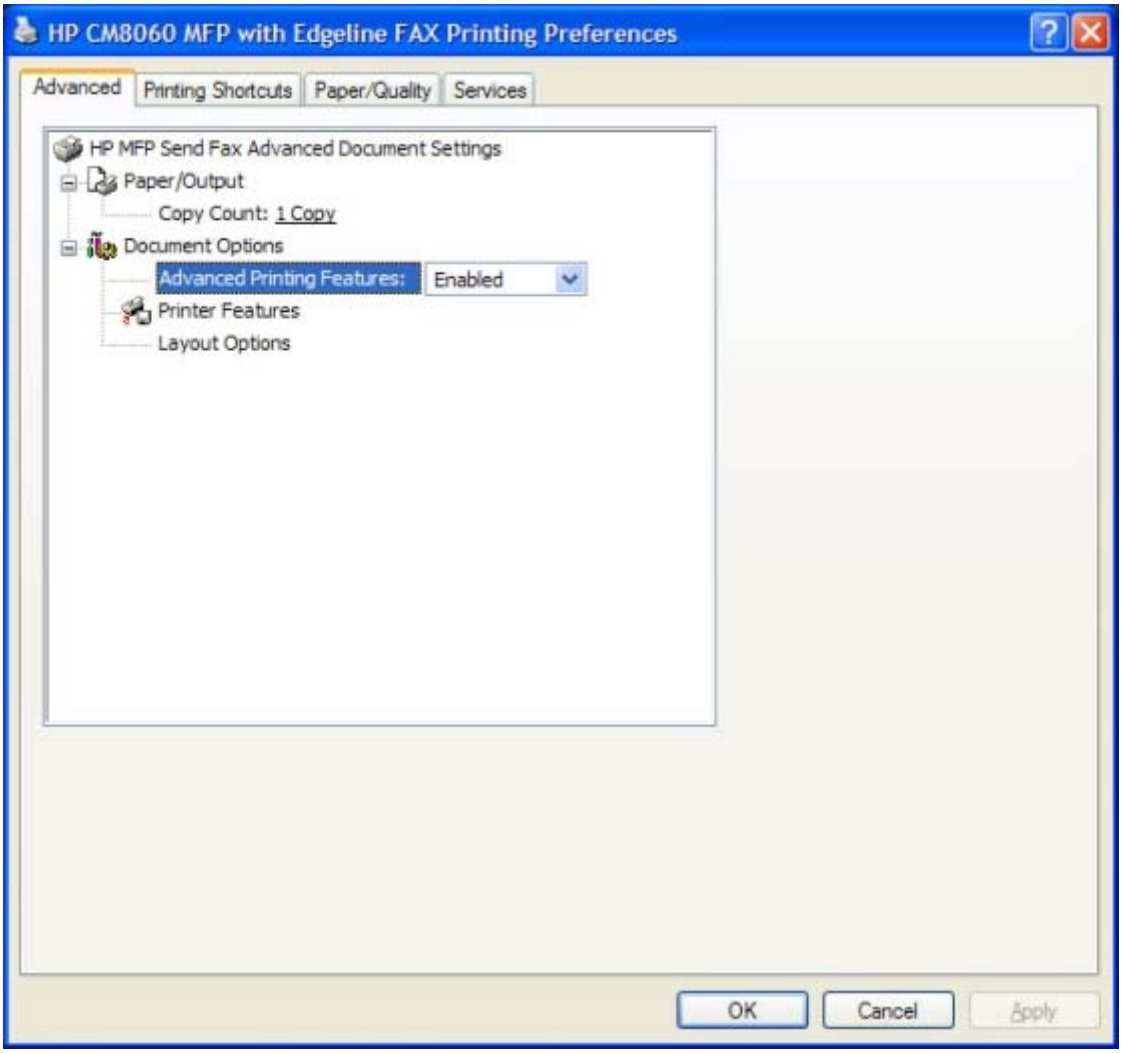


Figure 4-3 Advanced tab

The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- Paper/Output
- Document Options

Paper/Output

The **Paper/Output** control contains the following settings:

- **Copy Count**
- **Collated** check box (becomes available and can be changed when the **Copy Count** setting is greater than 1)

NOTE: When changing control settings, click the setting to see the drop-down list for that setting.

Copy Count

Copy Count specifies the number of copies to print. For the HP MFP Send Fax driver, additional fax jobs will be sent if the number of copies is changed to any number greater than 1. The default setting is 1.

Collated

The **Collated** check box is visible when the **Copy Count** setting is selected. The check box becomes available and can be changed when the **Copy Count** setting is greater than 1.

NOTE: The **Collated** setting is not applicable to the HP MFP Send Fax driver.

Document Options

The **Document Options** control contains the following settings:

- **Advanced Printing Features**
- **Printer Features**
- **Layout Options**

Advanced Printing Features

These settings are not applicable to the HP MFP Send Fax driver. The **Advanced Printing Features** setting should be **Enabled** by default.

Paper/Quality tab

To gain access to the **Paper/Quality** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click **Paper/Quality**.

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify the size, and orientation of the paper. These will be applied to Send Fax jobs.

The following figure shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

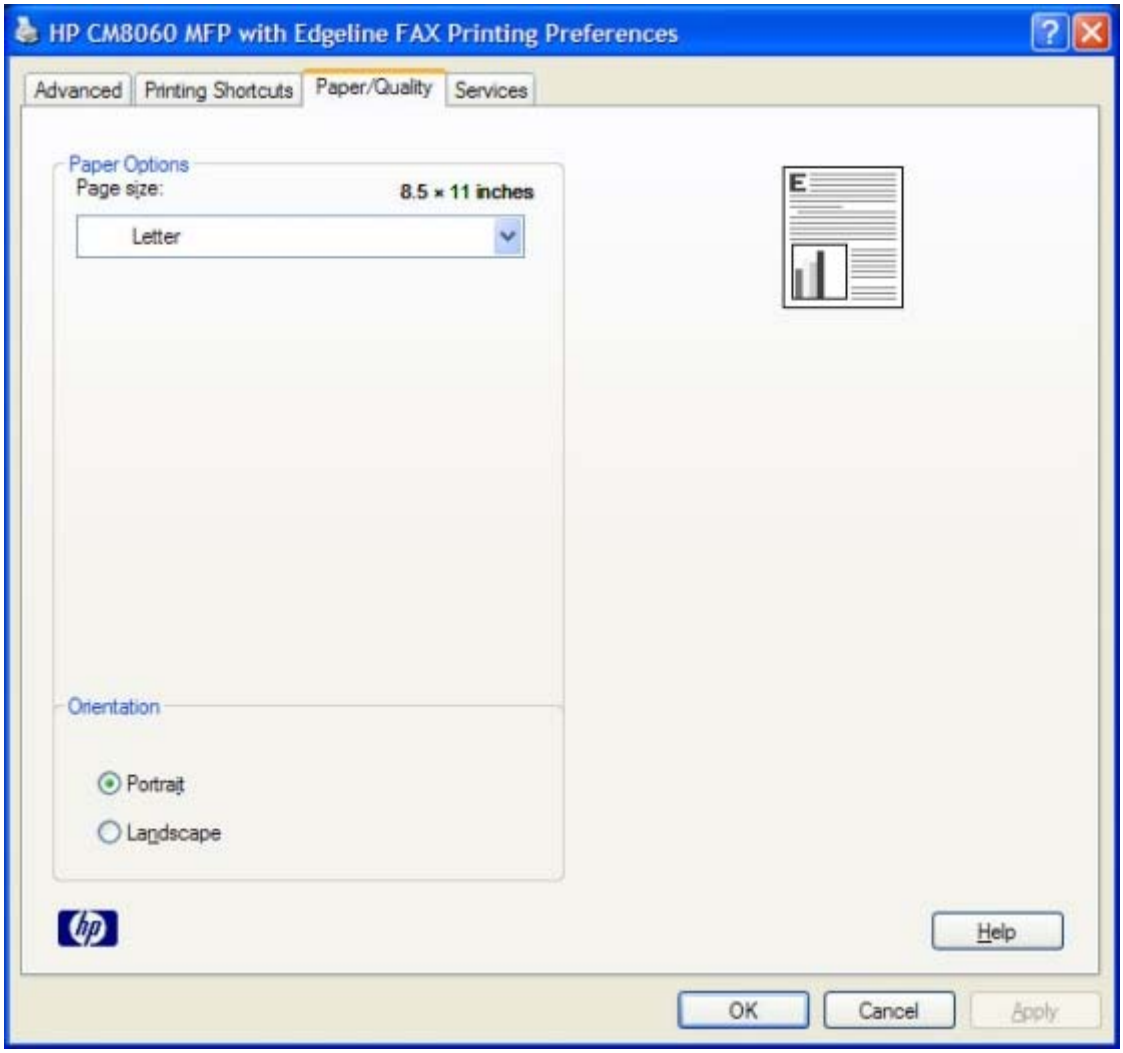


Figure 4-4 Paper/Quality tab

The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following control sets:

- Print Task Quick Sets
- Paper Options
- Document preview image
- Orientation

Print Task Quick Sets

The first group box in the upper portion of the **Paper/Quality** tab is **Print Task Quick Sets**. Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** setting to store the current combination of driver settings. **Print Task Quick Sets** are either preset by system-administrator settings or user-defined printing specifications (such as paper size). The **Print Task Quick Sets** setting does *not* appear on the driver **Properties** page.

NOTE: System administrators can predefine **Print Task Quick Sets** for users. These administrator **Print Task Quick Sets** are defined on the server and are available to users, but usually cannot be modified by users. Users can also define **Print Task Quick Sets**.

The following selection is available in the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down menu:

- **Default Print Settings**

Default Print Settings

When **Default Print Settings** is selected, nearly all of the settings are restored to the combination that existed after the driver was installed (the original settings). However, if the attribute combinations that are associated with the other quick sets have been changed or deleted, the original settings for those items are *not* restored.

Type a new Quick Set name here appears in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu automatically if no other driver settings have been changed since the driver was installed, or if all of the driver settings match the original settings. Otherwise, the setting in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is the same label that appeared when the printing **Properties** dialog was last closed by clicking **OK**.

When **Default Print Settings** is selected, the following defaults are restored:

- **Paper Options** — **Size is:** Letter
- **Orientation** — Portrait

By default, the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is set to **Default Print Settings**. When you any of the default settings are changed and you want to save the configuration as a Print Task Quick Set, highlight the words **Default Print Settings**, type the name for the new Print Task Quick Set, and then click **Save**. Print Task Quick Sets are saved in the system registry. To delete a Print Task Quick Set, select it from the drop-down menu and click **Delete**.

NOTE: Store a maximum of 25 Print Task Quick Sets on a particular system. If you attempt to save more, the following message appears: **There are too many Print Task Quick Sets defined. Please delete some before adding new ones.**

Paper Options

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document.

The following setting is available in the **Paper Options** group box:

- **Size is:**

Size is:

The **Size is:** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported paper sizes.

Move the cursor over the dimensions label to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override print-driver settings, it is generally best to use the driver to set paper size *only* when printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad.

The paper size is applied to the HP Send Fax job and no printing occurs.

For information about paper sizes, see Paper attributes on page 289 in this STR.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the way that paper feeds into the device. Specify the orientation of the fax job. The two available orientations are portrait and landscape. The default orientation is **Portrait**.

NOTE: Nearly all software programs establish the orientation for the page, so the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains two options:

- **Portrait**. The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper.
- **Landscape**. The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.

Click the document preview image to toggle orientation between portrait and landscape.

Services tab

To gain access to the **Services** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click **Services**.

The **Services** tab is shown in the following figure.

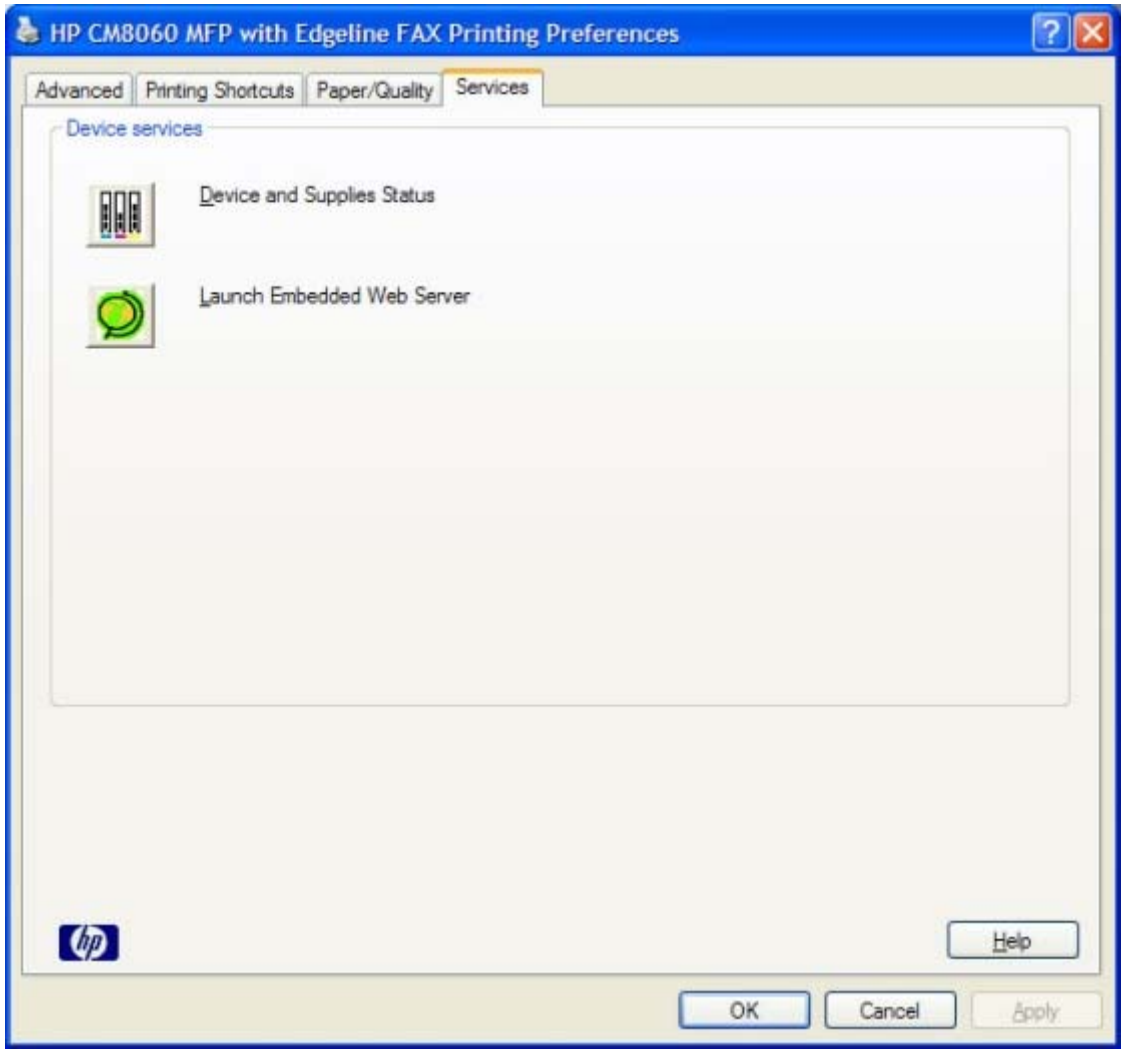


Figure 4-5 Services tab

The **Services** tab contains the following links:

- Device and Supplies Status
- Launch Embedded Web Server

NOTE: The **Services** tab options appear *only* if the HP MFP Send Fax driver is connected to a valid TCP/IP port.

Device and Supplies Status

Click the **Device and Supplies Status** icon to open the **Device Status** screen of the HP EWS.

Launch Embedded Web Server

Click the **Launch Embedded Web Server** icon to open the HP EWS.

5 HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers for MS Windows

Introduction

This STR describes the features of the HP PCL 6 driver, the HP PCL 5 driver, and the HP Postscript 3 Emulation driver (PS Emulation driver) for Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows 2000.

Control print jobs from any of several places:

- Software-program print-dialog box
- Print-driver user interface
- Device control panel (sets defaults, but does *not* provide access to all settings)
- HP Web Jetadmin (sets defaults, but does *not* provide access to all settings)

Generally, for features that are duplicated (for instance, select the paper input tray), settings that are established in the software program override print-driver settings. Print-driver settings, in turn, override device control-panel settings.

When installing the print-system software in Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003, the HP PCL 6 driver is installed by default. The HP PCL 5 and PS Emulation drivers can be installed by performing a Custom Installation.

The following sections describe the options that are available on each tab of the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers.

This STR also describes differences between the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers. Unless otherwise noted, the features that are described apply to all three.

Topics:

- Access to print drivers in Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000
- Help system
- Advanced tab features
- Printing Shortcuts tab features

- Paper/Quality tab features
- Effects tab features
- Finishing tab features
- Output tab features
- Job Storage tab features
- Color tab features
- Services tab features
- Device Settings tab features
- About tab features

Access to print drivers in Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2000

Depending on the operating system on which the print drivers are installed, there are several ways to gain access to the print drivers and different print-driver interfaces:

- Software-program print-dialog box
- Print-driver user interface
- Device control panel

Software-program print-dialog box

To gain access to the print-driver settings from within most software programs:

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.

The appearance and names of the driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system. These driver settings apply only while that software program is open.

Print-driver user interface

Control the drivers directly from the **Printers** folder through the two sets of driver tabs: the **Printing Preferences** tabs and the **Properties** tabs. The settings on the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs control the driver default settings for each user's profile. Configure installable options on the **Properties** driver tabs.

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. To gain access to these tabs:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** print-driver tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Job Storage**
- **Color**
- **Services**

All of these tabs are device-specific.

The **Job Storage** tab is available *only* when the **Job Storage** setting is **Enabled** on the **Device Settings** tab in the **Properties** print-driver tabs. To make the settings take effect, click **OK** on the **Device Settings** tab.

The **Output** tab is available *only* when an output device is connected to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology.

Properties driver tabs

This set of tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections. To gain access to the **Properties** tabs:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.

The following **Properties** print-driver tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Security**

- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Only device-specific HP driver tabs are described in this STR; the other driver tabs are part of the operating system.

The following **Properties** driver tabs are described in this STR:

- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Device control panel

For information about controlling print jobs from the device control panel, see the *HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD that came with the device, or download it from one of the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/support/CM8060edgeline

www.hp.com/support/CM8050edgeline

Help system

The HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers include a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.

What's this? Help

Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 support What's this? Help. Gain access to **What's this?** Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a control and then click **What's this?**. A pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the **?** button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the **X**, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. When you use this special cursor to select a control, the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Press the F1 key, and the Help window for the currently selected control appears.

Context-sensitive Help

Click the **Help** button on a driver tab or in a dialog box to see a context-sensitive Help message.

Incompatible Print Settings messages

Incompatible Print Settings (constraint) messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific print-driver selections. These messages appear in response to selections that are illogical or impossible given the device capabilities or the current settings of other controls.

NOTE: Constraint messages are limited, and the underlying software architecture might accept some settings that are illogical or impossible for the device to perform. Sending a job that has incompatible settings can lead to unexpected results. If print jobs do not print as expected, see the device documentation to ensure that the device has the expected capabilities.

In Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 operating environments, some technically invalid print-driver configurations result in warning messages when trying to save the conflicting settings in the driver. Duplexing, for example, is not possible when the Labels paper type is selected. The following figure shows an example of an **Incompatible Print Settings** message.

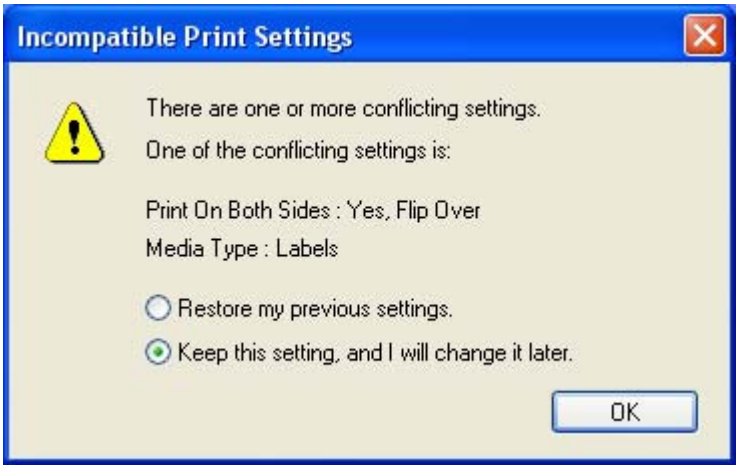


Figure 5-1 An Incompatible Print Settings message

To accept the change, select **Resolve all conflicts for me automatically.** and then click **OK**. The driver resets the conflicting control to a setting that is compatible with the new value.

To keep the conflicting setting, select **I will resolve the conflict myself.** and then click **OK**.

NOTE: If the conflict is not resolved when the driver is closed, the same dialog appears again when a print job is sent to the device.

Advanced tab features

To gain access to the **Advanced** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Advanced** tab.

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages and to configure special controls that are not commonly used. Also use this tab to control print-driver features such as paper size and number of copies (although most current software programs support these features in the print dialog box or through the page settings in the software program). The following figure shows the **Advanced** tab.

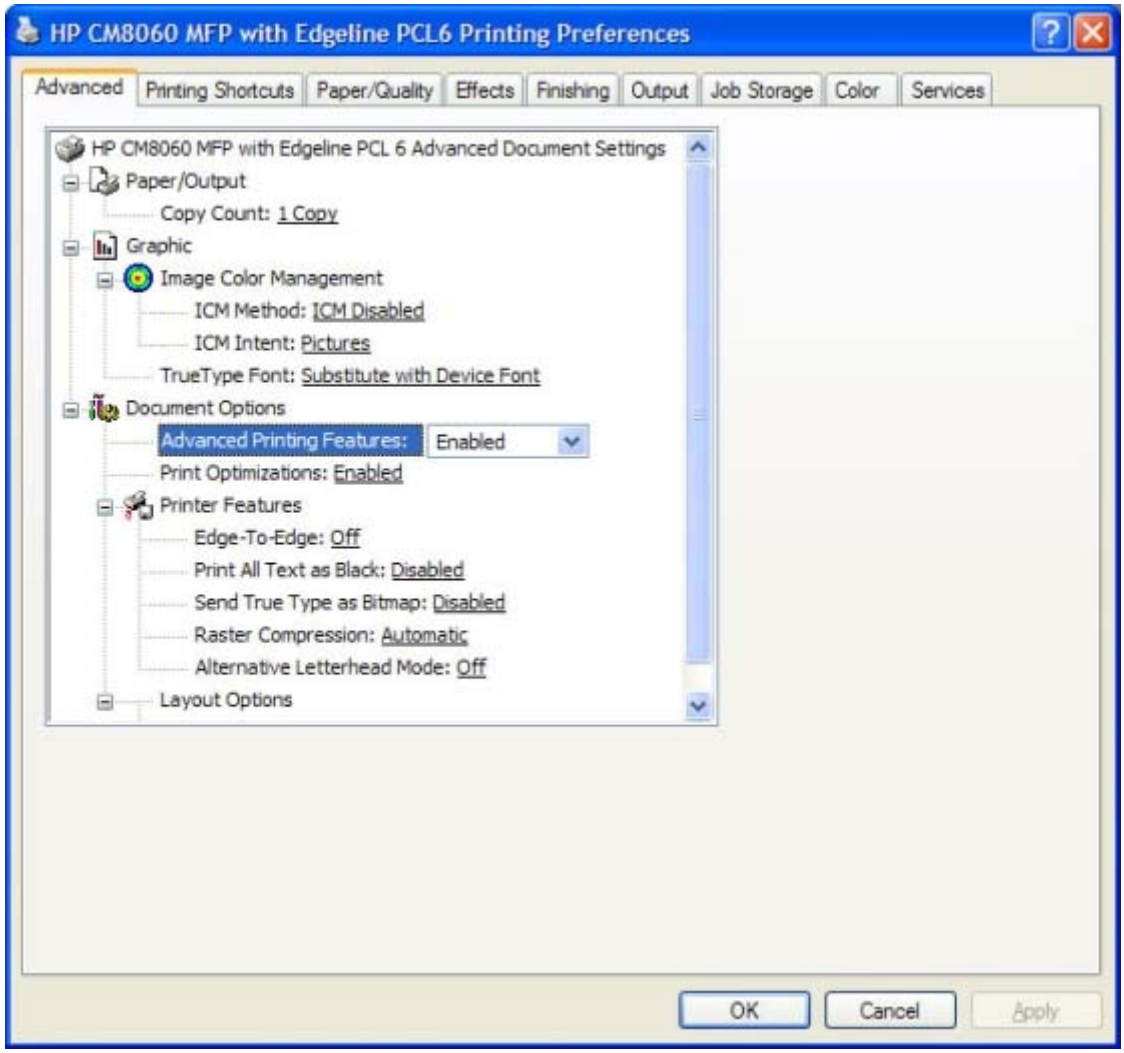


Figure 5-2 **Advanced** tab

The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- Paper/Output
- Graphic
- Document Options

Paper/Output

The **Paper/Output** control contains the following settings:

- **Copy Count**
- **Collated** check box (becomes available and can be changed when the **Copy Count** setting is greater than 1)

NOTE: When changing control settings, click the setting to see the drop-down list for that setting.

Copy Count

Copy Count specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The requested number of copies appears in the **Copy Count** option. Select the number by typing in the box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. Valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used.

When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the edit box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) are changed to the last valid value that appeared in the box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because the number of copies can be set in some software programs, conflicts between the software program and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the software program) appears in the other (such as the driver). For some software programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For example, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver results in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. Set the number of copies in the software program, wherever possible.

Collated

The **Collated** check box is visible when the **Copy Count** setting is selected. The check box becomes available and can be changed when the **Copy Count** setting is greater than 1.

When collated, pages print consecutively for each copy of the document. When not collated, copies of each page print together.

This setting is *not* synchronized with the collate setting in the software program **Print** dialog box. Settings in the software program override settings in the print driver. For instance, when using Microsoft Word, the **Collate** check box in the **Print** dialog box is selected by default. However, in the print driver, the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab is *not* selected by default. The software program setting takes precedence over the driver setting, and the printed output is collated by default. Therefore, if the **Collated** check box is selected in the driver, but the **Collate** setting is not enabled in the software program, the printed output is uncollated.

To obtain uncollated printed output, clear the **Collate** setting in *both* the driver and the software program.

Graphic

The **Graphic** control contains the following settings:

- **Image Color Management**
- **True Type Fonts**

NOTE: When changing control settings, click on the setting to see the drop-down list for that settings.

Image Color Management

This setting lists the available Image Color Management (ICM) options that are used for printing color graphics. ICM, a set of calculations for color matching, makes it possible for programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images on the screen more closely match the color of those images when they are printed. The following options are available:

- **ICM Method**. The ICM Method setting specifies how to print the color graphics.
  - To enable Image Color Management, click the option and then select **ICM Enabled**.
  - If you want the host computer to perform calculations for color matching before it sends the document to the product, select **ICM Handled by Host System**.
  - If you want the device to perform calculations for color matching, select **ICM Handled by Printer**. In this case, a set of rules for mapping the colors is created and downloaded to the device. The device uses these rules to adjust colors in the document.
- **ICM Intent**. The ICM Intent setting specifies how color images are created to produce the image that looks best on the printed page.
  - When printing a chart or using fully saturated, bright colors, select **Graphics**.
  - For photographs or pictures where the colors blend together, select **Pictures** to maximize the contrast. This is the default setting.
  - When the document uses a color that must be matched exactly, and the document is printing on a device that has that specific color of ink, select **Proof**.
  - To preview the color settings from another device, select **Match**.

True Type Font

Use **Substitute with Device Font** (the default setting) to use equivalent printer fonts to print documents that contain TrueType fonts. This permits faster printing, but can eliminate special characters that the equivalent printer font does not support. Select **Download as Softfont** to download TrueType fonts for printing instead of using printer fonts.

Document Options

The **Document Options** control contains the following settings:

- **Advanced Printing Features**
- **Print Optimizations** (HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers)
- **PostScript Options** (PS Emulation driver)
- **Printer Features**
- **Layout Options**

NOTE: When changing control settings, click the setting to see the drop-down list for that setting.

Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on the device. For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still be available in the print driver, even if they have been disabled. Selecting an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab automatically makes the feature available.

Print Optimizations

NOTE: **Print Optimizations** settings are available only in the HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers. They are not available in the PS Emulation driver.

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and the document contains overlapping text and graphics, the text that is placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, disable this feature. When this feature is disabled, print optimization-features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

PostScript Options

NOTE: **PostScript Output Options** settings are available only in the PS Emulation driver. They are not available in the HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers.

Select one of the following settings in the **PostScript Output Options** drop-down menu:

- **Optimize for Speed.** This is the default setting.
- **Optimize for Portability.** Use this setting to create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC). Each page of the document is a self-contained object. For example, this option is for creating a postscript file and printing it on a different device.
- **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS).** Use this setting to include the file as an image in another document that is to be printed from another program.
- **Archive format.** Use this option to create a postscript file that can be used later.

Select one of the following settings in the **TrueType Font Download** drop-down menu:

- **Automatic.** This is the default setting.
- **Outline.** Select this option to download the TrueType font as a scalable outline font.
- **Bitmap.** Select this option to download the TrueType font as a bitmap font.
- **Native TrueType.** If the device is a TrueType rasterizer printer; select this option to download the TrueType font as an outline font.

Select one of the following settings in the **PostScript Language Level** drop-down menu:

- **3**
- **2**
- **1**

The default setting is **3**. It is usually better to select the highest number available, because it provides more features. In some instances, lower numbers might be necessary. For example, when printing a file to disk for someone who has a level-1 device, select **1**.

Select one of the following settings in the **Send PostScript Error Handler** drop-down menu:

- **Yes.** This is the default setting. When an error occurs in the print job, an error page is sent to the device.
- **No.** Select this setting if you do not want an error page to be printed when an error occurs.

Printer Features

The **Printer Features** setting contains the following sub-settings:

- The **Edge-To-Edge** setting is **Off** by default. When **On** is selected, the print area expands to allow printing within 1mm of the edge of the page
- **Print All Text as Black.**

  The **Print All Text as Black** setting is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic.

- **Send TrueType as Bitmap.**

  NOTE: The **Send TrueType as Bitmap.** setting is available only in the HP PCL 6 and HP PCL 5 unidrivers. It is not available in the PS Emulation Unidriver.

  Send TrueType as Bitmap provides an alternative for software programs that have trouble using TrueType fonts for special graphic aspects such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. When **Enabled**, the driver sends TrueType fonts to the printer as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

- **Raster Compression**

  NOTE: The **Raster Compression** setting is available only in the HP PCL 6 Unidriver. It is not available in the HP PCL 5 Unidriver or the PS Emulation Unidriver.

Use the **Raster Compression** feature to select the graphics-compression method:

- **Automatic**. The software determines the best compression method to use.
- **Best Quality**. This option forces the software to use a lossless compression method. (Lossless means that no data is lost during compression.)
- **Maximum Compression**. Where applicable, this option requires the software to always use a lossy compression method (some data is lost).

- **Alternative Letterhead Mode.**

  When selected, this option enables you to always load preprinted or letterhead paper types the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing on one side of the sheet or on both sides of the sheet. Load the paper as you would for printing on both sides.

  If the device tray has an icon that indicates to load the paper either face-up or face-down, load the paper opposite of the orientation shown.

  NOTE: When this option is selected, the printing speed slows to the speed required to print on both sides of the sheet.

- **Graphics Mode.** (HP PCL 5 driver)

  Use the **Graphics Mode** feature to select one of the following settings:

  - **Send Graphics as Vector.** Select this setting to send graphics to the device as a combination of HP Graphics Language, version 2 (HP-GL/2), and raster images. This setting might produce higher-quality output. It is the default setting.
  - **Send Graphics as Raster.** Select this setting to send all graphics to the device as images composed of individual dots. This setting might improve printing speed in some cases.

Layout Options

The **Layout Options** setting contains the **Page Order** sub-setting.

Page Order specifies the order in which the pages of the document are printed. **Front to Back** prints the document so that page 1 prints first. **Back to Front** prints the document so that page 1 prints last.

NOTE: The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

Printing Shortcuts tab features

To gain access to the **Printing Shortcuts** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Use the **Printing Shortcuts** tab to print jobs with specific printer-driver settings. The available settings depend on the device configuration. Select one of the defined shortcuts or create custom printing shortcuts. The following figure shows the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

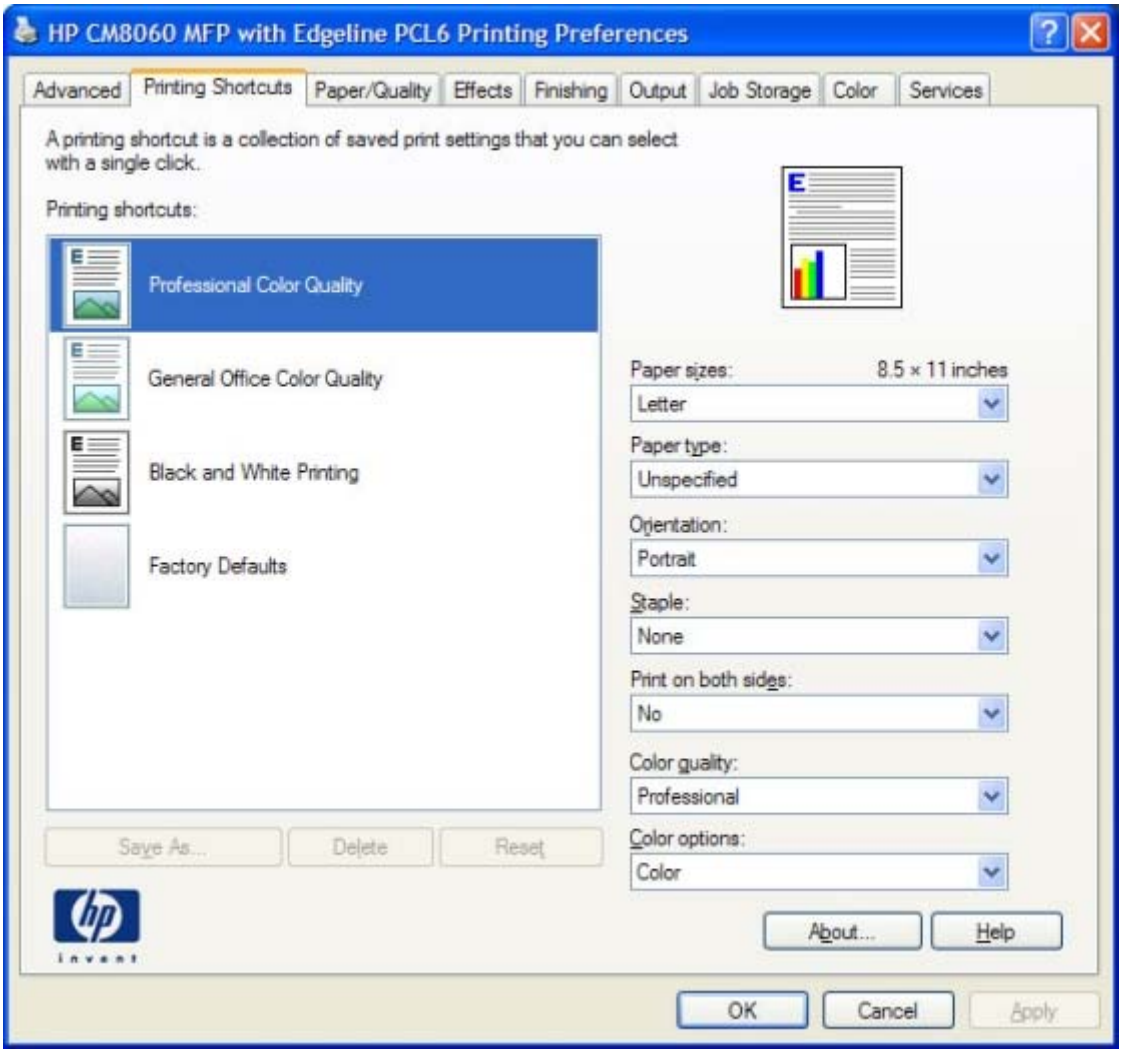


Figure 5-3 **Printing Shortcuts** tab

Select one of the defined shortcuts or custom printing shortcuts, and then click **OK** to print the job with the specific printer-driver settings.

You can store a maximum of 25 custom printing shortcuts on a particular system.

Select any custom printing shortcut and then click **Delete** to delete it.

Click **Reset** to set the default options for all features of the selected shortcut.

Topics:

- Using defined printing shortcuts
- Create a custom printing shortcut

Using defined printing shortcuts

The following defined printing shortcuts are available:

- **Professional Color Quality** (Default). Select this option to print with **Professional** as the **Color quality:** setting.
- **General Office Color Quality**. Select this option to print with **General office** as the **Color quality:** setting.
- **Black and White Printing**. Select this option to print with **Black and White** as the **Color options:** setting.
- **Factory Defaults**. Select this option to print with the default printer-driver settings.

Click **Reset** to set the default options for all features of the selected shortcut.

Create a custom printing shortcut

Create a custom printing shortcut by following these steps:

1. Select one of the defined shortcuts as a base.
2. Select the appropriate print settings on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab, or by using the settings on any of the **Printing Preferences** tabs.

   NOTE: Staple options are available *only* if the optional HP Multifunction Finisher is installed.

3. On the **Printing Shortcuts** tab, click **Save As...**. The **Printing shortcuts** box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-4 **Printing shortcuts** box

4. Type a name for the custom printing shortcut, and then click **OK**. The custom printing shortcut appears in the printing shortcuts list.

Paper/Quality tab features

To gain access to the **Paper/Quality** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the paper. Also use this tab to specify the location of different paper types within the print job. The following figure shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

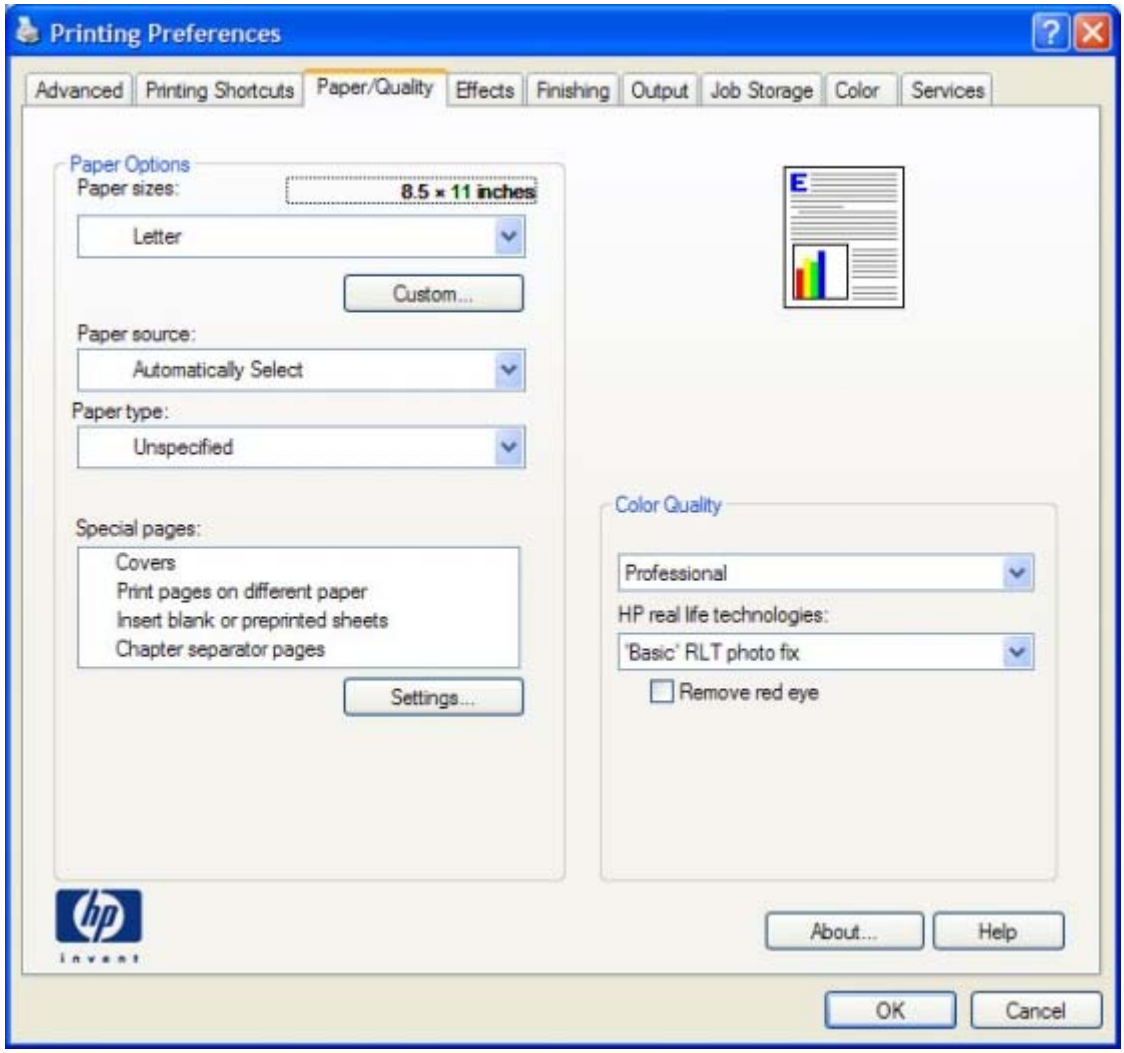


Figure 5-5 **Paper/Quality** tab

The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following control sets:

- Paper Options
- Document preview image
- Color Quality

Paper Options

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections that are available by default.

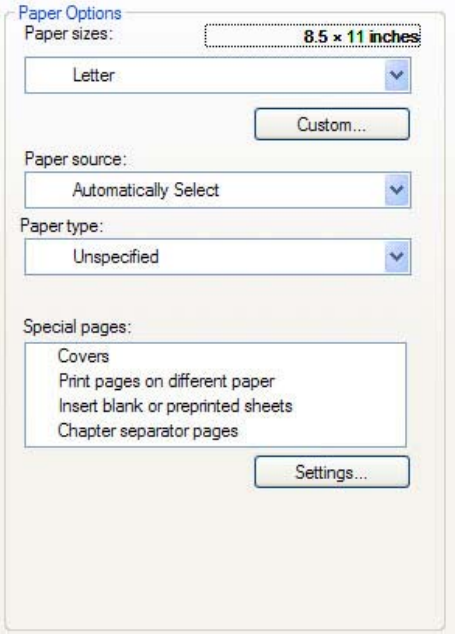


Figure 5-6 **Paper Options** group box

The **Paper Options** group box contains the following controls:

- Page size:
- Custom Paper Size
- Paper Source:
- Paper Type:
- Special pages:

Page size:

The **Page size:** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported paper sizes.

Move the mouse cursor over the dimensions label to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, it is generally best to use the driver to set paper size only when printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.

NOTE: Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the device, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

Custom Paper Size

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click **Custom...** on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The following figure shows the initial appearance of the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box.

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology does not reflect the maximum paper size that the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology supports.

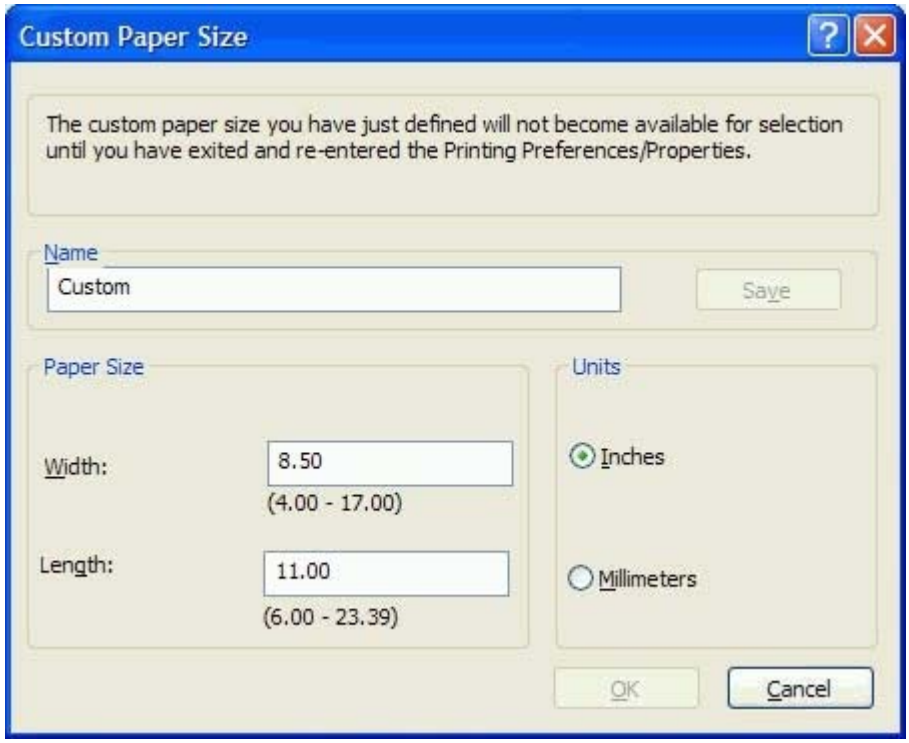


Figure 5-7 **Custom Paper Size** dialog box

Name

Use the **Name** text box to type a new name for a custom paper size.

The name that appears in the **Name** text box depends on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom paper size has been selected from the drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the name of the selected custom paper size.
- If a standard paper size has been selected on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the default name of "Custom."
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** text box for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the text box until the new size is saved or the dialog box is closed.

If you type a new name into the **Name** text box, but then do not click **Save**, you can change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if you close the dialog box without clicking **Save**, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning.

Paper size

Change the width and height values by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes in the **Paper Size** group box.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height control is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height control is rounded up to the minimum valid entry.

If units are in millimeters, the custom paper-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom paper-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each control is 1 millimeter or 1/10 of an inch, depending on the current measurement units.

Units

To change measurement units, click one of the options in the **Units** group box (either **Inches** or **Millimeters**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum paper size for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology is 76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches) and the maximum is 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 inches). The following table summarizes paper size limits for each paper-handling device.

Table 5-1 HP PCL 6 driver custom paper sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (80-sheet manual feed)	Width	76 mm (3.0 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127 mm (5.0 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)
Tray 2 - 4 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.26 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)
Trays 5 (4000-sheet, optional)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.26 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)
Duplexing unit	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)

Paper Source:

The **Paper Source:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the device accessories that are installed. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Paper Source:** drop-down menu can contain the following options, depending on what has been installed on the device:

- **Automatically select**
- **Printer Auto Select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1**
- **Tray 2**
- **Tray 3**
- **Tray 4**
- **Tray 5**

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology uses the source tray that supports the selected paper size. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct paper size is loaded in the source tray. For information about paper sources, see Paper attributes on page 289.

Paper Type:

The **Paper Type:** drop-down menu shows all of the paper types that the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology supports. When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the device uses the default paper type, which is usually **Plain**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom paper types through the driver. Custom types can be added *only* by using the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the device when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then an updated list of paper types is returned. If bidirectional communication is *not* enabled, then the driver looks for custom paper types that have been saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom paper types are available through the driver.

Select a paper type instructs the device to use a group of predefined settings to create the best possible print quality for that type of paper.

CAUTION: Selecting a paper type that does not match the type of paper that is loaded in the tray can damage the device.

The following standard types appear in the list:

- **Unspecified**
- **Plain**
- **HP Office LG (long grain) Plain**
- **HP Premium Presentation Matte 120g**
- **HP Brochure & Flyer Matte 180g**
- **HP Cover Matte 200g**
- **HP Edgeline Glossy 180g**

- **HP Edgeline Glossy 220G**
- **Cardstock**
- **Matte**
- **Matte Brochure**
- **Matte Cover**
- **Labels**
- **Letterhead**
- **Preprinted**
- **Prepunched**
- **Colored**
- **Bond**
- **Recycled**

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the paper type. Before selecting a different setting, make sure that the correct paper type is loaded in the tray that is specified in the **Paper Source:** setting.

If the print-driver setting is changed to a paper type that is not currently loaded in the device, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the selected paper type or select another tray.

Special pages:

Use the **Special pages:** ("page exceptions") list box to select different trays loaded with different types of paper for different parts of the print job. For example, you can have covers printed on different paper, or you can insert pre-printed pages at designated places to print books.

Select an option in the **Special pages:** list box, and then click **Settings...**. Use the **Settings** dialog box to control the settings for the special pages of the print job. Examples of the dialog boxes for the special pages options are shown in the following figures.

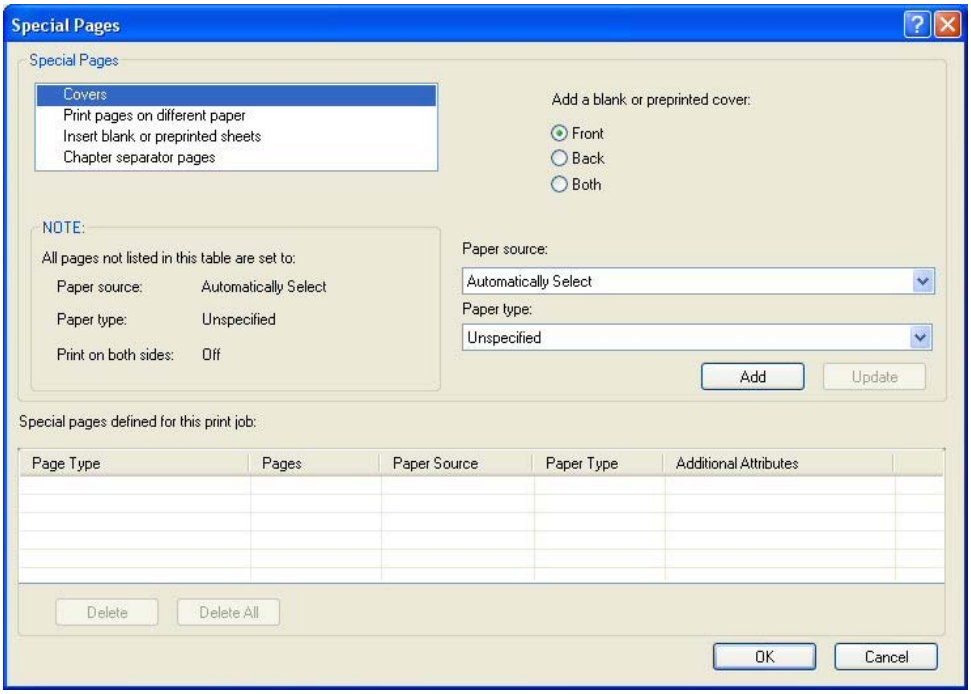


Figure 5-8 **Covers** dialog box

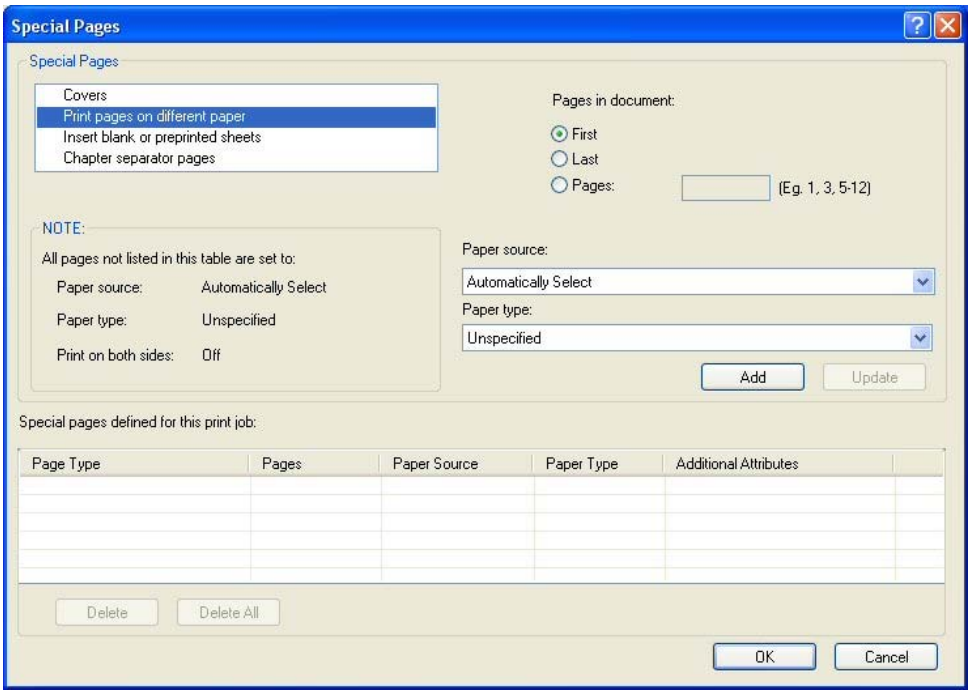


Figure 5-9 **Print pages on different paper** dialog box

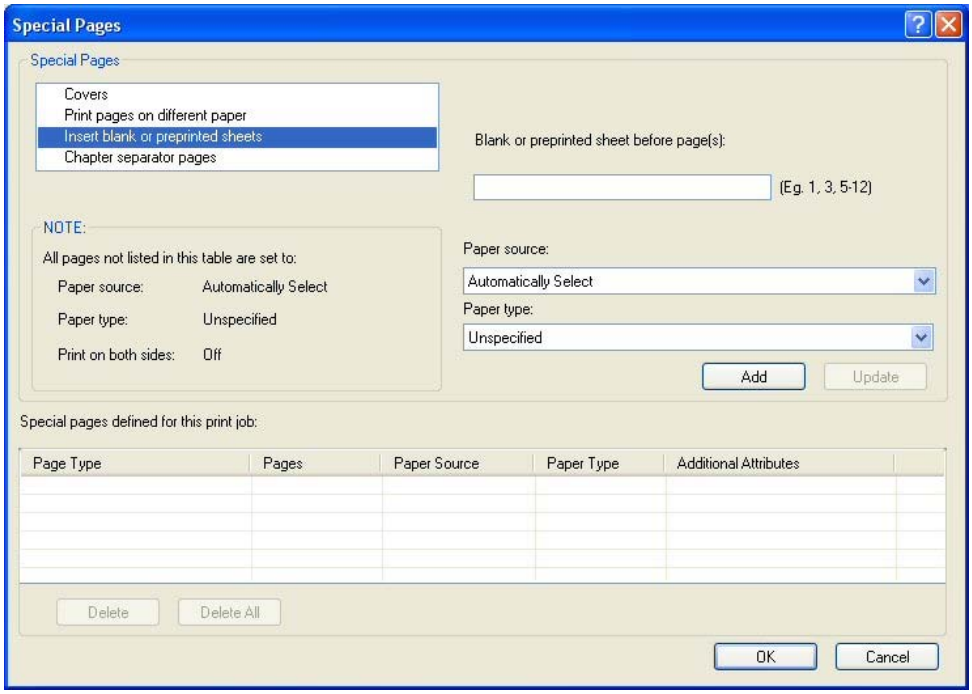


Figure 5-10 **Insert blank or preprinted sheets** dialog box

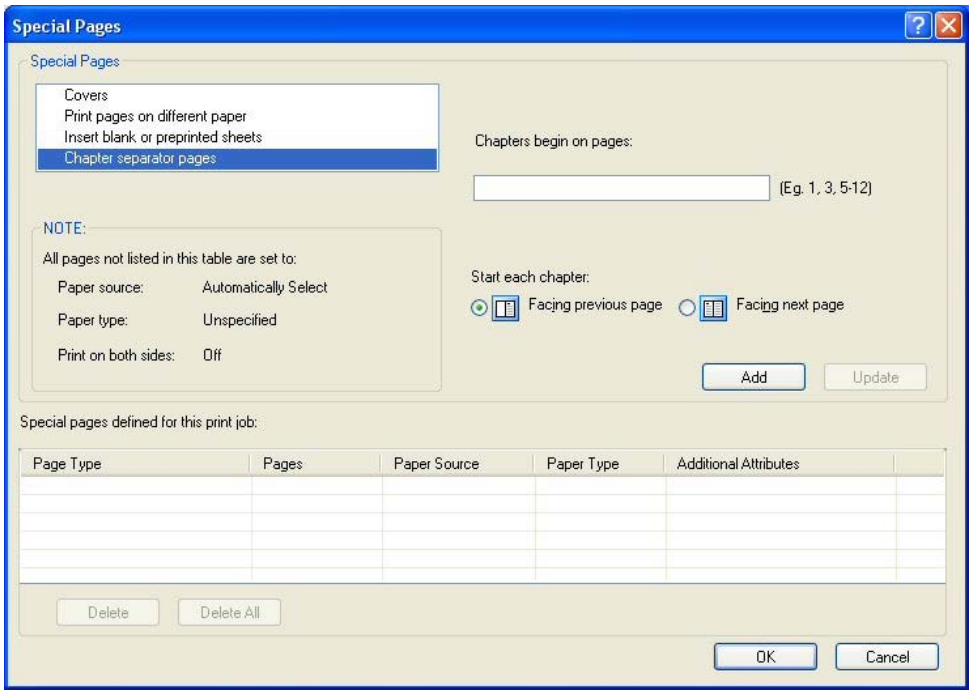


Figure 5-11 **Chapter separator pages** dialog box

NOTE: Options available in the **Settings** dialog box change depending on the selection made in the **Special pages:** list box.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 5-12 Document preview image

Color Quality

The **Color Quality** group box is shown in the following figure.

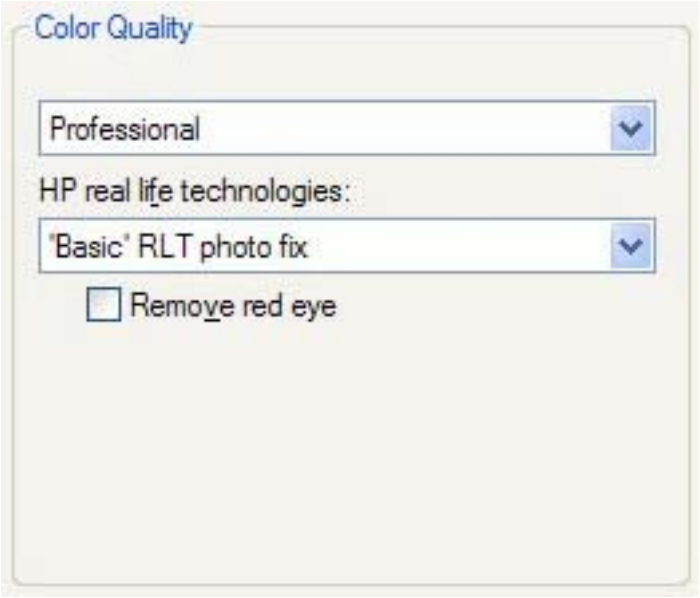


Figure 5-13 **Color Quality** group box

The **Color Quality** group box contains the following controls:

- Color Quality drop-down menu
- HP real life technologies

Color Quality drop-down menu

The **Color Quality** drop-down menu contains the following settings:

- **Professional** (default). Use this setting to print jobs with color saturation levels that are comparable to competitive devices that are using their default mode.
- **General office**. Use this setting to print jobs with lower color saturation levels.

NOTE: Both color-quality settings print jobs with the same black saturation level. Black text, lines, and graphics are identical between the two modes.

HP real life technologies

Access **HP real life technologies** options from the **Paper/Quality** tab, which is shown in the following figure.

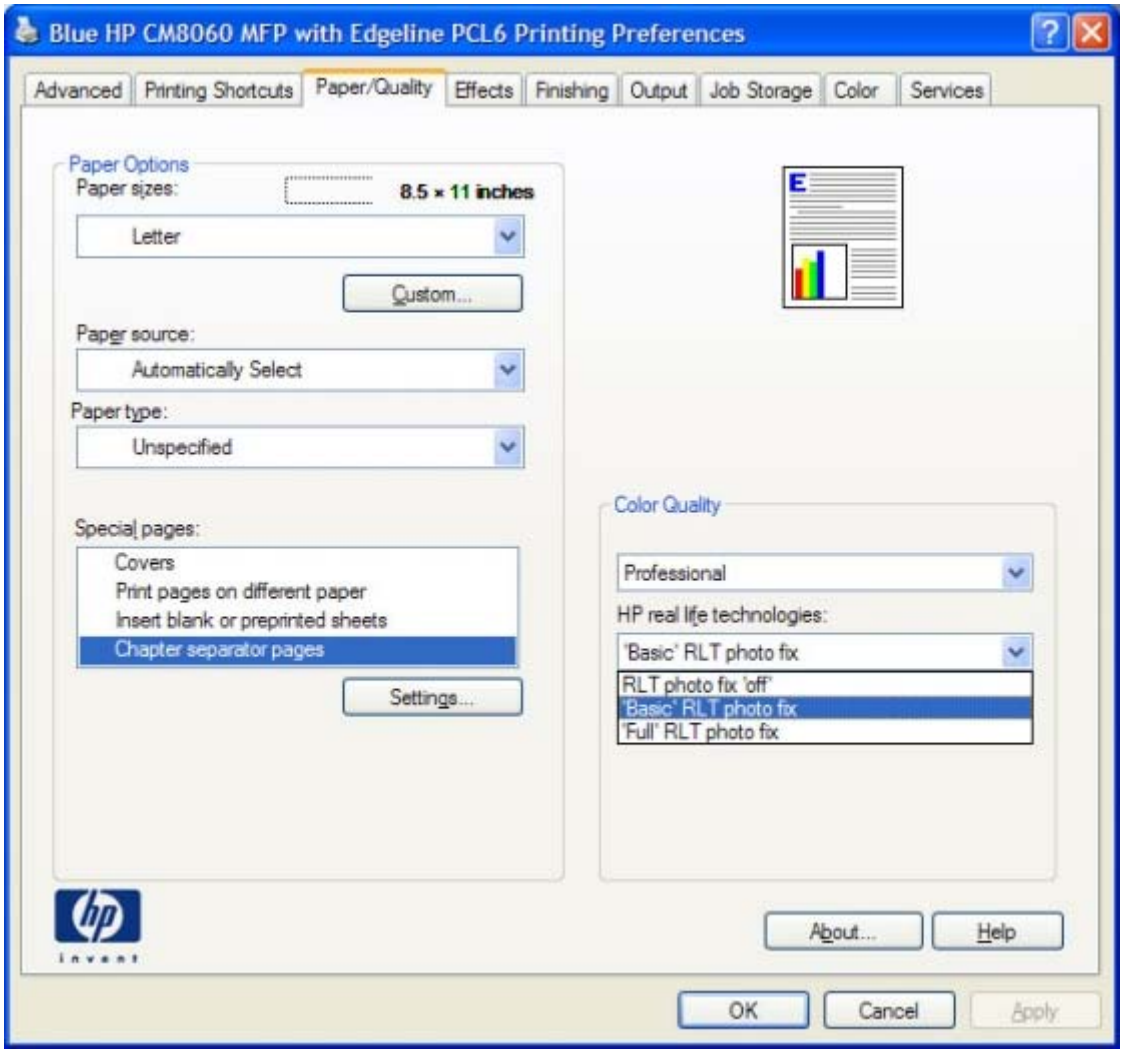


Figure 5-14 **HP real life technologies** options

The following options can be selected from the **HP real life technologies** drop down menu:

- **RLT photo fix “off”**
- **'Basic' RLT photo fix**
- **'Full' RLT photo fix**

Use any of the following controls to enhance digital images.

RLT photo fix “off.” Select the **RLT photo fix “off”** option if no image enhancements will need to be applied.

'Basic' RLT photo fix. Select the **'Basic' RLT photo fix** option if you want to apply the following ehancements:

- **Smart Focusing**. Use the **Smart Focusing** setting to increase the apparent resolution of lower resolution images. Many images that are downloaded from the Internet or from digital cameras can be compressed because of size restrictions, and might exhibit pixilation artifacts when printed. **Smart Focusing** upscales the image to the printer resolution without accentuating these artifacts.
- **Sharpness**. Many images are improved by increasing their sharpness. Use the **Sharpness** setting to make edge detail more prominent. The filter detects regions that contain significant variations in pixel value along a number of different vectors (which denotes edges) and then applies a filter to enhance detail.

'Full' RLT photo fix. Select the **'Full' RLT photo fix** option if you want to apply the following ehancements:

- **Automatic Photo Brightening**. Use the **Automatic Photo Brightening** setting to increase image contrast for a more visually pleasing result. This filter is useful with flat images (images in which much of the image content is compressed into a small, dynamic range of pixel values). Flat images can result from low lighting, environmental haze, or camera or scanner limitations.
- **Automatic Adaptive Lighting**. Use the **Automatic Adaptive Lighting** setting to adjust lighting levels to reveal areas in shadow. The filter locates dark areas in an image and brings out detail without degrading other features in the image.
- **Smart Focusing**. Use the **Smart Focusing** setting to increase the apparent resolution of lower resolution images. Many images that are downloaded from the Internet or from digital cameras can be compressed because of size restrictions, and might exhibit pixilation artifacts when printed. **Smart Focusing** upscales the image to the printer resolution without accentuating these artifacts.
- **Sharpness**. Many images are improved by increasing their sharpness. Use the **Sharpness** setting to make edge detail more prominent. The filter detects regions that contain significant variations in pixel value along a number of different vectors (which denotes edges) and then applies a filter to enhance detail.
- **Red Eye Removal**. Use the **Red Eye Removal** setting to automatically remove red-eyes from the image. This unique and highly effective feature automatically recognizes and removes red eyes on the image that were produced by a flash.

Effects tab features

To gain access to the **Effects** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Effects** tab.

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following figure shows the **Effects** tab.

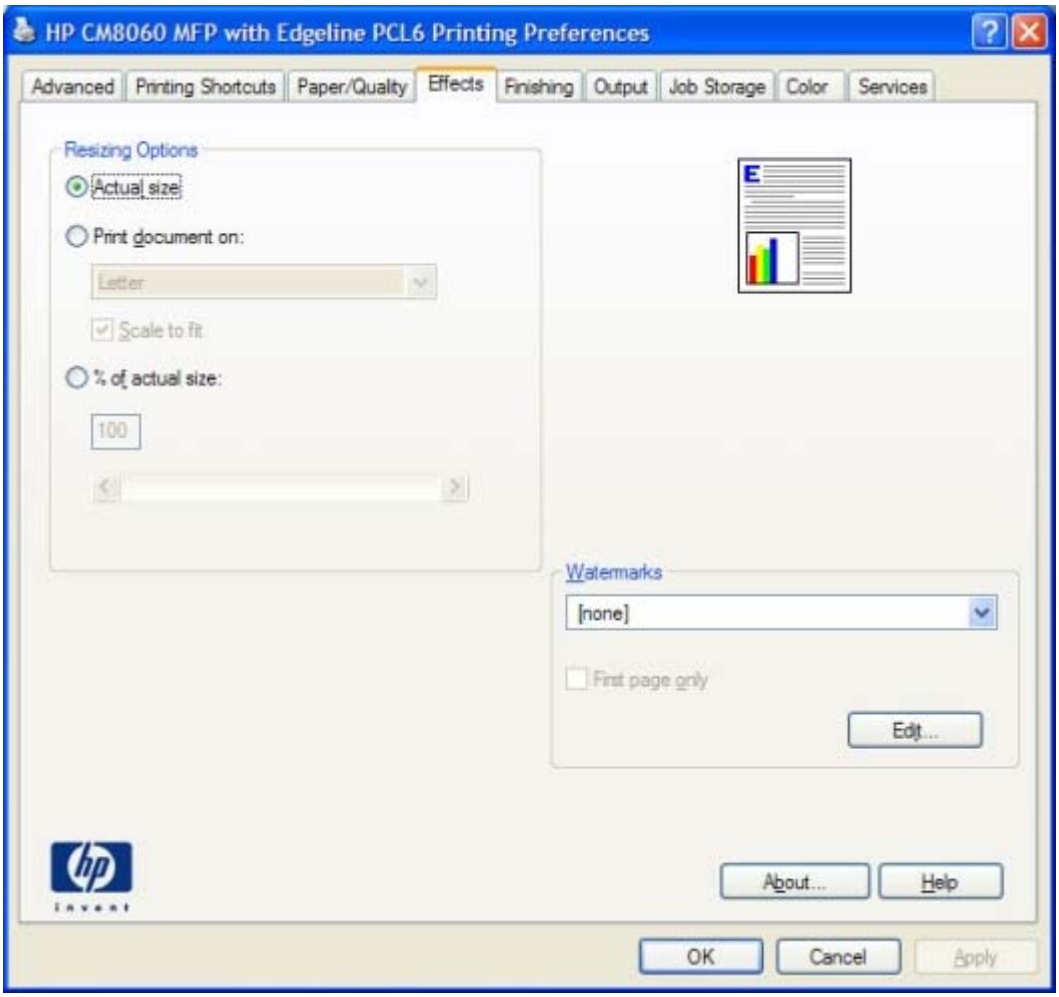


Figure 5-15 **Effects** tab

The **Effects** tab contains the following controls:

- Resizing Options
- Document preview image
- Watermarks

Resizing Options

The **Resizing Options** group box contains the following controls:

- **Actual Size** (default)
- **Print Document On** setting
- **Scale to Fit** option
- **% of Normal Size** setting

Actual Size

Actual Size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print Document On

Click the **Print Document On** option to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

- The **% of Normal Size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per Sheet** value on the **Finishing** tab is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the paper sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard paper sizes that the selected paper source supports and any custom sizes that have been created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check box if you do not want the document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected paper.

Scale to Fit

The **Scale to Fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the paper. If the document size is larger than the paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the paper. The following figure shows preview images for a document formatted for Legal-size paper with the **Print Document On** check box selected and the paper size specified as **Letter**.

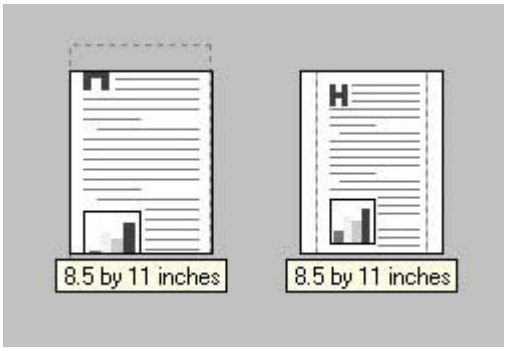


Figure 5-16 Preview images – Legal on Letter; **Scale to Fit** off (left) and on (right)

When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target page size.

% of Normal Size

The **% of Normal Size** option provides a slider bar to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100% of normal size. Normal size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the device.

The limits of the range are from 25% to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the slider-bar indicator is dragged, and the document preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

Dragging the slider-bar indicator does not yield an exact value. Instead, either use the slider-bar indicator to approximate the value and then use the arrows to refine the value, or type the value into the entry box.

The following settings disable **% of Normal Size**:

- **Print Document On** on the **Effects** tab is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** on the **Finishing** tab is not 1

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 5-17 Document preview image

Watermarks

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create a custom watermark (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system plus the string "(none)", which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark that is selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)".

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.

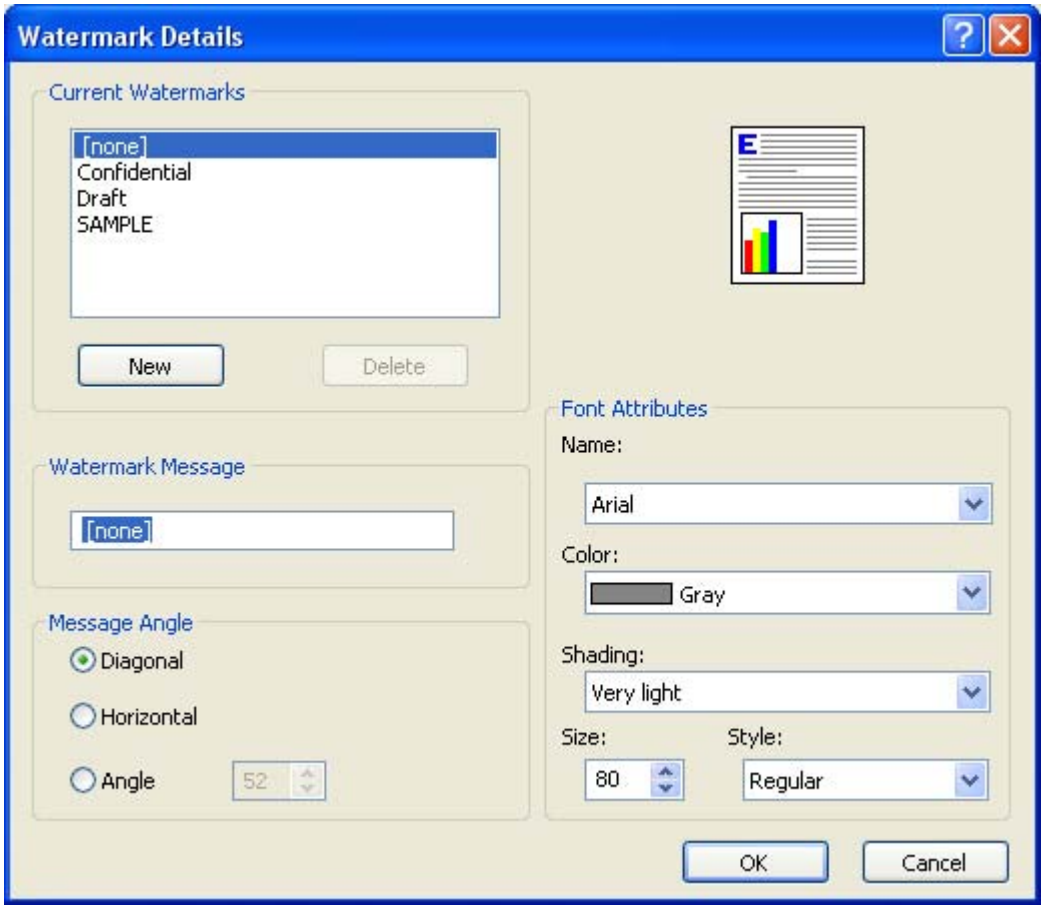


Figure 5-18 **Watermark Details** dialog box

The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both the predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that have been created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as "**Untitled**" until you name it. The name typed in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box.

To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**. A warning appears asking whether you are sure you want to delete the selected item. Click **Cancel** to keep the watermark. Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.

NOTE: No more that 30 watermarks can exist in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When the limit of 30 watermarks is reached, the **New** button is disabled.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, in effect creates a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks can contain the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page. All settings center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal.** This is the default setting. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal.** Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Custom.** Select this setting to place the text at the specified angle across the page. Use the numeric spin box to select the angle.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name.** The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.
- **Color.** The **Color** drop-down menu contains only one option: **Gray**.
- **Shading.** The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu:
  - **Lightest**
  - **Very Light** (default)
  - **Light**
  - **Medium Light**
  - **Medium**
  - **Medium Dark**

- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. Select **Light** to produce a lightly saturated gray watermark. Select **Lightest** to produce the lightest shade of watermark. Select **Darkest** to produce a black watermark.

- **Size.** Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent.
- **Style.** The following settings are available:
  - **Regular**
  - **Bold**
  - **Italic**
  - **Bold Italic**

  The default **Style** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

Default watermark settings

The following table shows **Font Attribute** settings for new and preset watermarks.

Table 5-2 Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks

Setting	New watermark	Preset watermark
Name	**Arial**	Varies by language
Color	**Gray**	**Gray**
Shading	**Very Light**	**Very Light**
Size	**80**	Varies by language
Style	**Regular**	**Regular**

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that have been made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Finishing tab features

CAUTION: Disabling **Mopier Mode** disrupts functionality for the **Output** and **Finishing** tab features.

To gain access to the **Finishing** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Finishing** tab.

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the paper output. The following figure shows the **Finishing** tab.

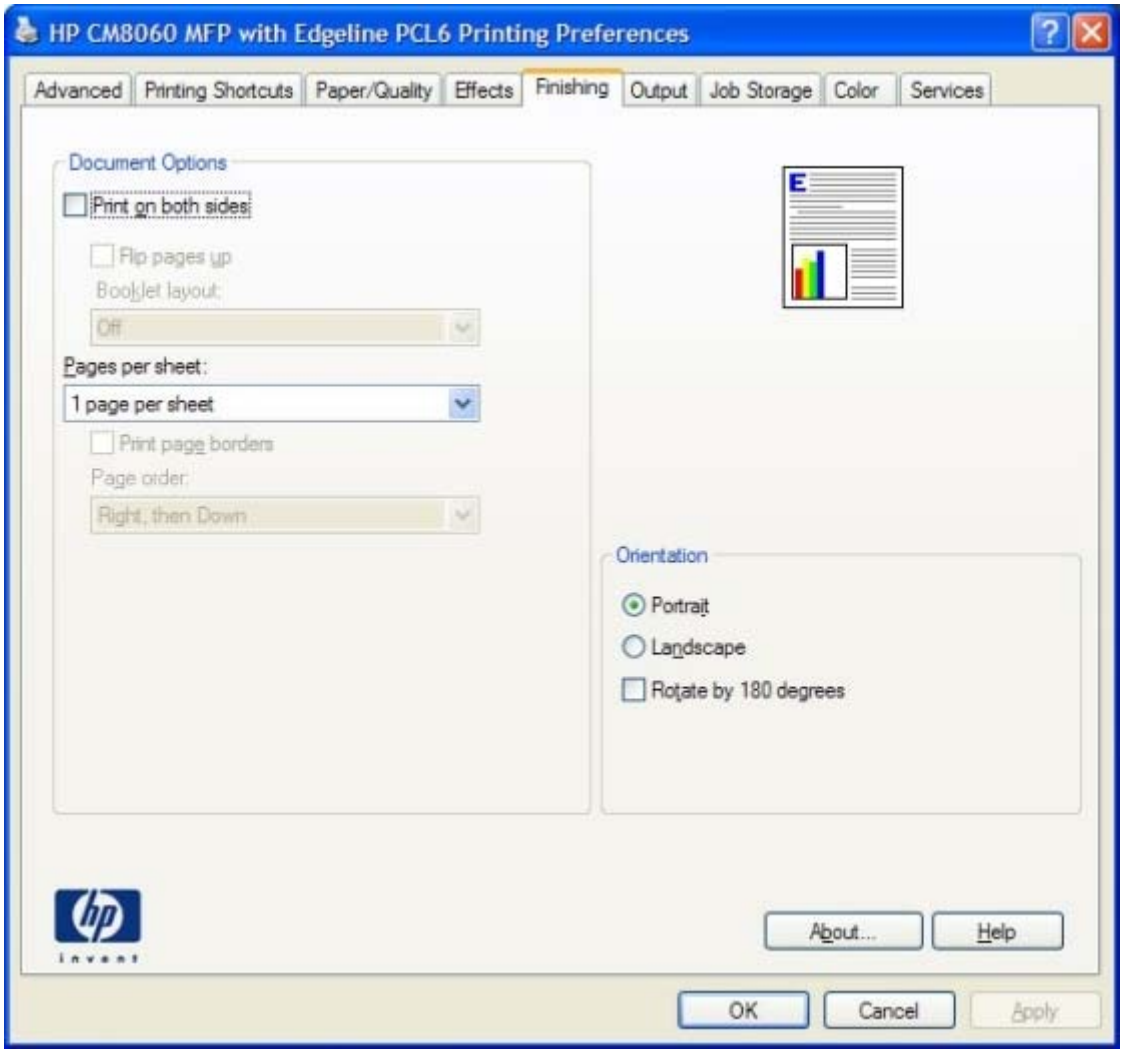


Figure 5-19 **Finishing** tab

The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- Document options
- Document preview image
- Orientation

Document options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls:

- Print on Both Sides
- Flip Pages Up
- Booklet layout
- Pages per Sheet
- Print Page Borders

- Page Order

Print on Both Sides

The default setting for the **Print on Both Sides** option is off (not selected). **Print on Both Sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Paper Type:** on the **Paper/Quality** tab is set to any paper type *except for* the following types:
  - **Labels**
  - **Tough Paper**
- **Page size:** is set to any paper size *except for* the following size:
  - **Statement**

Automatically print on both sides

The duplexing unit in the device prints on two sides of a sheet of paper when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job.

Devices with a duplexer installed support smart duplexing. The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides, such as labels, and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead

When the paper type is set to **Unspecified**, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the device makes adjustments to its print modes. Selecting a paper type instructs the device to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to create an image that has the best possible quality for that paper. This group of settings is known as a print mode. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

Flip Pages Up

Use the **Flip Pages Up** check box to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is available only when **Print on Both Sides** is selected.

The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this check box, depending on the paper orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 5-3 Page orientation

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet layout

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the paper size that is set on the **Paper/Quality** tab:

- **Left Edge Binding**
- **Right Edge Binding**

Selecting **Left Edge Binding** or **Right Edge Binding** changes the document preview image to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. Changing the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet disables the booklet setting.

Topics:

- Book and Booklet Printing
- Print a booklet

Book and Booklet Printing

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology supports book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job that consists of at least two pages. It can have a different paper type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the special pages settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab to select the following printing options for the book:

- **Front Cover**
- **First Page**
- **Other Pages**
- **Last Page**
- **Back Cover**

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can then be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the paper. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Print a booklet

Complete the following steps to print a booklet in most software programs:

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Finishing** tab.
5. Select the **Print on Both Sides** check box.
6. In the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, select the type of booklet printing that you want (for example, **Right Edge Binding**).
7. Click **OK** in the print driver.
8. Click **OK** in the print dialog box to print.

Pages per Sheet

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages to print on a single sheet of paper.

When printing with more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in a defined order. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- **1 page per sheet** (default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

NOTE: Selecting an option other than **1 page per sheet** makes booklet printing unavailable.

Print Page Borders

Related controls indented beneath the **Pages per Sheet** edit box are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

Page Order

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following figure.

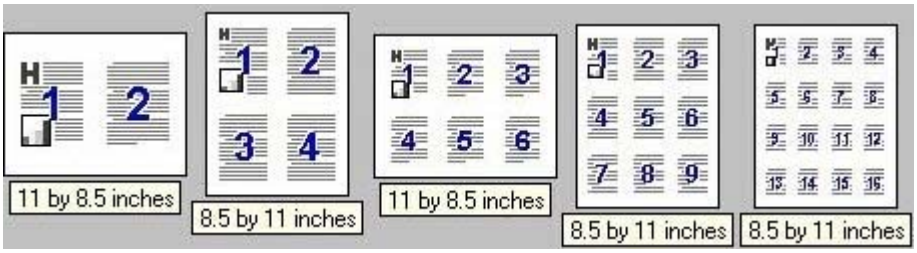


Figure 5-20 Page-order preview images

- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 5-21 Document preview image

Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the way that paper feeds into the device.

NOTE: Nearly all software programs establish the orientation for the printed page, so the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains two options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper. This is the default orientation.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.

In addition to the **Portrait** and **Landscape** orientation options, you can select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box. This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180°. This setting is useful for printing prepunched paper.

Toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the document preview image. Selecting the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box does not change the document preview image.

Output tab features

CAUTION: Disabling **Mopier Mode** disrupts functionality for the **Output** and **Finishing** tab features.

To gain access to the **Output** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Output** tab.

Use the **Output** tab to select where and how the paper exits the device. The following figure shows the **Output** tab.

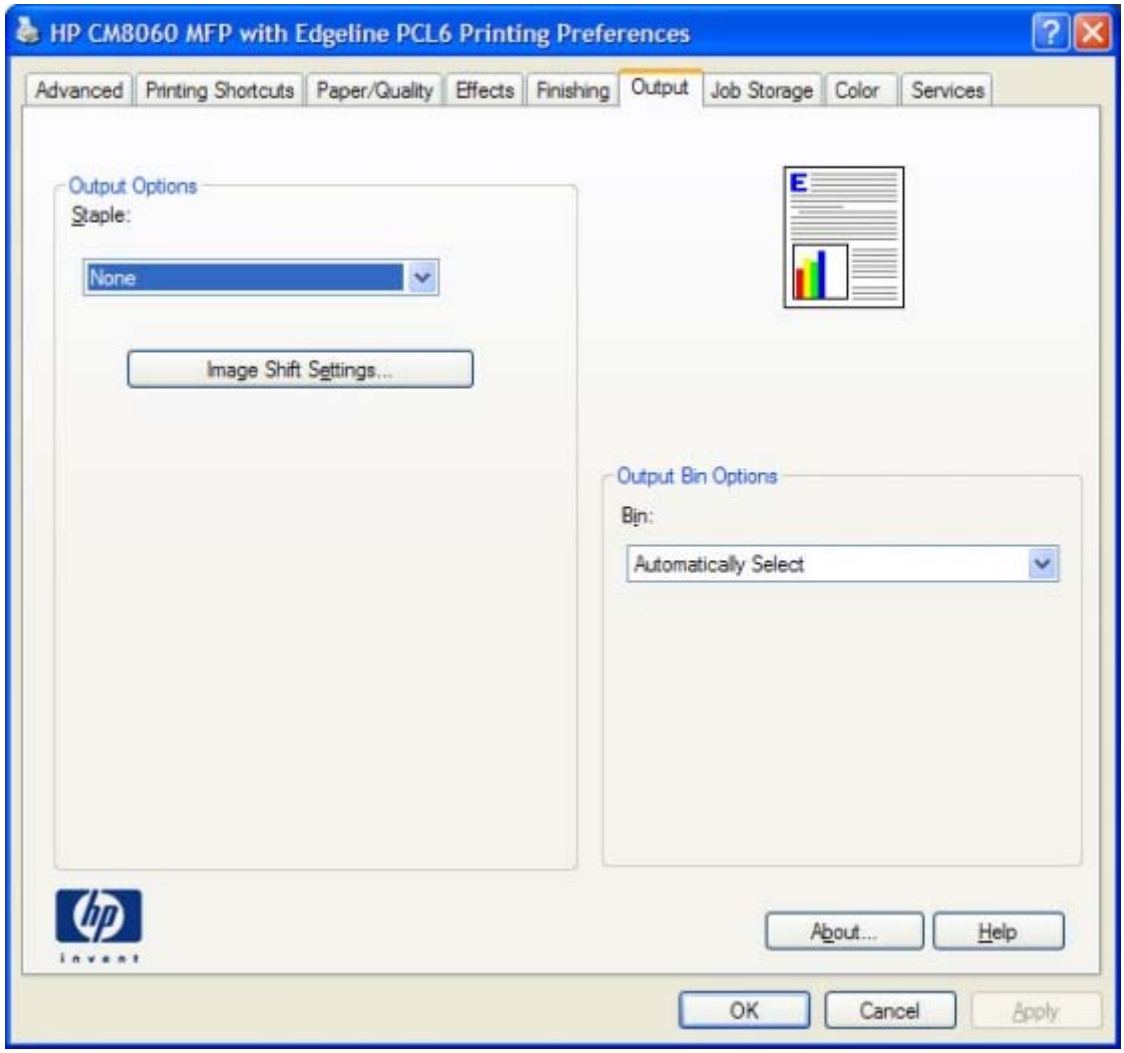


Figure 5-22 **Output** tab

The **Output** tab appears among the driver tabs only if an accessory output bin or optional finisher is installed on the device.

After the accessory output bin or optional finisher is installed, the driver must be configured to reflect the changes in the device. If bidirectional communication is enabled in your environment, use the **Update Now** feature to update the drivers.

To configure the drivers manually after installing the accessory output bin or optional finisher:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.

4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
6. Click the plus sign next to **Installable Options** to open the folder.
7. Click **Accessory Output Bin** and select the installed output bin or optional finisher in the drop-down menu.
8. Click **OK** to make the **Output** tab available in the **Printing Properties**.

The **Output** tab contains the following controls:

- Output Options
- Document preview image
- Output Bin Options

Output Options

To use the **Output Options** control, an accessory output bin or optional finisher must be installed on the device.

NOTE: Staple options are available *only* if the optional HP Multifunction Finisher is installed.

Use the **Output Options** drop-down menu to determine whether the print job should be stapled. The available output options depends on the accessory output bin or optional finisher installed on the device. The output bin can contain the following options:

- **None**
- **One Staple Left**
- **One Staple Left Angled**
- **Two Staples Left**
- **Three Staples Left**

Use the **Image Shift Settings...** button to shift the image on the page. This is useful when binding the document or using 3–hole punch. Click **Image Shift Settings...** to open the **Image Shift** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

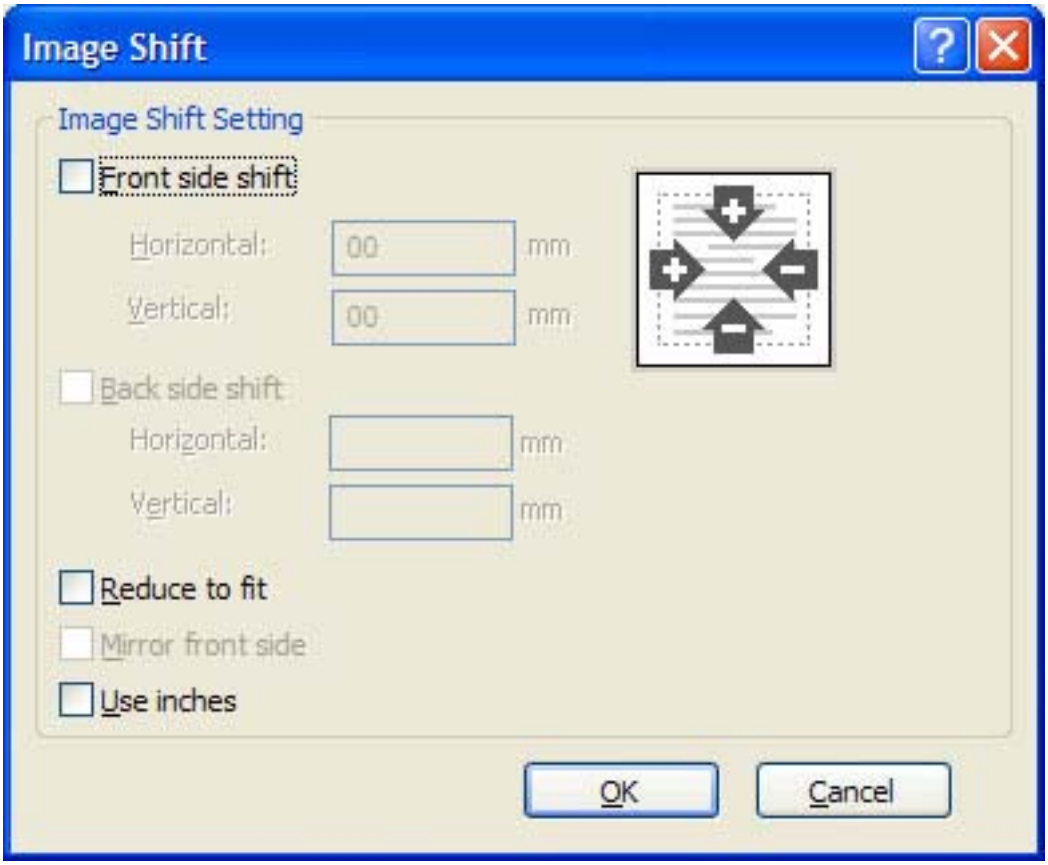


Figure 5-23 **Image Shift** dialog box

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 5-24 Document preview image

Output Bin Options

To use the **Output Bin Options** control, an accessory output bin or optional finisher must be installed on the device.

Use the **Output Bin Options** to determine where the print job should exit the device. The available output bin options depends on the accessory output bin or optional finisher installed on the device. The output bin can contain the following options:

- **Automatically Select**
- **Output Bin 1**
- **Output Bin 2**
- **Output Bin 3**
- **Output Bin 4**
- **Output Bin 5**

Job Storage tab features

To gain access to the **Job Storage** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Job Storage** tab.

Use the job-storage feature to store print jobs in the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology memory for printing at a later time. These job-storage features are described in the following sections.

The **Job Storage** tab appears among the driver tabs only if job-storage feature is enabled, and a hard disk is installed and configured.

To disable the job-storage feature:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
6. Select **Job Storage**.
7. Select **Disabled** in the **Change 'Job Storage' Setting** dialog box that appears.

NOTE: When the job-storage feature is disabled, the **Job Storage** driver tab is not visible.

If the job-storage feature is enabled, the **Job Storage Mode** settings are available on the **Job Storage** tab:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**

- **Personal Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

The following figure shows the **Job Storage** tab.

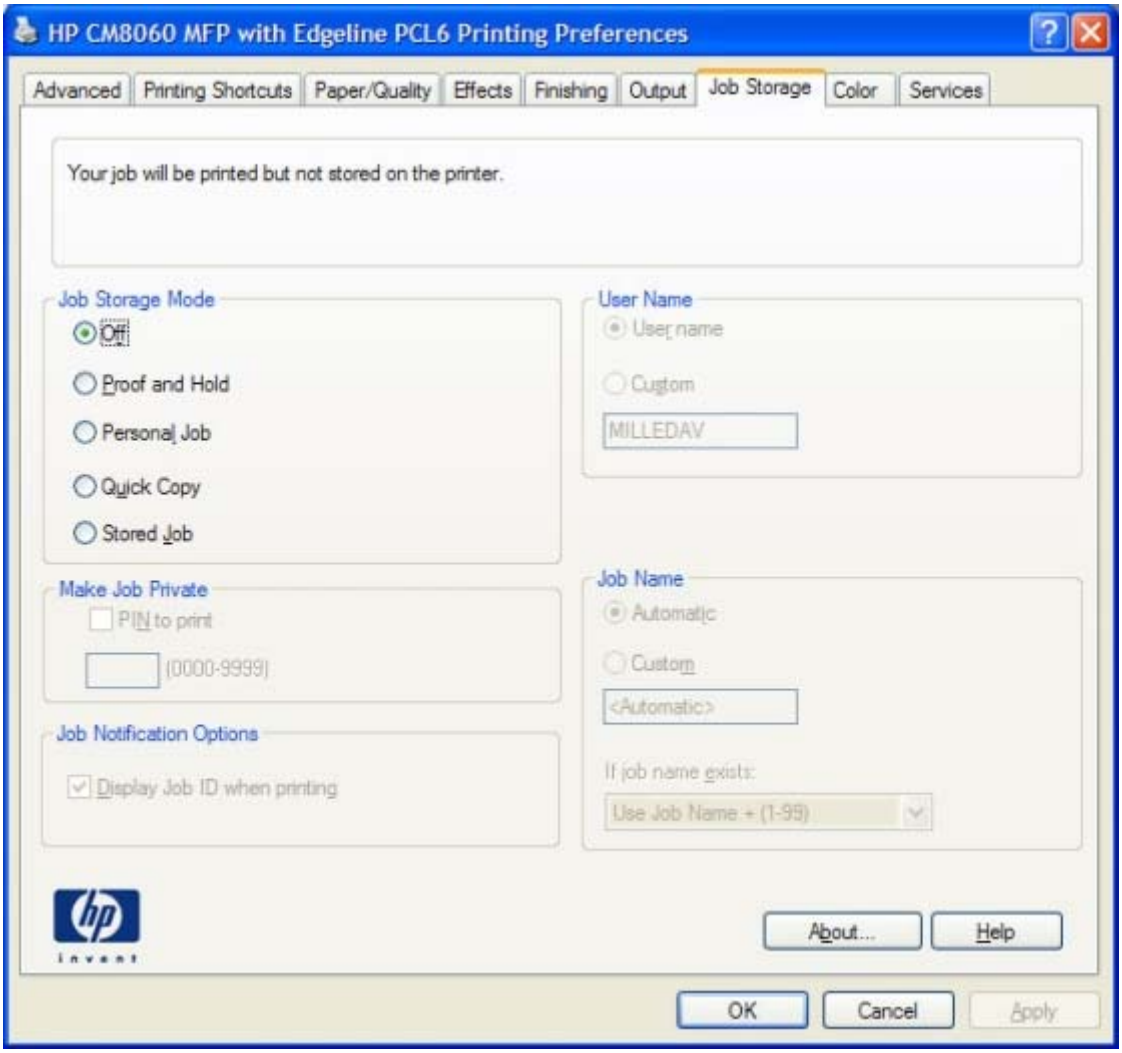


Figure 5-25 **Job Storage** tab

The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls:

- Status group box
- Job Storage Mode
- Make Job Personal
- Job Notification Options
- User Name
- Job Name

- Using job-storage features when printing

Status group box

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections that are made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology to store documents at the device and then control their printing at the device control panel.

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology offers the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- Off
- Proof and Hold
- Personal Job
- Quick Copy
- Stored Job

Off

When selected, this option turns the job-storage feature off (it is disabled), which means that the print job will not be stored in the device.

Proof and Hold

To use the **Proof and Hold** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When selected, this option stores the print job in memory and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, print the remaining copies of the print job at the control panel. Set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the device at the control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is immediately deleted from the device. If more copies are needed, reprint the job from the software program. Sending a second proof-and-hold job that has the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (when the original job has not been released for printing), overwrites the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted when the device is turned off.

The device configuration holds a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the device control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, sending a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the device memory overwrites the existing document.

Personal Job

To use the **Personal Job** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When **Personal Job** is selected, the print job is sent to the device but is not printed until a selection is made on the device control panel. Selecting **Personal Job** activates the **PIN** group box. The print job can be printed only after the correct PIN is typed at the control panel. After the job is printed, the job is immediately deleted from the device. This feature is useful when printing sensitive or confidential documents should not remain in an output bin after printing.

The Personal Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0 though 9). Any non-numeric characters are removed immediately. When more than four characters are typed, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, zeroes pad the left end until the PIN contains exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Personal Job**.

After it is released for printing, the personal job is immediately deleted from the device. If more copies are needed, reprint the job from the software program. Sending a second personal job that has the same user name and job name as an existing personal job (when the original job has not been released for printing) overwrites the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Persoanl jobs are deleted when the device is turned off.

Quick Copy

To use the **Quick Copy** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

After the job prints, use the device control panel to print more copies of the job.

Stored Job

To use the **Stored Job** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When **Stored Job** is selected, the job will be stored in the device as if it is an electronic file cabinet. Nothing will be printed until the job is requested from the device control panel. Use this storage for forms and other common or shared documents. Selecting **Stored Job** activates the **PIN** group box. The print job can be printed only after the correct PIN is typed at the control panel.

Make Job Personal

Require PIN is available when **Stored Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** box, then type a four-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the device, where the user must type the four-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

The **PIN to Print** box is selected, but not available, when **Personal Job** is selected. Type a four-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the device, where the user must type the four-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a **Job Storage Mode** selection causes the **User Name** and **Job Name** options to become available. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default. The **Display Job ID when printing** option opens a pop-up dialog box when the job-storage print job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name that are associated with the stored print job, as well as the device name, port, and location.

User Name

Use the **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the device control panel. The following are the **User Name** settings:

- **Windows User Name.** This option associates the MS Windows user name with the stored print job. The MS Windows user name automatically appears in the text field below the **Windows User Name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. Clicking **Custom** makes the text field below the option available. The **User Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the device control-panel display. Any typed lowercase character automatically shifts to uppercase. Any typed character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. Any character beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the device control panel. The following are the **Job Name** settings:

- **<Automatic>.** This option, which is the default selection, automatically generates the job name that is associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click the **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. In those languages for which **<Automatic>** cannot be translated without the use of invalid characters, the driver uses a string of three dashes. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the device control-panel display.

The **Job Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z (uppercase or lowercase) and 0 through 9 so that the name can appear on the device control-panel display. Any typed lowercase character automatically shifts to uppercase. Any typed character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. Any character beyond 16 is truncated.

When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the TAB key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the device control-panel display.

If Job Name Exists. When storing a print job, create a print-job name or allow the device software to assign one automatically. If a print job that has the same name already exists, the new print job overwrites the existing print job. To eliminate the chances of a new print job overwriting an old print job because both have the same name, select **Use Job Name + (1-999)**. When the print-job name exists, the device software assigns a number between 1 and 999 to the end of the print job name to make it unique. Select **Replace Existing File** to always have the device software overwrite an existing print job that has the same print job name.

Using job-storage features when printing

Clicking the print icon in the software program toolbar prints the job without using job-storage features.

To use job-storage features when printing:

1. Click **File** and then click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.
2. Click **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Job Storage** tab.
4. Select the job-storage options by clicking the appropriate option button, and then complete any required fields.
5. Click **OK**.

Topics:

- Retrieve a job-storage print job
- Delete a job-storage print job

Retrieve a job-storage print job

After sending a print job that uses the job-storage feature, retrieve and print the job from the device control panel.

1. From the Home screen, touch Job Storage.
2. In the Retrieve tab, touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen. A list of stored jobs appears.
3. Touch the appropriate job.

   If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. After the PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.
4. To print the job, touch the Retrieve Stored Job button.

Delete a job-storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the device memory. Do this from the device control panel.

1. From the Home screen, touch Job Storage.
2. In the Retrieve tab, touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen. A list of stored jobs appears.
3. Touch the appropriate job.

   If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. After the PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.
4. Touch Delete.
5. A message appears: **Do you want to delete this stored job?**

Touch Yes. The document is deleted.

Or, do the following:

1. From the Home screen, touch Job Storage.
2. In the Retrieve tab, touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen. A list of stored jobs appears.
3. Touch the appropriate job.
4. Touch Delete.

   If a PIN for the stored job, type the correct PIN. After the PIN is confirmed, the job is deleted.

Color tab features

To gain access to the **Color** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Color** tab.

Use the **Color** tab to print the job in color or black and white. If you select color, you can also select a color theme.

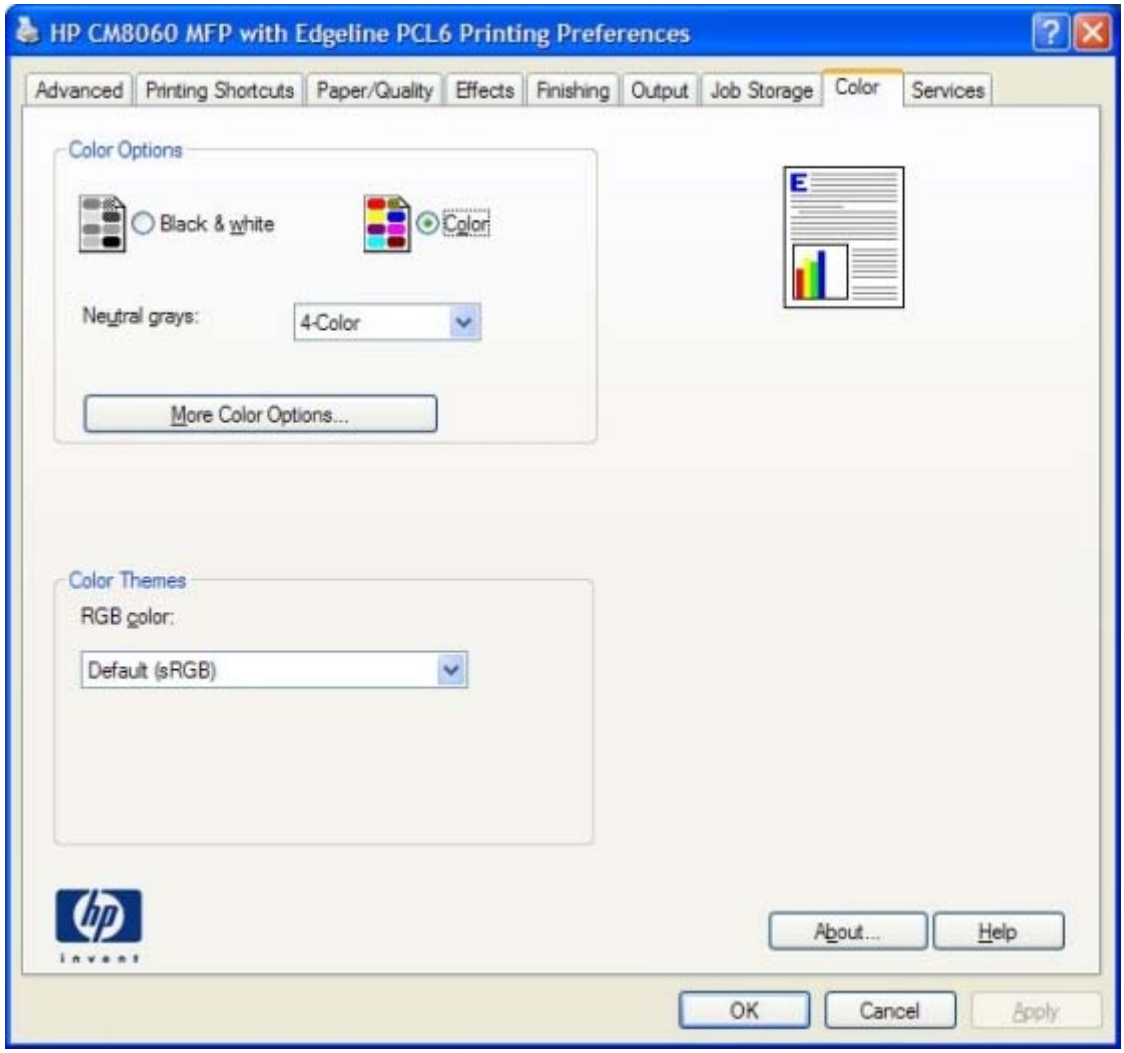


Figure 5-26 **Color** tab

The **Color** tab contains the following control sets:

- Color Options
- Color Themes
- Document preview image

Color Options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- Color printing option
- Neutral grays
- More Color Options

Color printing option

Select whether to print in **Black & white** or **Color**.

Neutral grays

Use the **Neutral grays** setting to specify how grayscale tones will be printed. The **Neutral grays** drop-down menu contains the following settings:

- **4-Color**. Select **4-Color** to use all four CMYK ink colors (black, cyan, magenta, and yellow) to reproduce the grayscale tones.
- **Black Only**. Select **Black Only** to use only black ink to create the grayscale tones.

More Color Options

Click **More Color Options...** to open the **Advanced Color Settings** screen, as shown in the following figure.

NOTE: The **Advanced Color Settings** screen is available *only* when color quality is set to **Professional** on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

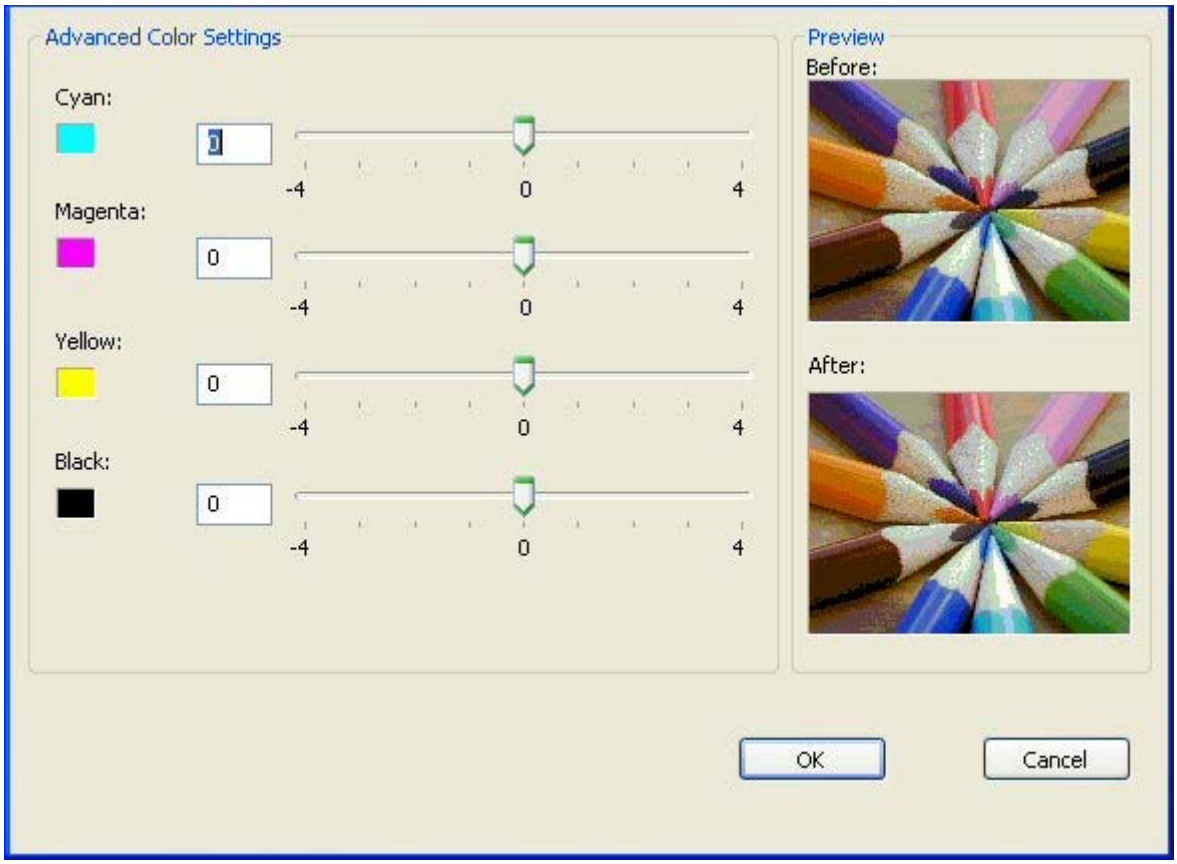


Figure 5-27 **Advanced Color Settings** screen

Use the **Advanced Color Settings** screen to increase or decrease the amount of each of the four basic printing ink colors (black, cyan, magenta, and yellow), which are sometimes labeled as **CMYK** options.

Color Themes

The **Color Themes** group box contains the following settings:

- Default (sRGB)
- Image Optimization (sRGB)
- Adobe RGB (1998)
- Vivid (sRGB)
- Custom Profile

Default (sRGB)

Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the device to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). Colors are matched to optimize the RGB colors on the screen and to provide vivid images and graphics.

Image Optimization (sRGB)

Select **Image optimization (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .JPG files. This setting instructs the device to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB bitmap images. This setting affects only raster data; it has no effect on text or vectorbased graphics. Using glossy paper in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.

Adobe RGB (1998)

Select **AdobeRGB (1998)** for documents that use the Adobe RGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in Adobe RGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe Photoshop® use the Adobe RGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses Adobe RGB, turn off the color management in the software program and allow the device software to manage the color space.

Vivid (sRGB)

Select **Vivid (sRGB)** to reproduce graphics (for example, pie charts and bar graphs) with more saturated colors. This option can be useful when printing business documents that do not contain images.

Custom Profile

Select **Custom Profile** when you want to duplicate the printed output from other devices or for using special effects, such as sepia tones. This setting instructs the device to use a custom input profile to more accurately predict and control color output.

The default **Custom Profile** is an emulation of the color table used on the device. The device holds only one custom profile at a time, so when you download and install another color table, it erases the default color table and installs the new one.

Download custom profiles from the following Web site:

www.hp.com

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 5-28 Document preview image

Services tab features

To gain access to the **Services** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Printing Preferences**.
5. Click the **Services** tab.

The **Services** tab is shown in the following figure.

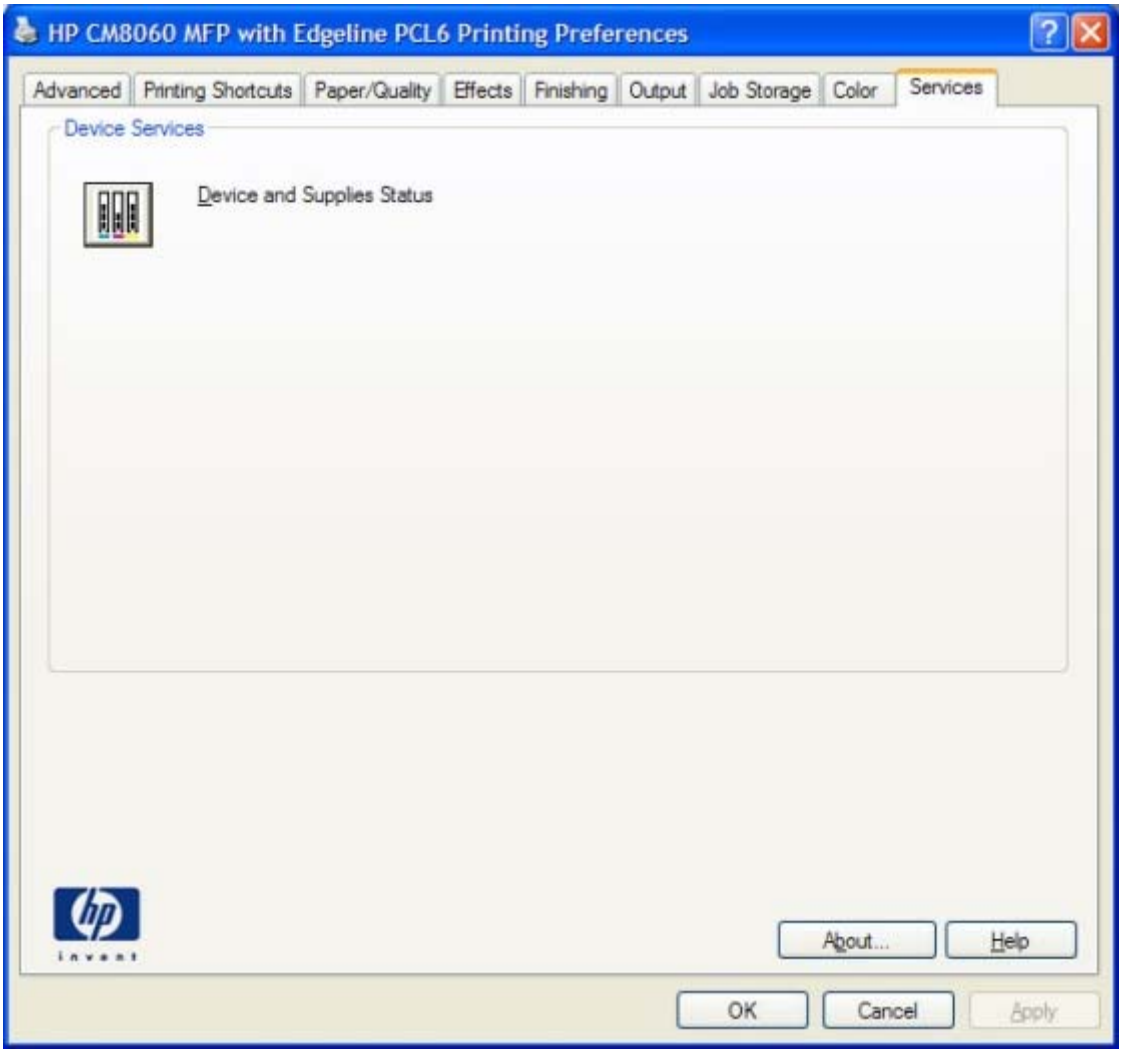


Figure 5-29 **Services** tab

The **Services** tab contains the following link:

- Device services

Device services

Click the **Device and Supplies Status** icon to open the **Device Status** screen of the HP EWS.

Device Settings tab features

The **Device Settings** tab is in the Properties window for the print driver. To gain access to the **Device Settings** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Device Settings** tab.

The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for paper-handling devices and controls for managing the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology.

Available options depend on the driver and the particular feature. The following figure shows the **Device Settings** tab for the HP PCL 6 driver.

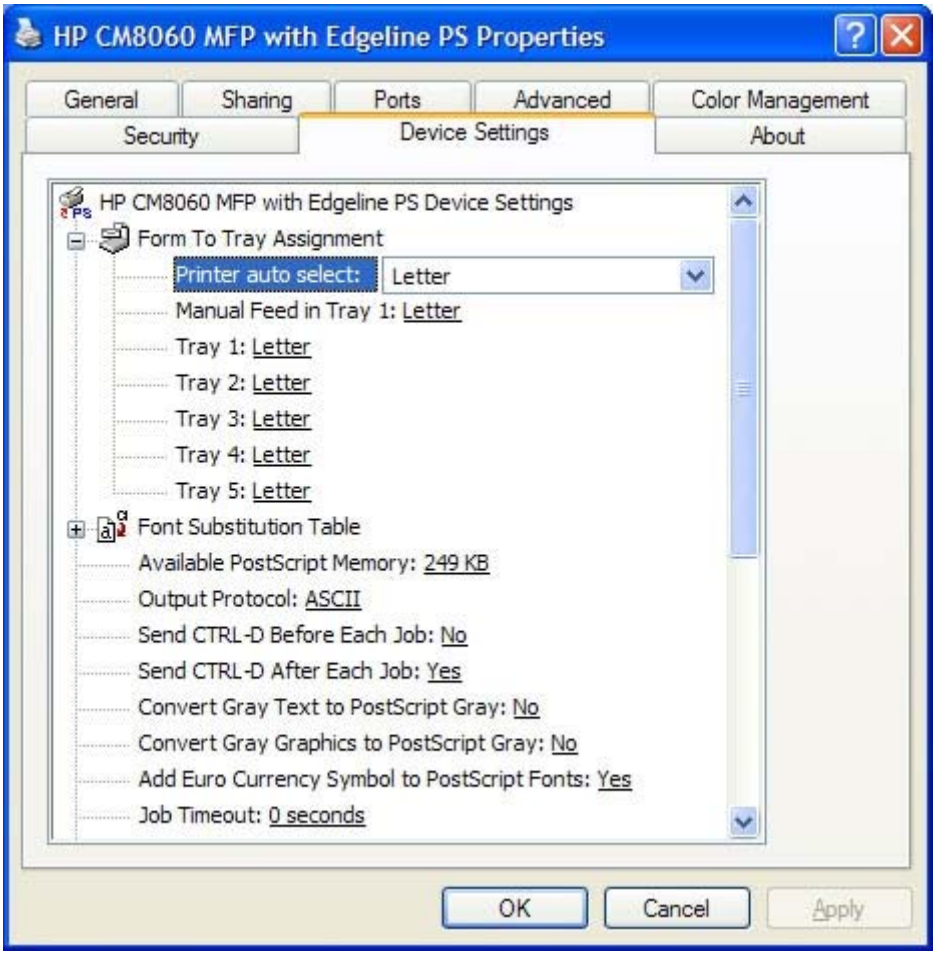


Figure 5-30 HP PCL 6 driver Device Settings tab

The following figure shows the **Device Settings** tab for the PS Emulation driver.

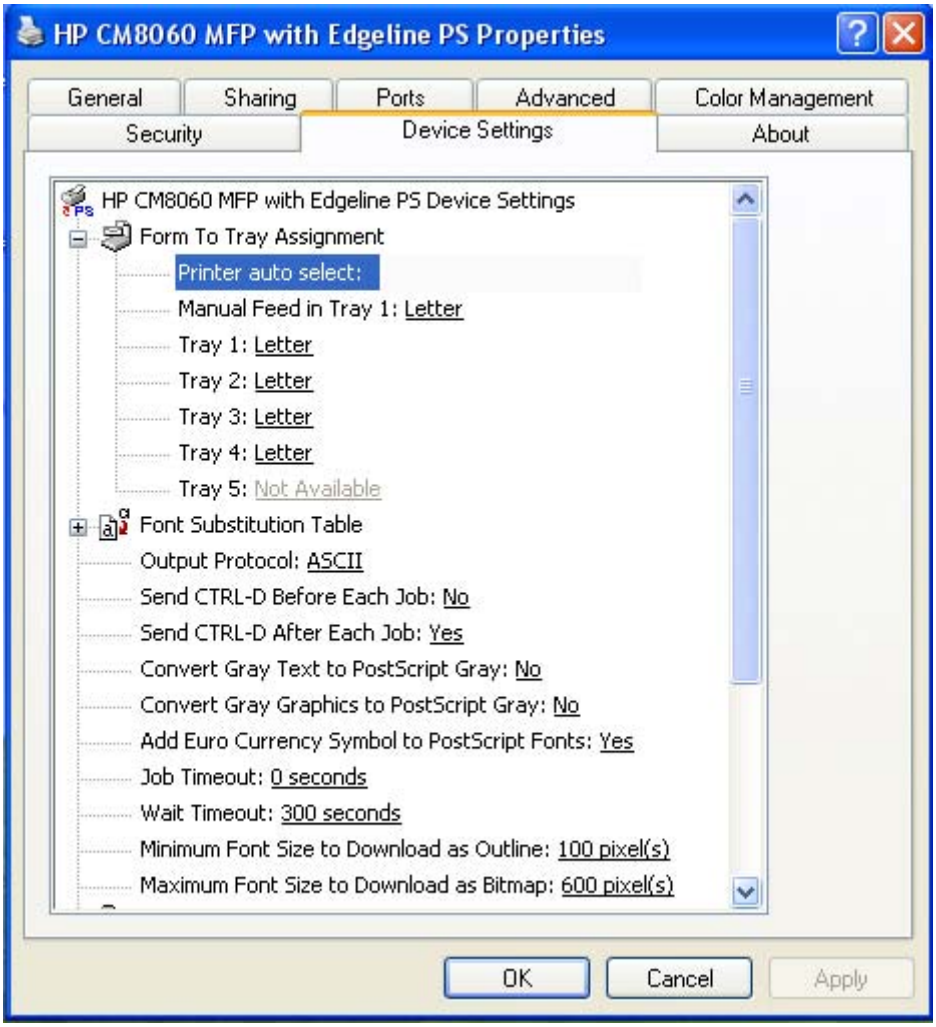


Figure 5-31 PS Emulation driver **Device Settings** tab

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- Form to Tray Assignment
- Font Substitution Table
- External Fonts
- PS Emulation driver Device Settings
- Installable Options

Form to Tray Assignment

A system administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the paper size in each input tray.

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology supports more than one source of paper. Assign a form (which defines the paper size and margins) to each paper source. When a form is matched to a source, select the form to print. The device prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

System administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the paper-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the device with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the paper size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable the settings, or, if necessary, click **Cancel** to reconfigure all the trays and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Use the **Font Substitution Table** settings to install and remove external fonts for the device. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **Font Substitution Table** option to open a list of fonts, as show in the following figure. Use the settings to change the TrueType-to-printer font mappings.

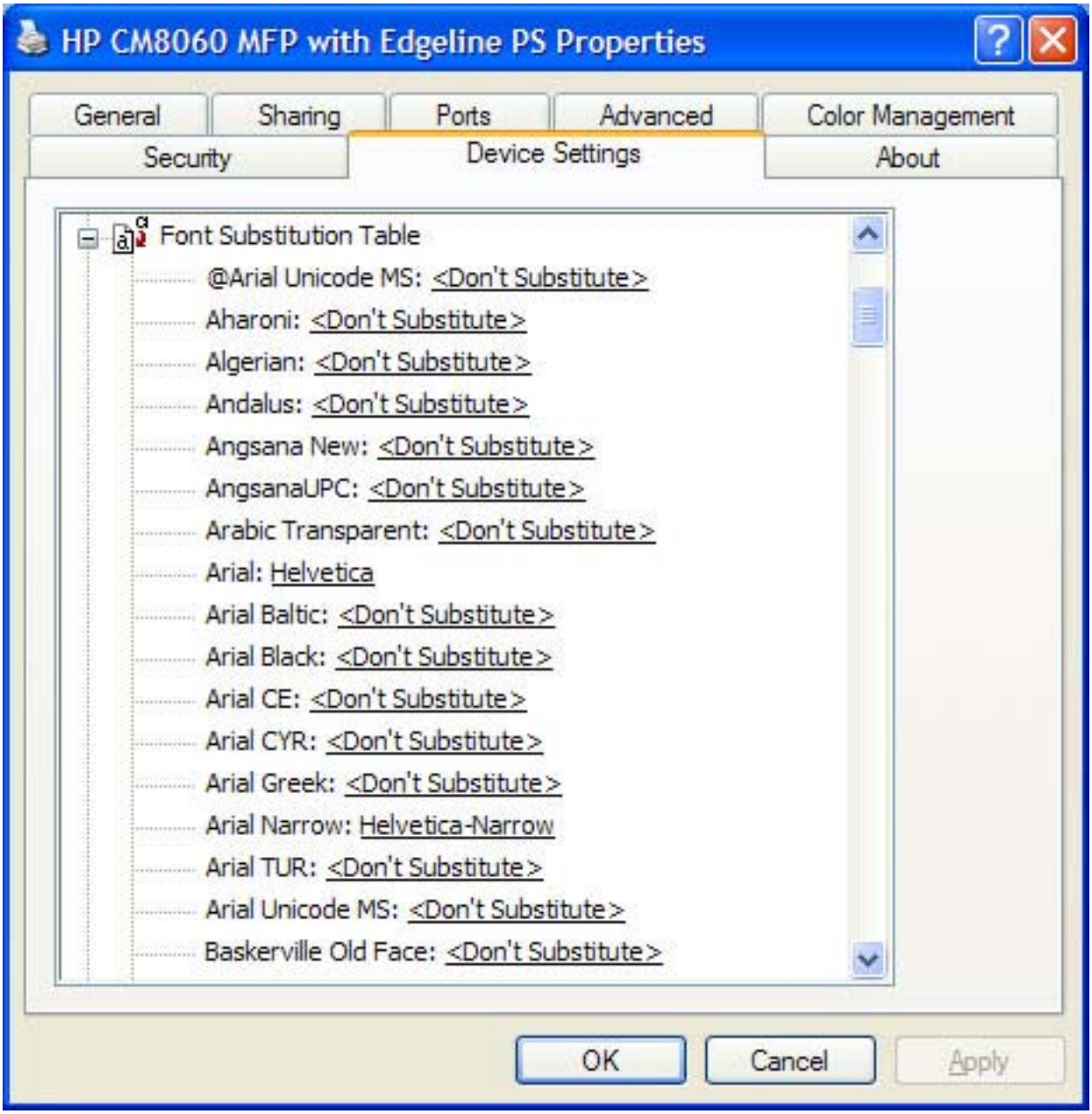


Figure 5-32 Font Substitution Table

External Fonts

NOTE: The External Fonts option is available only in the HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers. It is not available in the PS Emulation driver.

Use the **External Fonts** option to install and remove external fonts for the device. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **External Fonts** option to make the **Properties** button available. Click **Properties** to open the **HP Font Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-33 **HP Font Installer** dialog box

Topics:

- Installing external fonts
- Removing external fonts

Installing external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
6. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
7. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears.
8. Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location** text box, or click **Browse** to locate the file on the computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added** window.

9. Select the fonts to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
10. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Removing external fonts

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
6. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
7. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears. The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Fonts** window.
8. Select the fonts to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
9. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

PS Emulation driver Device Settings

The following controls are available and appear only in the PS Emulation driver **Device Settings** tab:

- Available PostScript Memory
- Output Protocol
- Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job
- Send Ctrl-D After Each Job
- Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray
- Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray
- Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts
- Job Timeout
- Wait Timeout
- Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline
- Maximum Font Size to Download as Bitmap

Available PostScript Memory

This control specifies the amount of available postscript memory and provides a spin box for changing this value. The available postscript memory is a subset of the device total physical memory. It is usually best to set the postscript memory to match the total RAM that appears on the configuration page. To print a configuration page from the device control panel:

1. Touch Administration.
2. Touch Information.
3. Touch Configuration/Status Pages.
4. Touch Configuration Page.
5. Touch Print.

Output Protocol

This control specifies the protocol that the device uses for print jobs. The following options are available:

- **ASCII** (default)
- **TBCP**
- **Binary**

Click **ASCII** to send data in ASCII format (7-bit), which might take longer to print but can be sent through any I/O channel, such as a serial or network port.

Click **TBCP** (Tagged Binary Communications Protocol) to send all data except special control characters in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

Click **Binary** to send all data except special control characters in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job

This control specifies whether the device is reset at the beginning of every postscript document. The default setting is **No**. Pressing Ctrl-D resets the device to its default setting to ensure that previous print jobs do not affect the current print job. Using Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the device is connected through a network. If the document fails to print when sent to a device connected through serial ports, change **No** to **Yes**.

Send Ctrl-D After Each Job

This control specifies whether the device is reset at the end of every postscript document. The default setting is **Yes**. Pressing Ctrl-D resets the device to its default setting to ensure that future print jobs are not affected by the current print job. Using Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the device is connected through a network. If the document fails to print when sent to a network device, change **Yes** to **No**.

Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in text to the gray that the driver provides. The following settings are available:

- **Yes**
- **No** (default)

Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in graphics to the gray provided by the driver. The following settings are available:

- **Yes**
- **No** (default)

Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts

This control specifies whether to add the euro symbol to the device fonts. The following settings are available:

- **Yes** (default)
- **No**

Job Timeout

This control specifies how long the document can take to get from the computer to the device before the device stops trying to print the document. If you specify **0 seconds**, the device continues trying to print indefinitely. The default setting is **0 seconds**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Wait Timeout

This control specifies how long the device waits to get more postscript information from the computer. After the specified time passes, the device stops trying to print the document and prints an error message. When printing a very complicated document, increase this value. If you specify **0 seconds**, the device waits indefinitely. The default setting is **300 seconds**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline

This control specifies the minimum font size (in pixels) for which the driver downloads TrueType fonts as outline (Type 1) fonts. Any font smaller than the minimum setting is downloaded as a bitmap (Type 3) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **100 pixel(s)**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Maximum Font Size to Download as Bitmap

This control specifies the maximum font size (in pixels) for which the driver will download TrueType fonts as bitmap (Type 3) fonts. Any font larger than the maximum setting will be downloaded as an outline (Type 1) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting or override the **Send TrueType as Bitmap** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in

Document Defaults. The default setting is **600 pixel(s)**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Installable Options

Topics:

- Automatic Configuration
- HP 4000-Sheet Input Tray (Tray 5)
- Accessory Output Bin
- Printer Memory
- Printer Hard Disk
- Job Storage
- Mopier Mode
- Mopier mode and collation
- Postscript Passthrough (PS Emulation driver only)
- JPEG Passthrough (PS Emulation driver only)

Automatic Configuration

Use the **Device Settings** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the device. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, set up this tab by selecting the **Update Now** setting in the **Automatic Configuration** setting. The default setting is **Off**. After an automatic configuration, the setting returns to **Off** after the changes are made.

If the computer environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** setting is unavailable, the options on this tab must be manually configured.

If more than one driver is installed for the device (for example, the default HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers), the **Update Now** feature works automatically only on the driver on which it is activated. The other driver will not be updated, and might show the default setting for the specific device model.

HP 4000-Sheet Input Tray (Tray 5)

This control specifies whether the optional high-capacity Tray 5 is installed on the device. The default setting is **Not Installed**.

Accessory Output Bin

This control specifies whether the accessory output bin or an optional finisher is installed on the device. The default setting is **HP Single Output Bin**.

Printer Memory

This option matches the setting to the amount of memory that is installed in the device. The driver generates ranges of memory that can be selected, up to the maximum that the device can accept. The driver can use this information to manage how the print driver uses the device memory.

Printer Hard Disk

When this option is enabled, the **Job Storage** option and the **Mopier Mode** are enabled in the print driver. This option is enabled by default. Use the **Job Storage** option to store print jobs and then print them later from the control panel. The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job.

NOTE: A hard disk is required for the device to perform most tasks. The check box is available only for troubleshooting purposes.

Job Storage

When **Job Storage** is enabled, the device can store print jobs so that you can gain access to those print jobs later at the control panel. This option is enabled by default.

Mopier Mode

This option is enabled by default.

CAUTION: Disabling **Mopier Mode** disrupts functionality for the **Output** and **Finishing** tab features.

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the device once, and then storing it in memory. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology supports the transmit-once mopying feature when the **Mopier Mode:** setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

Use the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, or PS Emulation driver to perform mopying in one of two ways: either through the software or through the device hardware. When the mopier is enabled, mopying takes place through the device hardware by default. One copy of a multiple-page print job is transmitted once through the network to the device, together with a printer job language (PJL) command directing the device to make the specified number of copies.

When the mopier is disabled, mopying is not necessarily disabled. The driver can perform through the software rather than the device hardware (the mopying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopy Mode** setting to **Disabled**). However, sending a multiple-copy print job when the mopier is disabled eliminates the advantage of transmitting the print job once, because the job is sent through the network for each copy.

Mopier mode and collation

CAUTION: Disabling **Mopier Mode** disrupts functionality for the **Output** and **Finishing** tab features.

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. The print driver performs mopying, sending original print jobs to the device. The print driver or the document software program control collation. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

Control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab. Clear the check box, which is available only when the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software program to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collated** check box *and* make sure that the software program collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the software program and the driver. The first three columns show the settings. The last column, "Expected result", shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 5-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Disabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Disabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated

Postscript Passthrough (PS Emulation driver only)

Postscript Passthrough is enabled by default, and must be enabled for most print jobs. Postscript passthrough provides additional capabilities for some software programs when printing to a postscript driver. Options such as **Watermarks**, **n-up** and **Booklet Printing** might not print correctly from some software programs with **Postscript Passthrough** enabled, because such programs send postscript information that the driver cannot control. Other programs might print using these options without problems. Select **Disabled** and print the document again if you encounter problems.

NOTE: In some cases, disabling **Postscript Passthrough** can cause unexpected results within a software program.

JPEG Passthrough (PS Emulation driver only)

The JPEG Passthrough setting contains the following options:

- **Disable.** When this option is selected, images sent as JPEG are printed as bitmaps, resulting in faster printing.
- **Enable.** When this option is selected, images sent as JPEG are printed as JPEG (JPEG passthrough).
- **Auto.** When this option is selected, the device connection type is automatically detected. For network (TCP/IP) connections, JPEG passthrough is disabled. For DOT4 and USB connections, JPEG passthrough is enabled.

About tab features

The **About** tab is in the **Properties** for the print driver. To gain access to the **About** tab:

1. Click **Start**.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   For Windows Vista, Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.

   For Windows XP Home, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Faxes** icon.
3. Right-click the driver name.
4. Click **Properties**.
5. Click the **About** tab.

The **About** tab provides detailed information about the driver. It contains an overall build number (in parentheses after the model name) together with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology model number, driver, date, and versions. The **About** tab is shown in the following figure.

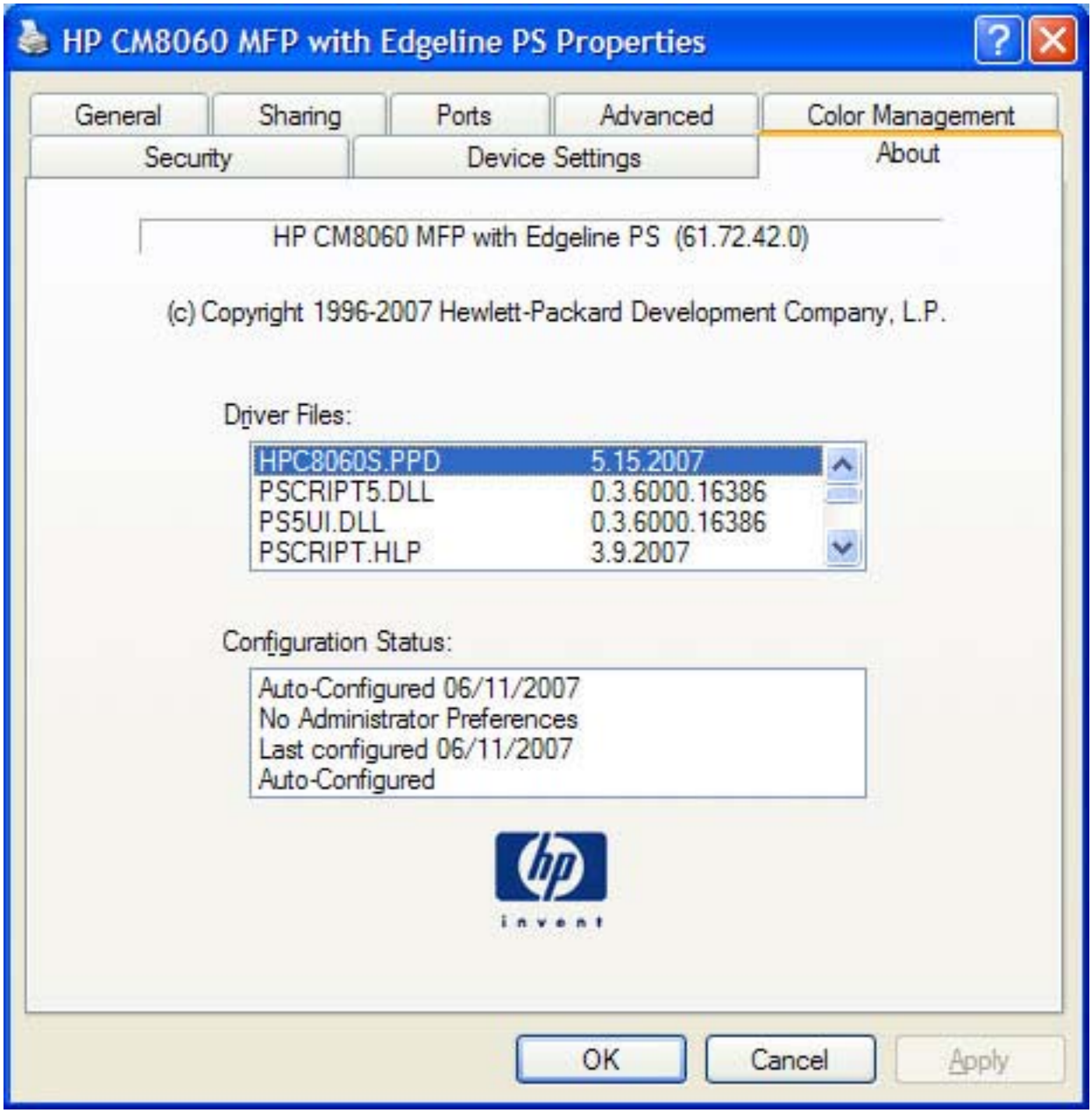


Figure 5-34 **About** tab

The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is default or user-defined.

To determine the latest version, compare the overall build number (in parenthesis after the model name) and the GPD number (in the Driver Files: field). If the overall build number has increased, this is the latest version of the driver.

If the overall build number is the same, check the version number of the GPD file. The driver that has the highest GPD version number is the latest driver.

6 Macintosh

Introduction

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology comes with printing software and installers for Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh operating systems.

Topics:

- Macintosh printing-system software
- Macintosh install and uninstall instructions
- HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

Macintosh printing-system software

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing system for Macintosh is composed of an HP-created postscript printer definition file (PPD) and printer dialog extension (PDEs) files that work together with the Macintosh print system. These files are used by the Macintosh print system to determine default print settings and also allows the user to select between the various print options and settings and are installed by the provided installer. The following are provided on the Macintosh installation CD:

- The HP Installer for Macintosh
- User documentation
- Readme file

The following major components are installed by the installer for Macintosh:

- HP HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology PPDs
- HP HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology PDEs

Topics:

- Hardware requirements
- Operating-system support
- Availability

Hardware requirements

- PowerPC G3, G4, G5 or Intel Core processor
- 256 MB RAM
- 80 MB of available hard-disk space
- CD-ROM drive or Internet connection

Operating-system support

- Mac OS X v10.2.8, v10.3.9, v10.4 and later are supported.
- Mac OS 9 and Mac OS X classic are *not* supported.

Availability

This STR provides information about the availability of the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software. Printing-system software on a CD is available with the device, from the Web, and from HP fulfillment centers.

Topics:

- Printing-system software on the Web
- Macintosh installation CD

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the Macintosh printing-system installation CD is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases.

NOTE: This document describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system installation CD. This document does *not* describe any drivers that might be released by support personnel.

Topics:

- Printing-system software
- Software component availability

Printing-system software

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software is available for download at one of the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/support/CM8060edgeline

www.hp.com/support/CM8050edgeline

Software component availability

The following software components are installed:

- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline TechnologyPPD
- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology PDE

Macintosh installation CD

The Macintosh installation CD for theHP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology contains the files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

Topics:

- Macintosh installation CD
- Macintosh installation CD languages

Macintosh installation CD

The installer for Macintosh is at the root of the Macintosh installation CD. The user manuals (in PDF format) are grouped by language and are in the Documentation directory on the Macintosh installation CD.

Macintosh installation CD languages

The Macintosh installation CD for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology contains the files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Macintosh installation CD contains printing-system software in various languages, as follows:

- **Macintosh installation CD (part number C5956–61105):**
  - DA = Danish (Dansk)
  - DE = German (Deutsch)
  - EN = English
  - ES = Spanish (Español)
  - FI = Finnish (Suomi)
  - FR = French (Français)
  - IT = Italian (Italiano)
  - JA = Japanese
  - KO = Korean
  - NL = Dutch (Nederland)
  - NO = Norwegian (Norsk)
  - PT = Brazilian Portuguese (Português)
  - SV = Swedish (Svenska)
  - ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
  - ZHTW = Traditional Chinese

User documentation is also available in all languages that MS Windows supports. For more information, see HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology documentation on page 17 in this STR.

Macintosh install and uninstall instructions

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology comes with software and installers for MS Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. This STR provides procedures for installing and removing the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems.

Topics:

- Macintosh component descriptions
- Install the Macintosh printing system
- Uninstall the Macintosh printing system

Macintosh component descriptions

The device includes the following software for Macintosh computers:

- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology PPDs
- HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology PDEs

Topics:

- HP PPDs
- PDEs
- HP Embedded Web Server
- Readme file

HP PPDs

In Mac OS X V10.2.8 and later, the PPDs are installed in **Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources:<lang>.lproj**, where **<lang>** is the appropriate localized folder.

The PPDs, in combination with the driver, provide access to the device configuration settings and installable options. These settings are usually configured during the installation process by using Apple Mac OS X tools such as Print Center, Printer Setup Utility, and Print & Fax. For more information, see Table 6-1 Adding a device in Macintosh operating systems on page 255.

PDEs

Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) are code plug-ins (for Mac OS X V10.2.8 and later only) that provide access to device features, such as number of copies, duplexing, and quality settings.

HP Embedded Web Server

Mac OS X supports the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS). Use the HP EWS to perform the following tasks:

- View the device status and change device settings.
- View and change network settings for the device.

- Print information pages for the device.
- View the device event log.

The HP EWS is accessed by using a Web browser such as Safari.

Readme file

This text file contains information about basic device installation and OS support.

Install the Macintosh printing system

On a Macintosh computer, the installation procedures are basically the same for a system administrator, a network client, and a single user. Install the software on any computer that has access rights to the device. The computer user must have administrative rights on the computer in order to install the software.

Topics:

- General installation for Macintosh operating systems
- Detailed Mac OS X installation
- Printer setup

General installation for Macintosh operating systems

1. Connect the network cable to the device network port.
2. Insert the Macintosh printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

   NOTE: If the CD screen does not open automatically, double-click the **HP CM8060/ CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology** CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the CD-ROM window.

3. Double-click the **HP CM8050 CM8060 MFP v6.11.0.5xx** icon.

   NOTE: The **Continue** button appears only after you type the "admin" password in the **Authenticate** dialog.

4. The main **Installer** dialog appears. Click **Install** and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the software installation.

   NOTE: When you are installing the printing-system software, be patient. The installer must perform an initial search of the computer for up to 1 minute. During this time the installer might appear to be stalled.

5. When software installation is complete, click **Quit**.
6. Continue with the steps for setting up a device.

The software program that you use to finish setting up the device varies by operating system. The following table shows the print setup tools that are available.

Table 6-1 Adding a device in Macintosh operating systems

Operating System	Print Center	Printer Setup Utility	Print & Fax
Mac OS X V10.2.8	x		
Mac OS X V10.3.9		x	x
Mac OS X V10.4 and later		x	x

Detailed Mac OS X installation

Topics:

- Main Install dialog sequence

Main Install dialog sequence

This section provides information about the Macintosh installation dialog-box sequence for the Easy Install (the typical installation option).

Insert the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology Macintosh printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

If the CD screen does not open automatically when the CD is put into the CD-ROM drive, double-click the **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology** CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the installer folder.

Figure 6-1 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology CD-ROM icon

The **HP CM8060/CM8050 MFP** dialog opens.

Figure 6-2 HP CM8060/CM8050 MFP screen

In the **HP CM8060/CM8050 MFP** screen, double-click the **HP CM8050 CM8060 MFP v6.11.0.5xx** icon. This begins the installation process.

The **Authenticate** dialog appears.

In the**HP CM8060/CM8050 MFP** screen, double-click the **Documentation** icon to view user documentation.

Figure 6-3 **Authenticate** dialog

Type the correct administrator name and password and click **OK** to continue. The installer startup screen appears.

Click **Cancel** to exit the installation.

Figure 6-4 HP Macintosh installer introduction dialog

Click **Continue**. The **Read Me** dialog appears, as shown in the following figure.

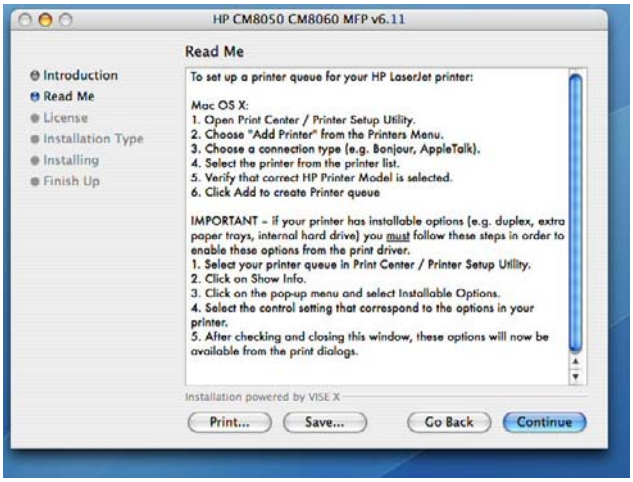


Figure 6-5 HP Installer **Read Me** dialog

Click **Print...** to open the **Page Setup** dialog for the default device and print a copy of the readme.

Click **Save...** to open the system **Save** dialog and save the readme to disk.

Click **Go Back** to return to the previous screen.

Click **Continue** to continue the installation. The **License** dialog appears.

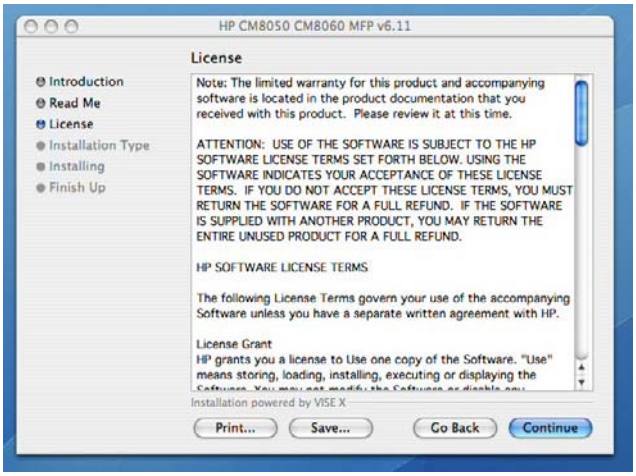


Figure 6-6 **License** dialog

Click **Print...** to open the **Page Setup** dialog for the default device and print a copy of the license agreement.

Click **Save...** to open the system **Save** dialog and save the license agreement to disk.

Read the software-license agreement and then click **Continue** to continue the installation. A dialog appears, asking you to accept the license agreement, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 6-7 **Agree** dialog

Click **Disagree** to decline the agreement, end the installation process, and close the installer.

Click **Agree** to accept the agreement. The **Easy Install** dialog appears, as shown in the following figure.

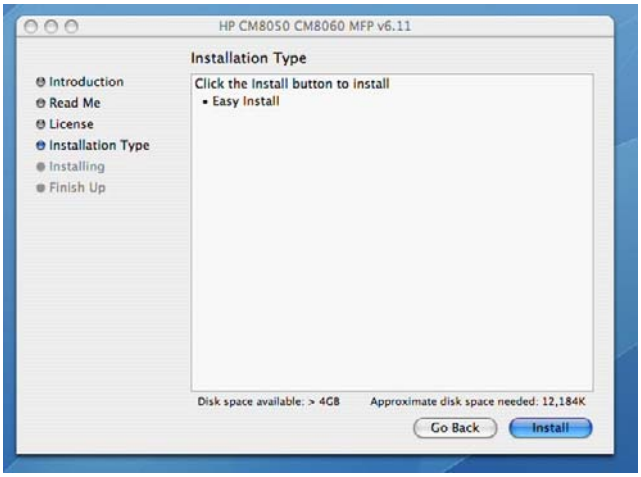


Figure 6-8 **Easy Install** dialog

The default option is **Easy Install**.

Click **Go Back** to return to the previous screen.

Click **Install** to start the installation on the selected disk. The **Installing** screen appears, as shown in the following figure.

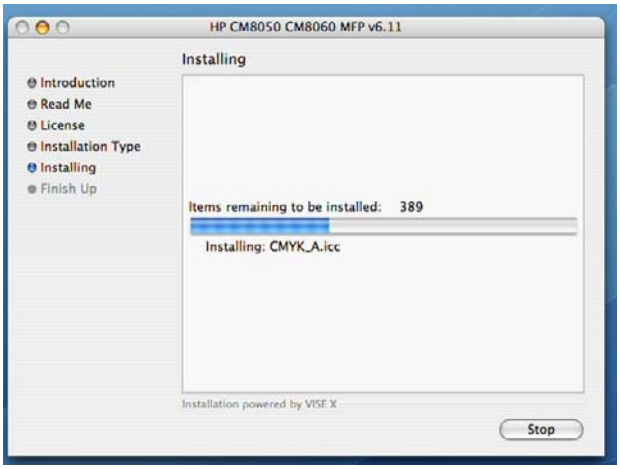


Figure 6-9 **Installing** dialog

The **Installing** dialog shows installation progress. No action is required unless you want to stop the installation.

Click **Stop** to interrupt the install file copy process.

The **Finish Up** dialog appears, stating that the installation was successful, as shown in the following figure.

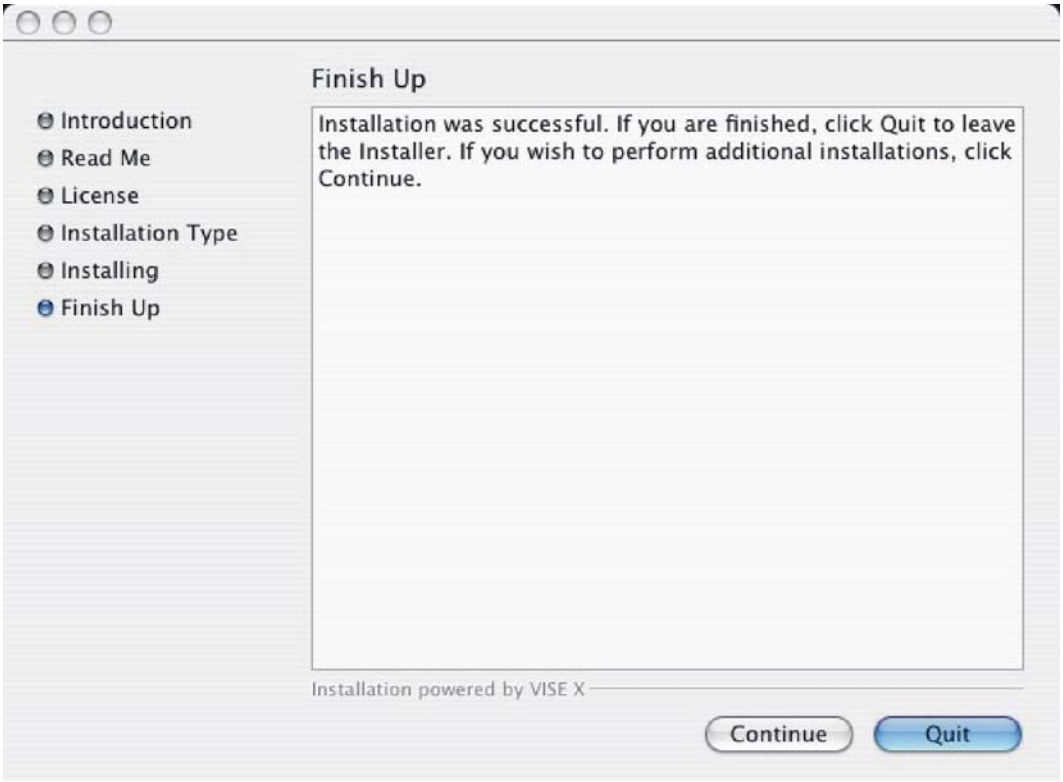


Figure 6-10 **Finish Up** dialog

Click **Quit** to exit the installer.

Click **Continue** to return to the HP Installer.

Printer setup

After installing the printing-system software in Macintosh operating systems, the device must be set up. Follow these instructions to set up a printer queue for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology.

Topics:

- Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.4 and later
- Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.3.9
- Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.2.8
- Troubleshooting the printer setup

Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.4 and later

Carry out these steps *after* the software installation is complete.

1. Verify that the network cable is connected to the device and the device is on.

2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**. The **Printer List** appears. It looks similar to the one shown in the following figure.

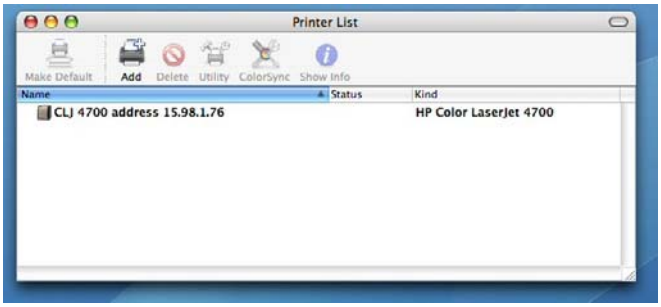


Figure 6-11 **Printer list** screen

You can also configure the device using the **Print & Fax** pane of **System Preferences** (from the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences...**, then choose **Print & Fax**).

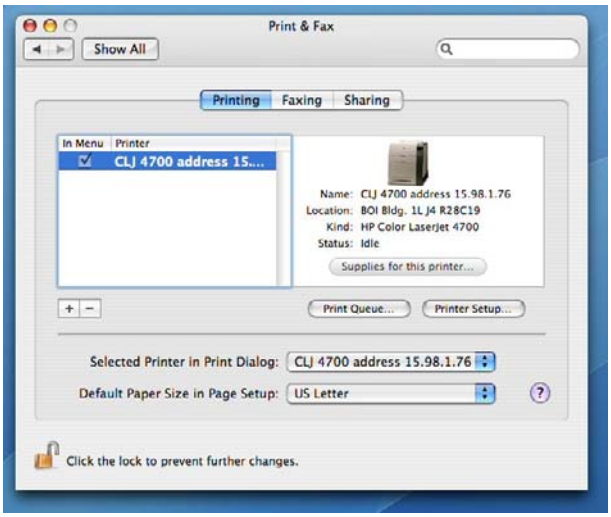


Figure 6-12 **Print & Fax** dialog

3. Click **Add** in the **Printer List** (or the **+** button in the Print & Fax utility) to open the **Printer Browser** screen.

4. You can use either Bonjour or IP Printing for the network connection.

NOTE: Bonjour is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the device is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the device on a different network.

If you are using Bonjour, carry out the following steps:

a. Click the **Default Browser** tab.

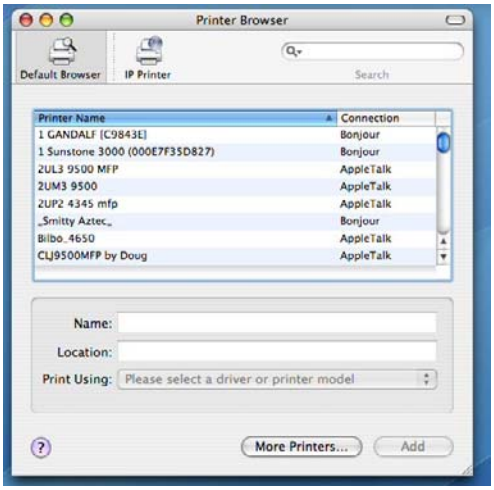


Figure 6-13 **Default Browser** tab

b. Select the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology from the list. The software verifies that the device is connected to the network and the **Print Using** field is automatically populated with the correct PPD for the device.

NOTE: If you are on a network that has more than one HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology, print a configuration page and match the Bonjour Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the device you are installing. (See Print the configuration page on page 275.)

NOTE: If the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology does not appear in the list, verify that the device is on and connected to the network, then try turning the device off and then on again. If the **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology** PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** pull-down list, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see Troubleshooting the printer setup on page 271.

If you want to use the IP Printing method, carry out the following steps:

a. Click the **IP Printer** tab.

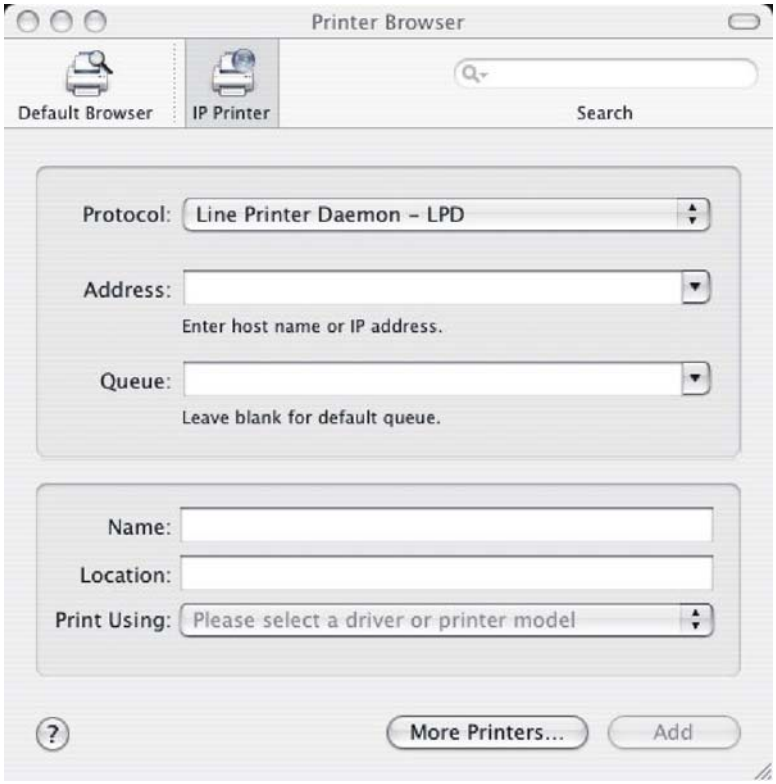


Figure 6-14 **Printer Browser** – IP Printer tab

b. Choose **HP Jet Direct – Socket** from the **Protocol** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP device.

c. On the device control panel, print the configuration pages.

   To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

   i. Touch Administration.

   ii. Touch Information.

   iii. Touch Configuration Page.

   iv. Touch Print.

   The device prints the configuration page.

d. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Address** field on the add printer screen.

e. The **Name**, **Location**, and **Print Using** information will automatically be filled in. If the **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology** PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** field, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

5. Click **Add**. The **Installable Options** screen appears.

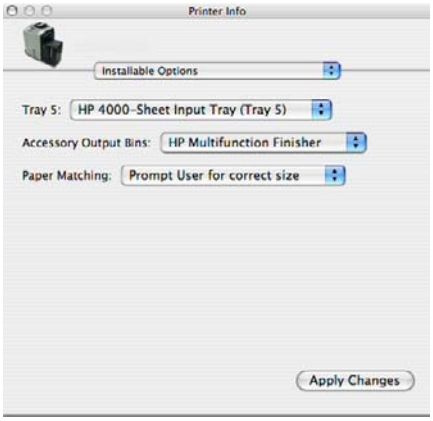


Figure 6-15 **Installable Options** screen

6. If the device has Tray 5, change the setting from **Not Installed** to **Installed**.
7. Select the appropriate **Accessory Output Bins** option.
8. Select the appropriate **Paper Matching** option.
9. After selecting the installable options, click **Continue**. The device name appears in the **Printer List** and the setup is complete.

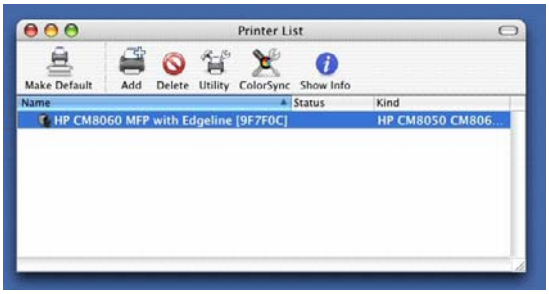


Figure 6-16 **Printer List** screen

Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.3.9

1. Verify that the network cable is connected to the device and the device is on.

2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**. The **Printer List** appears. It looks similar to the one shown in the following figure.

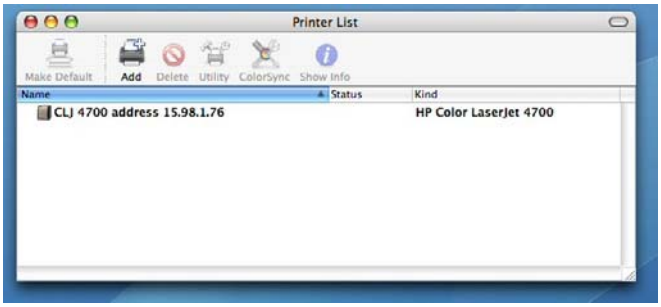


Figure 6-17 **Printer List** screen

You can also configure the device using the **Print & Fax** pane of **System Preferences** (from the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences...**, then choose **Print & Fax**).

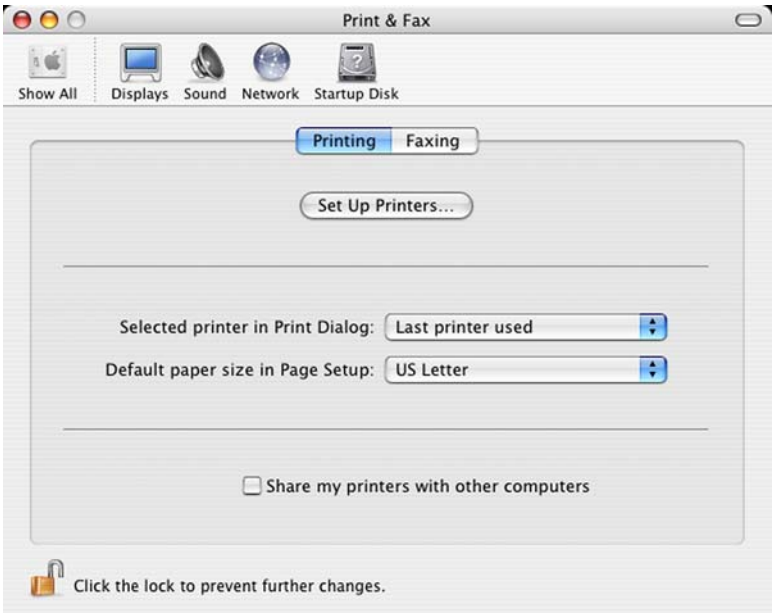


Figure 6-18 **Print & Fax** screen

3. Click **Add** (or the **Set Up Printers...** button in the Print & Fax screen, and then **Add**) to open the add printer screen.

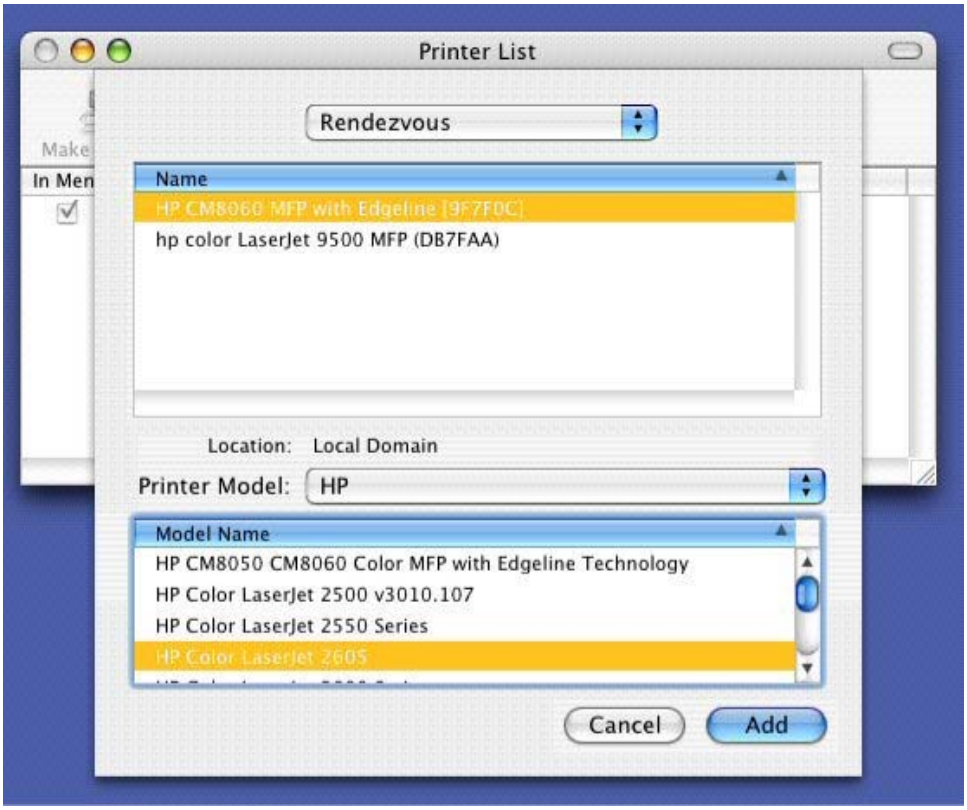


Figure 6-19 Add printer screen

4. Select the network connection protocol in the top pull-down menu. The two supported protocols are **Rendezvous** and **IP Printing**.

NOTE: Rendezvous is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the device is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the device on a different network.

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

Select the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology in the **Name** list. The **Printer Model** and **Model Name** are selected automatically.

NOTE: If you are on a network that has more than one HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology, print a configuration page and match the Rendezvous Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the device you are installing. (See Print the configuration page on page 275.)

NOTE: If the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology does not appear in the list, verify that the device is powered on and connected to the network. If it still does not appear, try turning the device off and then on again. Finally, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see Troubleshooting the printer setup on page 271.

NOTE: If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a .PPD file, click the **Printer Model** pull-down menu, select **HP**, and then select the .PPD file that you want to add. If the **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology** PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

If you are using IP Printing, carry out the following steps:

a. Choose **Socket/HP Jet Direct** from the **Printer Type** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP devices.

b. On the device control panel, print the configuration pages.

   To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

   i. Touch Administration.

   ii. Touch Information.

   iii. Touch Configuration Page.

   iv. Touch Print.

   The device prints the configuration page.

c. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Printer Address** field on the add printer screen.

d. Select the **Printer Model** and select HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology in the **Model Name** list. If the **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology** PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

5. Click **Add**. The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology appears in the **Printer List**.

6. To configure installable options, click **Show Info?** on the device list and choose **Installable Options** in the pull-down menu.

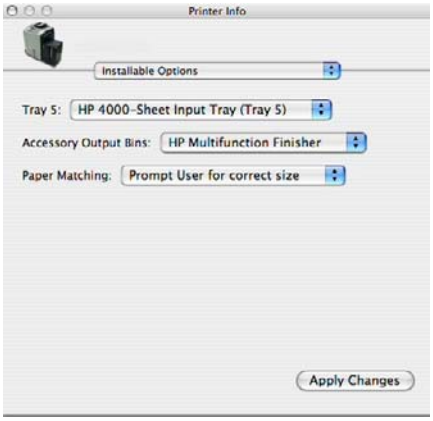


Figure 6-20 **Installable Options** screen

7. If the device has Tray 5, change the setting from **Not Installed** to **Installed**.
8. Select the appropriate **Accessory Output Bins** option.
9. Select the appropriate **Paper Matching** option.
10. Click **Apply Changes**, and then close the **Printer List** dialog.

Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.2.8

1. Verify that the network cable is connected to the device and the device is on.
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Print Center**. The **Printer List** screen appears. It looks similar to the one shown in the following figure.

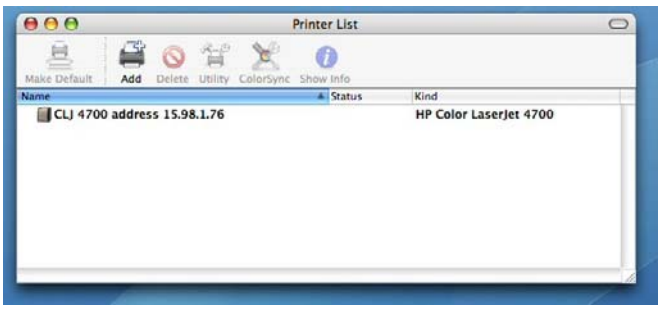


Figure 6-21 **Printer List** screen

3. Click **Add** to open the add device screen.

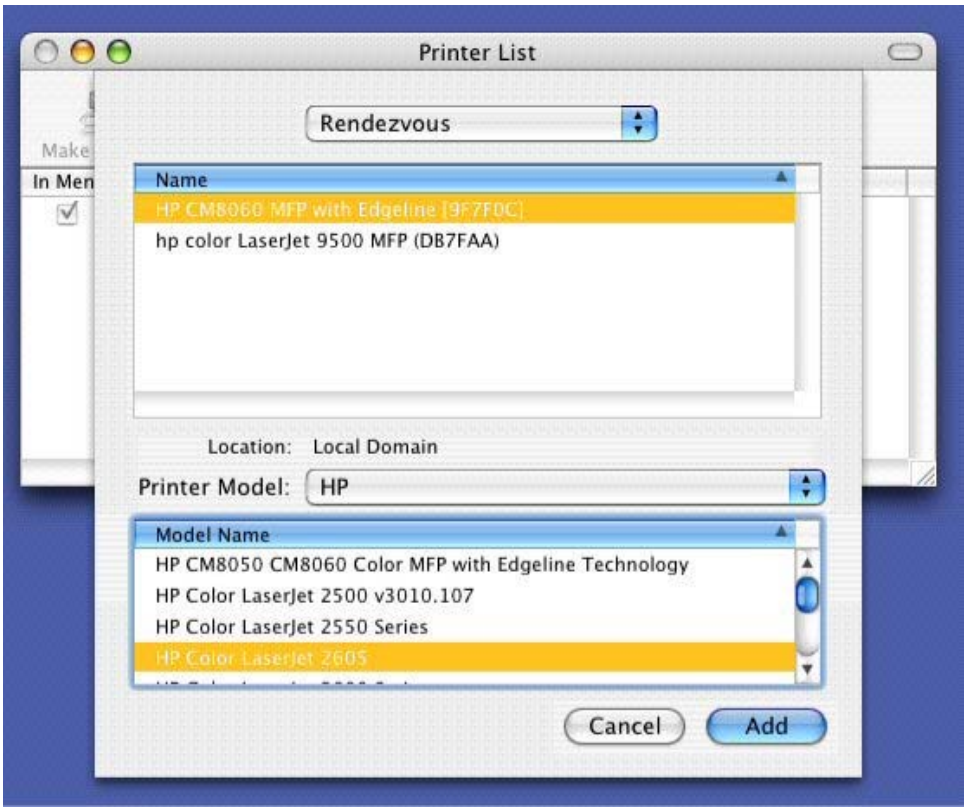


Figure 6-22 Add printer screen

4. Choose the network connection protocol in the top drop-down menu. The two supported protocols are **Rendezvous** and **IP Printing**.

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

NOTE: Rendezvous is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the device is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the device on a different network.

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

Select the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology in the **Name** list. The **Printer Model** and **Model Name** are selected automatically.

NOTE: If you are on a network that has more than one HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology, print a configuration page and match the Rendezvous Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the device you are installing. (See Print the configuration page on page 275.)

NOTE: If the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology does not appear in the list, verify that the device is powered on and connected to the network. If it still does not appear, try turning the device off and then on again. Finally, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see Troubleshooting the printer setup on page 271.

NOTE: If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a PPD file, click the **Printer Model** drop-down menu, choose **HP**, and then choose the PPD file that you want to add. If the **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology** PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

If you are using IP Printing, carry out the following steps:

a. On the device control panel, print the configuration pages.

To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

i. Touch Administration.

ii. Touch Information.

iii. Touch Configuration Page.

iv. Touch Print.

The device prints the configuration page.

b. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Printer's Address** field.

c. Choose **Printer Model** and then choose the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology in the **Model Name** list.

5. Click **Add**. The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology appears in the **Printer List**.

6. Select the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology, go to the **Printers** menu, and choose **Show Info**.

7. Choose **Installable Options** from the top drop-down menu.

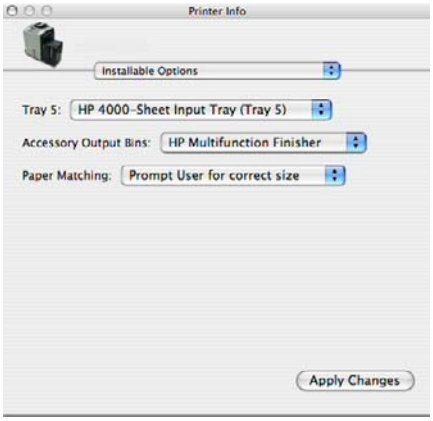


Figure 6-23 **Installable Options** screen

8. If the device has Tray 5, change the setting from **Not Installed** to **Installed**.

9. Select the appropriate **Accessory Output Bins** option.

10. Select the appropriate **Paper Matching** option.
11. Click **Apply Changes**, and then close the **Printer List** dialog.

Troubleshooting the printer setup

If the printer does not appear in the printer list after an installation:

Carry out each one of these solutions in the order given, and restart the setup process after each one to see if the issue has been resolved.

- Verify that the network cable is connected between the device and the computer and that the device is powered on.
- Try disconnecting and reconnecting the cable.
- Turn the device off and then back on again.
- Turn the computer off and then back on again.

Uninstall the Macintosh printing system

Follow these instructions to uninstall the Macintosh Printing System.

1. Browse to the folder containing the PPDs. In Mac OS X V10.2.8 or later, the PPDs are installed in **System/Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources:<lang>.lproj**, where **<lang>** is the appropriate language.
2. Choose the **HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology.gz** file and drag it to **Trash**.
3. Empty the **Trash**.
4. Delete the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology device from the printer list.

HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

The HP EWS is embedded in the device firmware. It is a series of Web pages that provide access to device status and configuration options.

Topics:

- Access to the HP EWS

Access to the HP EWS

Use the following method to gain access to the HP EWS:

Using a Web browser:

NOTE: This method can only be used if the device is using a network connection.

1. On the device control panel, print the configuration pages.

To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

a. Touch Administration.

b. Touch Information.

c. Touch Configuration Page.

d. Touch Print.

The device prints the configuration page.

2. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into a Web browser such as Safari. The **Device Status** screen appears.

For detailed information about the HP EWS, see HP Embedded Web Server on page 47 in this STR, and see the *HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology System Administrator Guide*, which is available on the System Administrator's CD.

7 Engineering details

Introduction

Topics:

- Remote firmware updates
- Print print-ready documents
- Paper attributes
- Uninstall

Remote firmware updates

The HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology features remote firmware update (RFU) capability. The method for downloading remote firmware updates from the Web site is similar to that used to download the latest printing-system software and print drivers.

The process for remotely upgrading firmware involves three steps:

1. Print a configuration page to see what version of firmware is currently installed on the device. (Also, print a menu map to see what user settings have been configured.)
2. Go to the HP Web site and download the latest firmware to the computer.
3. Download the new firmware to the device. Print a new menu map to compare user settings between the previous firmware and upgraded firmware.

Table 7-1 Version Checking

Primary/Location	Version Checking
JetDirect inside (JDI)	Does version checking. Upgrades if the firmware version is newer; this means it will not rewrite or upgrade if the firmware is the same or older. This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version. To update corrupt firmware with the same RFU version, use the nodebug bundle of firmware, then update using the correct firmware bundle.
Fax Modem	Does version checking. The firmware updates if the RFU is different from what is currently on the component. The firmware can be updated if the RFU is older or newer than the current firmware version. Will not upgrade if firmware version is the same. The same version does not rewrite because of speed. This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version.
Formatter	No version checking. The formatter firmware updates if there is a formatter bundle on the RFU, and is not dependant on what version of firmware the formatter is currently using.
Copy control board (CPB)	No version checking.
Scan control board (SCB)	Does version checking. Upgrades if the firmware version is newer; this means it will not rewrite or upgrade if the firmware is the same or older.

Table 7-1 Version Checking (continued)

	This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version. To update corrupt firmware with the same RFU version, use the nodebug bundle of firmware, then update using the correct firmware bundle.
Jetlink protocol (interface used to hook up output devices; external to the device)	No version checking.
DC controller (internal to the device) • duplexer • input external trays • output external bins	Does version checking. The firmware updates if the RFU is different from what is currently on the component. The firmware can be updated if the RFU is older or newer than the current firmware version. Will not upgrade if firmware version is the same. This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version.

Topics:

- Print the configuration page
- Download the new firmware from the HP Web site
- Download the new firmware to the device
- Printer messages during the firmware update
- Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection
- Remote firmware update through an optional parallel port
- Remote firmware update through an MS Windows network
- Remote firmware update for UNIX systems
- Remote firmware update by using the LPR command
- Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin

Print the configuration page

To determine the current level of firmware, view the configuration page.

To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

1. Touch Administration.
2. Touch Information.

3. Touch Configuration Page.
4. Touch Print.

Print a menu map

Print a menu map before updating the firmware to see what user settings have been configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed after the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print a menu map from the device control panel:

1. Touch Administration.
2. Touch Information.
3. Touch Configuration/Status Pages.
4. Touch Administration Menu Map.
5. Touch Print.

Download the new firmware from the HP Web site

The remote firmware update (.RFU) file and an associated readme file are packaged together as a self-extracting .EXE file. For detailed instructions about how to download the .EXE file, go to one of the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/go/CM8060edgeline_sw

www.hp.com/go/CM8050edgeline_sw

The .EXE file consists of a readme file and the .RFU file.

For UNIX systems, the remote firmware update file is a .TAR file.

Download the new firmware to the device

For support information about downloading new firmware from the Web, go to one of the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/go/CM8060edgeline_sw

www.hp.com/go/CM8050edgeline_sw

The device can receive an RFU update when in the **READY** state. The device waits for all of the I/O channels to become idle before performing the update.

NOTE: If the firmware update involves a change in the format of nonvolatile random-access memory (NVRAM), any menu settings that are changed from the default settings will return to default settings. The settings must be changed again if you want them to be different from the defaults. Examples of settings that are affected in this way are tray types, default symbol sets, and Web-access alerts.

The elapsed time for an update depends on the I/O transfer time, as well as the time that it takes for the device to reinitialize. The I/O transfer time depends on a number of things, including the speed of the host computer that is sending the update and the I/O method (network). The reinitialization time

depends on the specific hardware configuration of the device, such as the number of EIO devices installed, the presence of external paper-handling devices, and the amount of memory that is installed.

Finally, any print jobs that are ahead of the RFU job in the queue are printed before the update is processed.

Use one of the methods described in this manual to update the device firmware.

Printer messages during the firmware update

The following table lists the causes and results of possible interruptions to the firmware update.

Table 7-2 Troubleshooting a firmware update

Cause	Result
The job was cancelled from the control panel.	No update has occurred.
A break in the I/O stream occurred during send (for example, the network cable was removed).	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the **RECEIVING UPGRADE** process.	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the **PERFORMING UPGRADE** process.	No update has occurred. Resend the update through a USB port.
A power cycle occurred during the **INITIALIZING** process.	The update has been completed.

Print jobs that are sent to the device while an update is in process do not interrupt the update.

All HP devices leave the factory with the most recent firmware version installed. If a remote firmware update fails for the component, the .RFU file must be resent. The only component exception is the formatter. See Table 7-3 Update messages on page 277 for information regarding a formatter update error.

Because a firmware update cannot be resent over a USB for Macintosh, contact an HP Customer Care Center if a remote update fails in a Macintosh operating system.

Three messages appear during a normal update process; others appear only if the update process does not succeed.

Table 7-3 Update messages

Device message	Explanation
RECEIVING UPGRADE	This message appears from the time the device recognizes the beginning of an .RFU update until the time the device has verified the validity and integrity of the .RFU update. **NOTE:** If the remote firmware update process is interrupted before the firmware is downloaded (while **RECEIVING UPGRADE** appears on the control-panel display), the firmware file must be sent again. No message appears on the device control panel to indicate that the update was interrupted.
PERFORMING UPGRADE	This message appears while the device is actually reprogramming the firmware.

Table 7-3 Update messages (continued)

Device message	Explanation
	NOTE: If power is lost during the flash DIMM update (while **PERFORMING UPGRADE** appears on the control-panel display), the update is interrupted and the message **RESEND UPGRADE** appears on the control-panel display.
INITIALIZING	This message appears from the time the device has finished reprogramming the flash until the device reinitializes.
RESEND UPGRADE	This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update fails because the RFU process is interrupted. It can also occur if firmware for accessories (such as the duplex unit or an output device becomes is corrupted. Perform another update by any means that is supported by the device, regardless of the connection (network or USB).
RFU LOAD ERROR **SEND RFU UPGRADE** **ON USB PORT**	This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update of the formatter fails because the print-engine firmware is corrupted. If this message appears, the update must now be sent only by a computer that is attached to the USB port of the device.

NOTE: To verify that the firmware update succeeded, print a new configuration page from the control panel and verify that the firmware date code on the configuration page has changed.

The following table lists possible reasons for the failure of a remote firmware update and the corrective action required for each situation.

Table 7-4 Troubleshooting a firmware update failure

Reason for firmware update failure	Corrective action
The .RFU file is corrupted.	The device recognizes that the file is corrupted and rejects the update. Download the file again and send the new file to the device. Download the file from one of the following Web sites: www.hp.com/go/CM8060edgeline_sw www.hp.com/go/CM8050edgeline_sw
The wrong device is contained in the .RFU file.	The device recognizes the device mismatch and rejects the update. Download the correct file and send it to the device. Download the file from one of the following Web sites: www.hp.com/go/CM8060edgeline_sw www.hp.com/go/CM8050edgeline_sw
The upgrade was interrupted.	See Table 7-3 Update messages on page 277.
A flash hardware failure occurred.	Although it is extremely unlikely, the device might have a hardware failure. Call technical support to address the problem (see the flyer that came with the device for a local telephone support list).

Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the device uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to update the firmware. Complete the following steps:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the HP Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see Print the configuration page on page 275.

   NOTE: Before connecting to the device, make sure that the device is not in Powersave mode. Also make sure that any error messages are cleared from the control-panel display.

2. Open a command window on the computer.

3. Type `ftp://<TCP/IP printer ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `ftp://192.168.0.90`.

4. Press Enter on the keyboard.

5. When prompted for the user name, press Enter.

6. When prompted for the password, press Enter.

7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.

8. Press Enter. The message **200 Type set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.

9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file that was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put C:\LJ\xxxxFW.RFU`, and then press Enter.

   NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type the following path:

   ```
   put "c:\My Documents\CM8060\xxxxfw.rfu"
   ```

   The following series of messages appears in the command window:

   200 PORT command successful

   150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

   226 Ready

   226 Processing Job

   226 Transfer complete

   After these messages appear, a message containing transfer-speed information appears.

10. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the device. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the device or the computer. The messages described in the section Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277 appear on the control panel.

NOTE: The device automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the device or interfere with the update until you see this message.

11. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
12. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
13. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the MS Windows interface.

NOTE: Print a menu map to see what user settings are configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed before the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print a menu map from the device control panel, see Print a menu map on page 276.

Remote firmware update through an optional parallel port

If the device is connected through an optional parallel connection, then you can send the .RFU file directly to the device by using a `COPY` command from a command prompt or an MS-DOS window.

Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003

The .RFU file can be sent directly to the device by typing a **copy** command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.

Windows NT 4.0 does not support the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology drivers, but it is possible to update the device firmware in Windows NT 4.0.

1. At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>` , where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path) and <PORTNAME> is the name of the appropriate device port (such as LPT1). For example, type the following:

   ```
   C:\>copy /b c:\xxxxfw.rfu LPT1
   ```

   NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\xxxxfw.rfu" LPT1`.

2. Press Enter on the keyboard.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the device. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the device or the computer. The messages described in the section Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277 appear on the control panel.

   NOTE: The device automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the device or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

5. At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

NOTE: Print a menu map to see what user settings are configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed before the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print a menu map from the device control panel, see Print a menu map on page 276.

Remote firmware update through an MS Windows network

If the device is shared on an MS Windows network, follow these instructions:

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \ \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer (connected to the device by a USB) from which the device is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the device share name. For example, type the following:

   ```
   C:\>copy /b c:\xxxxfw.rfu \\COMPUTERNAME\SHARENAME
   ```

   NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents \xxxxfw.rfu" \\COMPUTERNAME\SHARENAME`

2. Press Enter on the keyboard. The messages described in the section Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277 appear on the control panel. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the device. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the device or the computer. The messages described in the section Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277 appear on the control panel.

   NOTE: The device automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the device or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

NOTE: Print a menu map to see what user settings are configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed before the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print a menu map from the device control panel, see Print a menu map on page 276.

To share the device, do the following:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Click **Settings**.
3. Click **Properties** (Windows 2000) or **Printers or Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home).
4. Right-click the device name.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **Sharing** tab.
7. Click the **Share this printer** button.
8. Enter a share name.
9. Click **Apply**. Then, click **OK** to close.

Remote firmware update for UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the .TAR file to the device is acceptable, including the following:

1. At the command prompt, type `cp </home/yourmachine/FILENAME /dev/parallel>`, where </home/yourmachine/FILENAME> is the location of the .TAR file.
2. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the device. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the device or the computer. The messages described in the section Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277 appear on the control panel.

   NOTE: The device automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the device or interfere with the update until this message appears.

3. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

NOTE: Print a menu map to see what user settings are configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed before the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print a menu map from the device control panel, see Print a menu map on page 276.

Remote firmware update by using the LPR command

NOTE: This remote firmware update method is for use in Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

Complete the following steps to update the firmware by using the LPR command.

1. From a command window, type `lpr -P <IPADDRESS> -S <IPADDRESS> -o l <FILENAME>` -OR- `lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbinps <FILENAME>`, where <IPADDRESS> can be either the TCP/IP address or the hostname of the device, and where <FILENAME> is the filename of the .RFU file.

   NOTE: The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

2. Press Enter on the keyboard. The messages described in the section Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277 appear on the control panel.

3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the device. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the device or the computer.

   NOTE: The device automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the device or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

5. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

NOTE: Print a menu map to see what user settings are configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed before the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print a menu map from the device control panel, see Print a menu map on page 276.

Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin

This procedure requires that HP Web Jetadmin V7.8 or later is installed on the computer. Complete the following steps to update a single device through HP Web Jetadmin after downloading the .RFU file from the HP Web site.

1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.

2. Type the TCP/IP address or IP host name of the device in the **Quick Device Find** field, and then click **Go**. The device Status window opens.

3. Open the **Device Management** folder in the drop-down list in the Navigation panel. Navigate to the **Device Lists** folder.

4. Expand the **Device Lists** folder and select **All Devices**. Locate the device that you want to update in the list of devices, and click to select it.

5. Locate the drop-down box for **Device Tools** in the upper-right corner of the window. Select **Update Printer Firmware** from the **choose action** list.

6. If the name of the .RFU file is not listed in the **All Available Images** dialog box, click **Browse** in the **Upload New Firmware Image** dialog box and navigate to the location of the .RFU file that you downloaded from the Web. If the filename is listed, select it.

7. Click **Upload** to move the .RFU file from your hard drive to the HP Web Jetadmin server.
8. Refresh the browser.
9. Select the .RFU file from the **Printer Firmware Update** drop-down menu.
10. Click **Update Firmware**. HP Web Jetadmin sends the selected .RFU file to the device.
11. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the device. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the device or the computer. The messages described in the section Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277 appear on the control panel.

    NOTE: The device automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the device or interfere with the update until you see this message.

12. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

NOTE: Print a menu map to see what user settings are configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed before the firmware update to determine what features have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print a menu map from the device control panel, see Print a menu map on page 276.

HP Web Jetadmin V7.8 and later can also be used to perform multiple or unattended installations. Complete the following steps for multiple or unattended installations.

1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
2. Create a device group. A simple way to do this is to follow these steps:
   a. Click **Device Management**, and then click **All Devices**.
   b. Shift-click to select devices that are to be included in the group, and then click **OK**.
   c. When prompted, type a name for the new device group, and then click **OK**.
3. To modify several devices in a group, click the group name, and then click **Open**.
4. The drop-down menu for **Device Group Tools** appears on the right side of the window. Scroll if necessary to view it.
5. In the **Device Group Tools** drop-down box, select an action. Type the appropriate information. Click **Return to Device Group** when finished.

Print print-ready documents

Several methods are available for printing documents independently of the original software program that was used to create the document. Normally, the document is printed by opening the original application and printing it to a file, or is printed through a distribution method such as Internet downloading. The following print-ready file formats can be sent directly to the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology without opening the original software program:

- HP printer control language (.PCL)
- Portable document format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)
- Print file (.PRN)

The examples that are used in this section are for printing .PDF documents. However, any print-ready file type can be substituted.

Use one of the following methods to send print-ready files to the device.

Topics:

- Print-ready file printing by using FTP through a browser
- Print-ready file printing by using FTP on a direct network connection
- Print-ready file printing by using an optional parallel port
- Print-ready file printing in an MS Windows network
- Print-ready file printing in UNIX systems
- Print-ready file printing by using the LPR command

Print-ready file printing by using FTP through a browser

Complete the following steps to print print-ready files directly by using FTP through a browser on MS Windows or Macintosh operating systems.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the HP Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see Print the configuration page on page 275.
2. Open a browser window.
3. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address of the device is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

   ```
   FTP:// 192.168.0.90
   ```

4. Locate the print-ready file for the device.
5. Drag and drop the print-ready file onto the **PORT1** icon in the browser window.

If the **PORT1** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in your Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view.

a. Select **Tools**, select **Internet Options**, and then click the **Advanced** tab.

b. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.

c. Click **OK** to save the setting.

Print-ready file printing by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to print a print-ready file. Complete the following steps:

1. Take note of the TCP/IP address on the HP Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see Print the configuration page on page 275.
2. Open a command window on the computer.
3. Type `ftp://<TCP/IP printer ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

   ```
   ftp://192.168.0.90
   ```
4. Press Enter on the keyboard.
5. When prompted for the user name, press Enter.
6. When prompted for the password, press Enter.
7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
8. Press Enter. The message **200 Types set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the print-ready file to be printed, including the path. For example, type the following:

   ```
   put C:\LJ\<file name>.PDF
   ```

   NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\LJ\<file name>.PDF"`

   The following series of messages appears in the command window:

   200 PORT command successful

   150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

   226 Ready

   226 Processing Job
10. Press Enter on the keyboard.
11. The print-ready file prints.

12. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
13. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the MS Windows interface.

Print-ready file printing by using an optional parallel port

The procedure for printing directly by using an optional parallel port depends on the operating system.

Topics:

- Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003

Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003

The print-ready file can be sent directly to the device by typing a `copy` command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.

1. At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the print-ready file (including the path) and <PORTNAME> is the name of the appropriate device port (such as LPT1). For example, type the following:

   ```
   C:\>copy /b c:\<file name>.PDF lpt1
   ```

2. Press Enter on the keyboard. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints.

   NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\<file name>.PDF"`.

3. At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Print-ready file printing in an MS Windows network

If the device is shared on an MS Windows network, complete the following steps.

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \ \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the print-ready file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer (connected to the device by a USB) from which the device is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the device share name. For example, type the following:

   ```
   C:\>copy /b c:\xxxxFW.PDF \\COMPUTERNAME\SHARENAME
   ```

   NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\<file name>.PDF" \\COMPUTERNAME\SHARENAME`

2. Press Enter on the keyboard. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

To share the device, do the following:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Click **Settings**.
3. Click **Properties** (Windows 2000) or **Printers or Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home).
4. Right-click the device name.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **Sharing** tab.
7. Click the **Share this printer** button.
8. Enter a share name.
9. Click **Apply**. Then, click **OK** to close.

Print-ready file printing in UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the print-ready file to the device is acceptable, including the following:

At the command prompt, type `cp </home/yourmachine/FILENAME/ dev/parallel>`, where </home/yourmachine/FILENAME> is the location of the print-ready file.

Print-ready file printing by using the LPR command

This direct-printing method is for use in Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

Complete the following steps to print a print-ready file by using the LPR command.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see Print the configuration page on page 275.
2. From a command window, type the following:

   ```
   lpr -P IPADDRESS -S IPADDRESS -o l FILENAME lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbinps <FILENAME>
   ```

   where IPADDRESS can be either the TCP/IP address or the host name of the device, and where FILENAME is the file name of the print-ready file.

   The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.
3. The file prints, but no messages appear in the command prompt window.
4. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Paper attributes

Topics:

- Paper sources and destinations
- Paper-source commands
- Driver-supported paper sizes
- Driver-supported paper types
- Custom paper sizes
- Media-type commands

Paper sources and destinations

The following table indicates the standard and optional paper sources and destinations for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology.

Table 7-5 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Paper sources and destinations

Paper sources	80-sheet manual feed tray (Tray 1)	Standard
	500-sheet paper trays (Tray 2 – 4)	Standard
	4000-sheet high-capacity tray (Tray 5)	Optional
Paper destinations	Single output bin	Standard
	HP 4-Bin Job Separator	Optional
	HP Multifunction Finisher	Optional

Paper-source commands

The PCL 6 attribute for paper source is `ubyte # MediaSource` or `ubyte_array "string" MediaSource`. See the following table for values of #. For example, `"ubyte 4 MediaSource"` is the command for Tray 2.

The PCL 5 escape sequence for media source is `Esc&l#H` (the "l" is a lowercase "L" rather than the numeral "1"). See the following table for values of #. For example, `Esc&l1H` is the command for Tray 2.

Table 7-6 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Paper-source commands

Paper source	PCL 6 `ubyte # MediaSource` **or** `ubyte_array "string" MediaSource`[1]	PCL 5 `Esc&l#H`	PostScript `/MediaPosition # / ManualFeed true | false` **or null**
Manual feed in tray 1	2	2	3 true
Tray 1 (manual feed)	3	4	3 false

Table 7-6 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Paper-source commands (continued)

Paper source	PCL 6 `ubyte # MediaSource` **or** `ubyte_array "string" MediaSource`[1]	PCL 5 `Esc&l#H`	PostScript `/MediaPosition # / ManualFeed true | false` **or null**
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	4	1	0 false
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	5	5	1 false
Tray 4 (500-sheet)	7	8	4 false
Tray 5 (4000-sheet high-capacity)	5	9	38 false
Automatically Select	NA	NA	NA
Printer Auto Select	1	7	null false

[1] For the string value, include the quotation marks around the variable. For example, `ubyte_array "TRAY2" MediaSource` is the PCL 6 command for Tray 2.

Driver-supported paper sizes

The following table lists the features and attributes of various paper listed under the **Page size:** drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the device and operating system. The list contains all of the following sizes, and might contain sizes from other drivers.

Table 7-7 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Supported paper sizes and attributes

Paper sizes[1]	Width	Height	PCL 6 [2]
Letter	216 mm (8.5 inches)	280 mm (11.0 inches)	"LETTER"
Legal	216 mm (8.5 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)	"LEGAL"
Executive	184 mm (7.25 inches)	267 mm (10.5 inches)	"EXEC"
Statement	140 mm (5.5 inches)	216 mm (8.5 inches)	"STATEMENT"
8.5 x 13	216 mm (8.5 inches)	330 mm (13 inches)	"8.5x13"
11 x 17	280 mm (11 inches)	432 mm (17 inches)	“11x17”
12 x 18	305 mm (12 inches)	457 mm (18 inches)	“12x18”

Table 7-7 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Supported paper sizes and attributes (continued)

Paper sizes[1]	Width	Height	PCL 6 [2]
4 x 6	102 mm (4 inches)	152 mm (6 inches)	“4x6”
5 x 7	127 mm (5 inches)	178 mm (7 inches)	“5x7”
5 x 8	127 mm (5 inches)	203 mm (8 inches)	“5x8”
A3	297 mm (11.69 inches)	420 mm (16.54 inches)	“A3”
A4	210 mm (8.27 inches)	297 mm (11.69 inches)	"A4"
A5	148 mm (5.83 inches)	210 mm (8.27 inches)	"A5"
RA3	305 mm (12.01 inches)	430 mm (16.93 inches)	“RA3”
RA4	215 mm (8.46 inches)	305 mm (12.01 inches)	“RA4”
SRA4	225 mm (8.86 inches)	320 mm (12.6 inches)	“SRA4”
B4 (JIS)	257 mm (10.12 inches)	364 mm (14.33 inches)	“JIS B4”
B5 (JIS)	182 mm (7.17 inches)	257 mm (10.1 inches)	"JIS B5"
B6 (JIS)	128 mm (5.04 inches)	182 mm (7.17 inches)	“JIS B6”
8K	273 mm (10.75 inches)	394 mm (15.5 inches)	“ROC8K
16K	197 mm (7.75 inches)	273 mm (10.75 inches)	"ROC16K"
Custom	Minimum: 102 mm (4 inches) Maximum:	Minimum: 152 mm (6 inches) Maximum:	[3]

Table 7-7 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Supported paper sizes and attributes (continued)

Paper sizes[1]	Width	Height	PCL 6 [2]
	320 mm (12.6 inches)	457 mm (18 inches)	

[1] For all paper sizes, the PCL 6 margins are 100 dots, at 600 dots per inch.

[2] The PCL 6 command for paper size is ubyte_array "String" MediaSize. The values in this column are the values for "String."

[3] For custom sizes, the HP PCL 6 driver specifies actual dimensions, for example, for 8 x 9-inch custom size, "real32_xy 8.0 9.0 CustomMediaSize ubyte eInch CustomMediaSizeUnits."

Driver-supported paper types

When you select a paper type, you are instructing the device to use a group of predefined settings to create the best possible print quality for that type of paper.

CAUTION: Selecting a paper type that does not match the type of paper that is loaded in the tray can damage the device.

The following table shows the paper types that the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology print-drivers support.

Table 7-8 Supported paper types for each tray

Paper type that is listed in the printer driver or on the control panel	Description	Tray 1	Trays 2, 3, and 4	Tray 5
Plain	Plain, uncoated paper that is less than 150 g/m^2 (40 lb bond)	X	X	X
HP Office LG	A3 or 11x17 inch paper that is known to be long-grain and less than 150 g/m^2 (40 lb bond)	X	X	X
HP Matte Premium 120g	Use only for HP Premium Presentation Matte Paper, 120 g/m^2	X		
HP Matte Brochure 180g	Use only for HP Brochure and Flyer Paper Matte, 180 g/m^2	X		
HP Matte Cover 200g	Use only for this HP-brand paper.	X		
HP Glossy Edgilne 180g	Use only for HP Glossy for Edgeline Paper, 180 g/m^2	X		
HP Glossy Edgline 220g	Use only for HP Glossy for Edgeline Paper, 220 g/m^2	X		
Cardstock	Plain, uncoated paper that is from 160 to 220 g/m^2 (60 to 80 lb cover)	X		
Cardstock	Plain, uncoated paper that is from 160 to 180 g/m^2 (60 to 67 lb cover)	X	X	X
Matte	Plain, uncoated paper. **A3 or 11x17 inch paper must be long-grain.**	X	X	X
Matte Brochure	Plain, uncoated paper.	X	X	X

Table 7-8 Supported paper types for each tray (continued)

Paper type that is listed in the printer driver or on the control panel	Description	Tray 1	Trays 2, 3, and 4	Tray 5
	A3 or 11x17 inch paper must be long-grain.			
Matte Cover	Plain, uncoated paper that is from 160 to 220 g/m^2 (60 to 80 lb cover)	X		
Labels	Uncoated, non-glossy labels	X		
Letterhead	Fine, uncoated paper that is less than 150 g/m^2 (40 lb bond)	X	X	X
Preprinted	Plain, uncoated paper that is less than 150 g/m^2 (40 lb bond)	X	X	X
Prepunched	Letter (3-hole) or A4 (2- or 4-hole) size paper that is less than 150 g/m^2 (40 lb bond)	X	X	X
Colored	Plain, uncoated paper that is less than 150 g/m^2 (40 lb bond)	X	X	X
Bond	Fine, uncoated paper that is less than 150 g/m^2 (40 lb bond)	X	X	X
Recycled	Plain, uncoated paper that is less than 150 g/m^2 (40 lb bond)	X	X	X

Custom paper sizes

The following table shows custom paper sizes that are available for the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology.

Table 7-9 HP PCL 6 driver custom paper sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (80-sheet manual feed)	Width	76 mm (3.0 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127 mm (5.0 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)
Trays 2 – 4 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.26 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)
Trays 5 (4000-sheet high-capacity, optional)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.26 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)
Duplexing unit	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)

NOTE: The HP Stacker/Stapler/Job Separator does not support custom paper sizes.

Media-type commands

The HP PCL 5 driver escape sequence for paper type is "Esc&n#Wdpapertype", where "n#" is the number of characters in the paper type plus 1. For example, in the sequence "Esc&n6WdPlain", "Plain" has 5 letters plus 1, for a total of 6.

Table 7-10 HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology – Media-type commands

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	6	Wd	Plain
Esc&	11	Wd	Preprinted
Esc&	11	Wd	Letterhead
Esc&	11	Wd	Prepunched
Esc&	7	Wd	Labels
Esc&	5	Wd	Bond
Esc&	9	Wd	Recycled
Esc&	6	Wd	Color
Esc&	6	Wd	Light <75 g/m^2
Esc&	6	Wd	Heavy
Esc&	11	Wd	Cardstock > 163 g/m^2[1]
Esc&	6	Wd	Rough

[1] The correct command for cardstock is "Esc&n11WdCard Stock", with a space between the "d" and the "S", and with an uppercase "S".

Uninstall

Topics:

- Uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software by using Windows Add/Remove Program
- Uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software by using the Windows Installation CD

Uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software by using Windows Add/Remove Program

Follow these steps to uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software by using **Windows Add/Remove Programs**.

NOTE: To uninstall the software from Windows 2000 or Windows XP, you must log on with administrator privileges.

1. Quit all open programs.
2. Click **Start**, navigate to **Control Panel**, and then double-click **Add or Remove Programs**.
3. Click **Change or Remove Programs** on the left side of the window, and then click the name of the device.
4. Click **Remove**.
5. The **Important Uninstall Information** dialog box appears. Click **Continue**. The **Cleanup progress** dialog box appears. The progress bar reflects the status of the uninstall process.
6. When the uninstall process is complete, the **Restart** dialog box appears. Click **Restart** to restart the computer and finish the uninstall process.

Uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software by using the Windows Installation CD

Uninstall the HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology printing-system software by using the Windows installation CD. See Modify a pre-existing installation on page 126 in this STR for instructions.

Index

Symbols/Numerics

% of Normal Size setting 204

A

About tab
  fax driver 162
  print drivers 247
accessibility,
  documentation 20, 23
accessories, automatic
  configuration 40
Acrobat Reader
  installing 34
  viewing
    documentation 17, 21, 24, 25, 27, 29
ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) compliance 20, 23
Add Printer installation 129
Add program 295
Additional Software Details dialog box, Customization Wizard 143
Additional Software dialog box, Customization Wizard 142
Address Book page 74
administrator CD-ROM 22
administrator documentation 25
Adobe Acrobat Reader
  installing 34
  printing PDF files without 285
  viewing
    documentation 17, 21, 24, 25, 27, 29
Adobe RGB color space 231
Advanced Printing Features setting, drivers 184
Advanced tab
  fax driver 160, 165
  print drivers 180
Agree dialog box, Macintosh 258
Alerts page 63
Alternative Letterhead Mode 186
Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance 20, 23
application settings 173
ASCII format 242
ASCII output protocol, PS Emulation driver 242
asset number 57
Authenticate dialog box, Macintosh 256
autoconfiguration of drivers 40
autoconfiguration, driver 40, 244
autoconfiguration, Enterprise
  about 41
autorun CD-ROM, Windows 33
AutoSend 64

B

Back button, Windows installation dialog boxes 97
Back to Front printing, drivers 186
Backup and Restore page 72
Basic Installation
  dialog boxes, Windows 99
bidirectional communication
  about 41
  Enterprise Autoconfiguration 41
binary data, sending 242
binary output protocol, PS Emulation driver 242
binding settings 211
bins
  accessory options 244
  custom paper sizes 194
  included 289
  Output Options 218
black, printing all text as 185
booklet printing settings 212
books and booklets 212
both sides, printing on 211
Browse for Printer dialog box, Customization Wizard 134

C

Cancel button, Windows installation dialog boxes 97
cardstock, paper type commands 294
cartridges
  AutoSend feature 64
  features 5
  usage information 54
CD-ROM
  directory structure, Macintosh 251
  directory structure, Windows 10
  documentation 17, 33
  included 9
  installer, Windows printing-system software 32
  installing Macintosh printing-system software 254
  installing Windows printing-system software 96
  languages, Macintosh 251
  languages, Windows 10
  Mac OS installation 21
  system administrator 22
  Windows installation 18
CD-ROM icon, Macintosh 255
Change TCP/IP Settings dialog box, Windows 111
Check Printer Connection dialog box, Windows 112
CHM files, viewing 17
Citrix Terminal Server support 8

collation settings
fax driver 167
print drivers 182, 245
Color Options group box 229
Color Quality group box 199
Color Quality settings 200
Color Themes group box 231
colors
saturated 231
command-line printing, Windows 285
command-line silent install for Windows 148
commands, paper
size 292
source 289
type 294
common installer, features 35
components, software
Macintosh 250, 253
Windows 8
configuration
outgoing e-mail 62
return e-mail address 63
Configuration Page, HP EWS 49
configuration page, printing 275
Configuration tab, HP EWS 82
Configure Device page, HP EWS 61
Confirm Network Settings dialog box, Windows 109
connectivity
bidirectional communication support 41
features 5
constraint messages 178
context-sensitive help
fax driver 157
print drivers 178
continuous export 45
contrast enhancement 201
control panel
language 68
settings 173
viewing with HP EWS 57
Copy Count settings
fax driver 167
print drivers 182, 245
Ctrl-D settings 242
Custom Installation
choosing 33
dialog boxes, Windows 99
Custom Installer Location dialog box, Customization Wizard 144
custom paper sizes 193, 293
Custom Profile setting 231
Customization Wizard
dialog boxes 130
languages, Windows 10
customizing
installers 35, 44

D

Date & Time page, HP EWS 69
default print settings 169
default printer, setting 149
deleting job-storage jobs 226
destinations, paper 289
Details dialog box 118, 120
Device and Supplies Status, fax driver 171
device control panel
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology 177
Device Information page 57
Device Information page, HP EWS 68
Device Services, drivers 234
Device Settings dialog box, Customization Wizard 141
Device Settings tab
fax driver 161
print drivers 235
Device Status page, HP EWS 48
diagnostics 46, 233
Diagnostics section, HP EWS 83
dialog boxes, printing-system software installation
Mac OS X 255
Windows 99
Windows Customization Wizard 130
digital flash setting 201
digital imaging options 200
Digital Sending tab, HP EWS 73
DIMMs, fonts
driver settings 239
direct-connect installation 98
directory structure, CD-ROM
Macintosh 251
Windows 10
Disable Your Firewall dialog box, Windows Vista 103
disabling
driver features 44
disk space requirements
Linux 7
Mac OS 7
Macintosh 250
UNIX 7
Windows 6
Document Options
fax driver 167
print drivers 183, 210
document preview image
fax driver 170
print drivers 199, 204, 214
Document Properties
fax driver 156
documentation
administrator 25
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 29
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 27
install notes 19, 26
Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide 29
languages, Windows 10
Quick Reference Guide 20, 23
screen-readable 20
user 22
viewing 17, 33
double-sided printing 211
download
firmware 276
downloading
printing-system software 9
Driver Configuration dialog box, Customization Wizard 140
Driver Details dialog box, Customization Wizard 139
drivers
% of Normal Size 204
About tab 247
accessing 175
accessory configuration 40
Add Printer installation 129

Advanced Printing Features 184
Advanced tab 180
Alternative Letterhead Mode 186
autoconfiguration of 40
Automatic Configuration 244
automatic configuration 41
booklets 212
Color Quality settings 200
constraint messages 178
continuous export feature 45
Copy Count settings 182
custom paper sizes 293
Device Services 234
Device Settings tab 235
diagnostics 46
Document Options 183, 210
document preview image 199, 204, 214
duplexing 211
Effects tab 202
Enterprise Autoconfiguration 41
features 173
Finishing tab 209
Flip Pages Up 211
Font DIMM Installer 239
font settings 239
Form to Tray Assignment 237
Graphic setting 182
Help system 178
included 36
Installable Options settings 244
Job-storage settings 221
JPEG Passthrough 246
languages, Windows 10
Layout Options 186
lockable features 44
Macintosh 250, 253
Mopier settings 245
Output tab 216
Pages per Sheet 213
Paper Options 191
paper size commands 292
paper sizes supported 290
paper source commands 289
paper supported 289
paper type commands 294
Paper/Output settings 181
Paper/Quality tab 190
Point-and-Print installation 148
PostScript Options 184
PostScript Passthrough 246
preconfiguration 43
preconfiguration support 29
Printer Features 185
Printing Preferences tabs 175
Properties tabs 176
Resizing Options settings 203
Scale to Fit 203
Services tab 233
settings 173
standalone 8
TrueType font settings 183
universal print drivers 37
Update Now 41
version numbers 38
Watermarks settings 205
See also fax driver
Drivers dialog box, Customization Wizard 138
duplexing unit
custom paper sizes 194
driver settings 211

E

e-mail
AutoSend 64
return address, configuring 63
server settings 62
E-mail Server page, HP EWS 62
E-mail Setup page 76
Easy Install dialog box, Macintosh 258
Edit Other Links page 67
Effects tab 202
embeddeded Web server
launching 171
Energy Star compliance 4
Enterprise Autoconfiguration
about 41
escape sequences
paper source 289
paper type 294
Euro symbol 243
Event Log page, HP EWS 52
EWS
about 47
AutoSend 64
Configuration 82
Configure Device 61
Control Panel Snapshot page 57
Date & Time 69
Device configuration page 49
Device Information 57
Device Information page 68
Device Status page 48
Diagnostics 83
Digital Sending tab 73
E-mail Server 62
Edit Other LInks 67
Event Log 52
Information tab 48
Language 68
navigation 48
Network Settings 82
Networking tab 82
Print page 59
Security 65, 83
Security page 83
Settings 60
Supplies Status page 51
Usage Page 54
EWS (Macintosh)
about 253, 271
accessing 271
EWS (Windows)
accessing 47
Kerberos authentication 84
login process 84
password behavior 86
protected system 85
unprotected system 86
exporting driver parameters 45
External Fonts settings, PCL drivers 239

F

Fax Activity Log page 80
fax driver
about 153
About tab 162
accessing 154
Advanced tab 160, 165
Device and Supplies Status 171
Device Settings tab 161
Document Options 167
document preview image 170
Document Properties tab 156
firmware requirements 150

General tab 158
Help system 157
installation 150, 151
languages, Windows 10
Launch Embedded Web Server 171
operating systems supported 38
orientation 170
Paper Options 169
Paper/Output tab 166
Paper/Quality tab 167
Ports tab 159
Print Task Quick Sets 168
Printing Defaults tab 156
Printing Defaults tabs 155
Printing Preferences tab 155
Printing Preferences tabs 155
Properties tabs 154
Services tab 170
Sharing tab 159
upgrading 160
Fax Send Setup page 79
Fax tab 79
Feature Selection dialog box, Windows 119
features 4
Finish dialog box, Customization Wizard 148
Finish dialog box, Windows 129
Finish dialog box, Windows Vista 125
Finish dialog box, Windows XP 124
Finish Up dialog box, Macintosh 259
Finishing tab 209
Firewall Detected dialog box, Windows XP 102
firmware
about updating remotely 274
determining current level 275
download 276
fax driver requirements 150
FTP updates, direct network connections 279
HP Web Jetadmin updates 283
LPR command updates 282
messages during update 277
parallel port updates 280
troubleshooting updates 277
UNIX updates 282
verifying installation 278
Windows network updates 281
flash, digital 201
Flip Pages Up 211
font attributes 207
Font Substitution Table, PS Emulation driver 238
fonts
DIMM settings, drivers 239
driver settings 183
Euro symbol 243
External, PCL drivers 239
files names of 90
languages, Windows 10
PS Emulation driver 243
Windows 90, 92
fonts, external
installing 240
removing 241
Form to Tray Assignment, drivers 237
FTP
firmware updates 279
print-ready files 285, 286
Full Installation
dialog boxes, Windows 99

G

General tab, fax driver 158
Graphic settings 182
graphics mode 186
grayscale settings, PS Emulation driver 243
grayscale tones 230

H

hard disk
driver settings 245
heavy paper, paper type commands 294
help
fax driver 157
print drivers 178
Help button, Windows installation dialog boxes 97
help, context-sensitive 157
HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 46
HP Driver Preconfiguration 43
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 29
HP Embedded Web Server
about 47
AutoSend 64
Configuration 82
configuration page 49
Configure Device 61
Control Panel Snapshot page 57
Date & Time 69
Device Information 57
Device Information page 68
Device Status page 48
Diagnostics section 83
Digital Sending tab 73
E-mail Server 62
Edit Other Links 67
Event Log page 52
Information tab 48
Language 68
navigation 48
Network Settings 82
Networking tab 82
Print page 59
Security 65, 83
Security page 83
Settings 60
Supplies Status page 51
Usage Page 54
HP Embedded Web Server (Macintosh)
about 253, 271
accessing 271
HP Embedded Web Server (Windows)
accessing 47
Kerberos authentication 84
login process 84
password behavior 86
protected system 85
unprotected system 86
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 27
HP LaserJet Macintosh installer startup screen 256
HP OpenVMS 8
HP PCL drivers. *See* PCL drivers
HP PS 3 Emulation driver. *See* PS Emulation driver

HP Software dialog box, Macintosh 255
HP Web Jetadmin
downloading 87
Driver Preconfiguration Plugin 43, 44
firmware updates 283
HTML files, viewing 17

I
ICM (Image Color Management) options 183
Image Color Management (ICM) options 183
image optimization 231
imaging options 200
Import Speed Dials page 81
Incompatible Print Settings messages 178
Information tab, HP EWS 48
ink cartridges
AutoSend feature 64
features 5
usage information 54
input trays. *See* trays
Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW) 8
install notes 19, 26
Installable Options
PS Emulation driver 244
installation
Add Printer 129
Adobe Acrobat Reader 34
command-line silent 148
Customization Wizard for Windows 130
dialog boxes, Mac OS X 255
fax driver 150
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology 97
Mac OS CD-ROM 21
Mac OS X V10.2.8 setup 268
Mac OS X V10.3.9 setup 264
Mac OS X V10.4 and later setup 260
Macintosh printing-system software 254
Point and Print 148
pre-existing, modifying 126
system requirements for Linux 7
system requirements for Mac OS 7
system requirements for Macintosh 250
system requirements for UNIX 7
system requirements for Windows 6
troubleshooting Macintosh 271
Unsupported Operating System dialog box 98
Windows CD-ROM 18
Windows printing-system software 96
installation CD-ROM
Macintosh 251
Installation Status dialog box, Windows 123
Installation Type dialog box, Windows 117
installer customization wizard 35, 44
Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide 29
installers
common, features 35
customizing 130
Windows 32
Installing dialog box, Customization Wizard 147
Installing dialog box, Macintosh 259
Invalid Selection dialog box, Customization Wizard 142
IP printing 267, 270

J
Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 27
job names 225
job storage
deleting jobs 226
driver settings 221, 245
features 4
modes 223
notification options 224
Personal Job 223
printing 226
Proof and Hold 223
Quick Copy 224
retrieve jobs 226
status 223
Job Timeout settings 243
JPEG Passthrough 246

K
Kerberos authentication 84

L
landscape orientation
fax driver 170
print drivers 211, 214
Language dialog box, Customization Wizard 133
Language page, HP EWS 68
language, encoded in file name 20
languages
Macintosh CD-ROMs 251
Windows CD-ROMs 10
Launch Embedded Web Server 171
Layout Options 186
letterhead, alternative mode 186
License Agreement, Customization Wizard 132
License dialog box, Macintosh 257
links, HP EWS 67
Linux operating systems
support for 7
localized CD-ROMs
Macintosh 251
Windows 10
Location dialog box, Customization Wizard 144
lockable features, drivers 44
login process
HP Embedded Web Server (Windows) 84
LPR commands
firmware updates 282
print-ready files 288

M
Mac OS installation CD 21
Mac OS operating systems
support for 7
Macintosh operating systems
components, software 253
dialog boxes, Mac OS X printing-system software installation 255

directory structure, software CD-ROM 251
drivers supported 38
hardware requirements 250
HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) 271
install notes 254
installing printing-system software 254
localized software CDs 251
PDEs 253
PPDs 253
setting up with Mac OS X V10.2.8 268
setting up with Mac OS X V10.3.9 264
setting up with Mac OS X V10.4 and later 260
software components 250
support 7
supported 250
troubleshooting setup 271
uninstalling printing-system software 271
manuals. *See* documentation
margins
PCL 6 driver 292
media. *See* paper
memory
base 4
driver settings 244
Linux requirements 7
Mac OS requirements 7
Macintosh requirements 250
PS Emulation driver settings 242
UNIX requirements 7
Windows requirements 6
menu map, printing 276
message angle on watermarks 207
message on watermarks 207
messages, constraint 178
Microsoft Windows. *See* Windows
model number 57
models, features 4
Mopier mode 209, 245
Mopier settings 245
MS Windows Cluster Server 8
support 8

N

Network Folder Setup page 78
Network Path dialog box, Customization Wizard 134
Network Settings, HP EWS 82
Networking tab, HP EWS 82
networks
Confirm Network Settings dialog box 109
Customization Wizard settings 135
firewalls 102, 103
firmware updates 281
HP Driver Preconfiguration 43
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 29
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 27
HP Web Jetadmin, downloading 87
Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW) 8
Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's 29
Point-and-Print installation 148
print-ready files 287
Windows printing-system software installation 97
neutral grays 230
Next Steps — Congratulations dialog box, Windows 126
Notification Server page 62
number of copies
fax driver 167
number of copies, setting
print drivers 182, 245

O

operating systems
availability of software components 8
standalone drivers 8
supported 7
optimization of images 231
Optimizations option, PCL drivers 184
orientation
fax driver 170
print drivers 211, 214
Other Links area 67
Output Bin Options 219
output bins
accessory options 244
custom paper sizes 194
included 289
options 218
Output Options 218
Output Protocol settings, PS Emulation driver 242
Output tab, drivers 216

P

page counts 54
Page Order settings 186, 214
page orientation
fax driver 170
print drivers 211, 214
Pages per Sheet settings 213
paper
Alternative Letterhead Mode 186
custom sizes, driver settings 193
custom sizes, PCL driver support 293
margins 292
Page size settings, drivers 192
Pages per Sheet settings, drivers 213
Paper Source: settings, drivers 194
Paper Type: settings, drivers 195
Print Document On settings, drivers 203
Print on Both Sides settings, drivers 211
selecting 196
size commands 292
sizes supported 290
source commands 289
sources and destinations 289
type commands 294
types and sizes supported 289
Usage Page 54
Paper Options
fax driver 169
print drivers 191
paper sizes 169
paper source commands 289
Paper Source setting 194

Paper Source: settings 194
Paper Type: settings 195
Paper/Output tab
fax driver 166
print drivers 181
Paper/Quality tab
fax driver 167
print drivers 190
parallel ports
firmware updates 280
print-ready files 287
password protection 83
passwords
HP EWS (Windows) 84, 86
PCL drivers
% of Normal Size 204
about 37
About tab 247
accessing 175
Advanced Printing Features 184
Advanced tab 180
Alternative Letterhead Mode 186
Automatic Configuration 244
booklets 212
constraint messages 178
Copy Count settings 182
custom paper sizes 293
Device Services 234
Device Settings tab 235
diagnostics 46
Document Options 183, 210
document preview image 199, 204, 214
duplexing 211
Effects tab 202
External Fonts settings 239
features 173
Finishing tab 209
Flip Pages Up 211
Font DIMM Installer 239
Font Substitution Table 238
Form to Tray Assignment 237
Graphic setting 182
Help system 178
included 38
Installable Options settings 244
Job-storage settings 221
languages, Windows 10
Layout Options 186
Mopier settings 245
Output tab 216
Pages per Sheet 213
Paper Options 191
paper size commands 292
paper sizes supported 290
paper source commands 289
paper supported 289
paper type commands 294
Paper/Output settings 181
Paper/Quality tab 190
Print Optimizations option 184
Printer Features 185
Printing Preferences tab 175
Properties tab 176
Resizing Options settings 203
Scale to Fit 203
Services tab 233
TrueType font settings 183
Update Now 41
version numbers 38
Watermarks settings 205
PCL files, print 285
PDEs (Printer Dialog Extensions) 253
PDF files
command-line printing 285
installing Adobe Acrobat Reader 34
printing from HP EWS 59
viewing 17
Percentage of Normal Size setting 204
Personal Job settings 223
PINs, personal jobs 223, 224
Please enter a hardware address dialog box, Customization Wizard 136
Point-and-Print installation, Windows printing-system software 148
Port Creation Options dialog box, Customization Wizard 136
Port Name dialog box 115
portrait orientation
fax driver 170
print drivers 211, 214
Ports tab, fax driver 159
ports, included 5
PostScript Device settings, PS Emulation driver 241
PostScript Options, drivers 184
PostScript Passthrough 246
PPDs, Macintosh
installation 253
pre-existing installation, modifying 126
preconfiguration, driver 29, 43
preview image 219, 232
Print All Text as Black 185
Print Document On settings 203
print drivers
support in non-Windows operating systems 8
universal 37
Print on Both Sides 211
Print Optimizations option, PCL drivers 184
Print Page Borders settings 213
Print page, HP EWS 59
print settings, default 169
Print Task Quick Sets, fax driver 168
print-driver user interface 175
print-ready files
FTP 285, 286
LPR command 288
parallel port 287
types of 285
UNIX 288
Windows network 287
Printer Connection dialog box, Windows 101
Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) 253
Printer Driver Test Page dialog box, Windows 126
Printer Features, drivers 185
Printer Not Found dialog box, Windows Vista 106
Printer Not Found dialog box, Windows XP 105
Printer Port dialog box, Customization Wizard 134
Printer Properties dialog box, Customization Wizard 146
Printer Properties dialog box, Windows 121

Printer Settings dialog box, Windows 114
printer setup
Macintosh operating systems 260
printer, setting default 149
Printers Found dialog box, Windows 107
printing
page orientation 170
parallel port 287
Quick Reference Guide 20, 24
stored jobs 226
Printing Defaults
fax driver 156
Printing Defaults tabs, fax driver 155
Printing Preferences
fax driver 155
print drivers 175
Printing Preferences dialog box, Customization Wizard 141
printing shortcuts
creating 189
predefined 189
Printing Shortcuts tab 187
problem alerts 63
Proof and Hold job settings 223
Properties tab
fax driver 154
Properties tabs
print drivers 176
protected system, HP Embedded Web Server 85
protected systems 85
protocols 242
PS Emulation driver
% of Normal Size 204
about 37
About tab 247
accessing 175
Advanced Printing Features 184
Advanced tab 180
Alternative Letterhead Mode 186
Automatic Configuration 244
booklets 212
constraint messages 178
Copy Count settings 182
Ctrl-D settings 242
custom paper sizes 293
Device Services 234
Device Settings tab 235
diagnostics 46
Document Options 183, 210
document preview image 199, 204, 214
duplexing 211
Effects tab 202
External Fonts settings 239
features 173
Finishing tab 209
Flip Pages Up 211
Font DIMM Installer 239
font settings 243
Font Substitution Table 238
Form to Tray Assignment 237
Graphic setting 182
Help system 178
included 38
Installable Options settings 244
Job-storage settings 221
JPEG Passthrough 246
languages, Windows 10
Layout Options 186
Mopier settings 245
Output Protocol settings 242
Output tab 216
Pages per Sheet 213
Paper Options 191
paper sizes supported 290
paper source commands 289
paper supported 289
Paper/Output settings 181
Paper/Quality tab 190
PostScript Device settings 241
PostScript Memory settings 242
PostScript Options 184
PostScript Passthrough 246
Printer Features 185
Printing Preferences tabs 175
Properties tabs 176
Resizing Options settings 203
Scale to Fit 203
Services tab 233
timeout settings 243
TrueType font settings 183
Update Now 41
version number 38
Watermarks settings 205
PS emulation fonts 92
PS files, printing 59, 285

Q

quality settings 200
Quick Copy jobs 224
Quick Reference Guide 20, 23

R

Raster Compression setting 185
Read Me dialog box, Macintosh 257
Ready to Create Installer dialog box, Customization Wizard 145
Ready to Install dialog box, Windows 121
red eye removal 201
regional versions, CD-ROMs
Macintosh 251
Windows 10
remote firmware updates
about 274
determining current firmware level 275
download 276
FTP, direct network connections 279
HP Web Jetadmin 283
LPR commands 282
messages 277
parallell port 280
troubleshooting 277
UNIX 282
verifying installation 278
Windows network 281
Remove program 295
removing
Macintosh printing system 271
Resizing Options 203
resolution
print driver settings 200
retrieve job-storage jobs 226
return e-mail address 63
RFU. *See* remote firmware updates
RGB, Adobe 231

S

SAP printing 8
saturated colors 231
Scale to Fit setting 203

screen-readable
documentation 20, 23
Searching dialog box 104
Security page, HP EWS 65, 83
Send Ctrl-D settings 242
send fax driver
about 153
About tab 162
accessing 154
Advanced tab 160, 165
Device and Supplies Status 171
Device Settings tab 161
Document Options 167
document preview image 170
Document Properties tab 156
firmware requirements 150
General tab 158
Help system 157
installation 150, 151
languages, Windows 10
Launch Embedded Web
Server 171
operating systems supported 38
orientation 170
Paper Options 169
Paper/Output tab 166
Paper/Quality tab 167
Ports tab 159
Print Task Quick Sets 168
Printing Defaults tab 156
Printing Defaults tabs 155
Printing Preferences tab 155
Printing Preferences tabs 155
Properties tab 154
Services tab 170
Sharing tab 159
upgrading 160
serial number 57
Services tab
fax driver 170
print drivers 233
Set Port Name dialog box 115
settings
continuous export 45
locking 44
overriding 173
Settings tab, HP EWS 60
Setup Maintenance dialog
box 127
Sharing tab, fax driver 159
sharpness setting 201
silent installation
command-line 148
Customization Wizard 130
sizes, paper
commands 292
custom 293
driver settings 192
margins 292
Print on Both Sides settings,
drivers 211
supported 289, 290
Sleep Schedule page 71
Smart Focusing settings 201
Software License Agreement,
Customization Wizard 132
Software License dialog box,
Macintosh 257
Solution Installer page 73
source of paper 289
source, paper 194
sources, paper. *See* trays
Special pages list box 196
Specify Printer dialog box 113
Specify TCP/IP Port dialog box,
Customization Wizard 135
sRGB (default) 231
standalone drivers 8
status
fax driver 171
job storage 223
Supplies Status page, HP
EWS 51
status alerts 63
storage, job
driver settings 221, 245
features 4
modes 223
notification options 224
Personal Job 223
printing 226
Proof and Hold 223
Quick Copy 224
retrieve jobs 226
status 223
supplies
AutoSend feature 64
features 5
usage information 54
Supplies Status page, HP EWS 51
system administrator CD-ROM 22
system requirements
Mac OS 7
supported operating systems 6
Windows 6

T

TBCP (Tagged Binary
Communications Protocol) 242
TBCP output protocol, PS Emulation
driver 242
TCP/IP address
locating 57
TCP/IP Port dialog box,
Customization Wizard 135
TCP/IP Settings dialog box 111
Test Page dialog box,
Windows 126
text files, printing 59, 285
text, printing all as black 185
time settings
HP EWS 69
timeout settings 243
transparencies, paper type
commands 294
trays
Alternative Letterhead
Mode 186
autoconfiguration 40
custom paper sizes 194, 293
driver configuration 244
driver Form to Tray
Assignment 237
included 5, 289
paper source commands 289
Paper Source: settings,
drivers 194
paper type commands 294
Usage Page 54
troubleshooting
Diagnostics, HP EWS 83
firmware upgrades 277
HP driver Diagnostic Printer
Check Tool 46
Macintosh setup 271
Services tab, drivers 233
Unsupported Operating System
dialog box 98
Tru64 UNIX printing 8
TrueType font settings 183, 243

TrueType fonts
sending as bitmaps 185
two-sided printing 211
types, paper
driver settings 195
Print on Both Sides settings, drivers 211
Typical Installation
choosing 33
Typical with Fax Installation
choosing 33

U

unattended installation
command-line 148
Customization Wizard 130
uninstallation
Macintosh printing system 271
uninstalling
HP CM8060/CM8050 Color MFP with Edgeline Technology 295
Universal Print Driver (UPD) 35
universal print drivers 37
UNIX operating systems
print-ready files 288
remote firmware update 282
Web site for 7
unprotected system, HP EWS (Windows) 86
Unsupported Operating System dialog box 98
UPD (Universal Print Driver) 35
Update Now feature 41
updating firmware remotely. *See* remote firmware updates
upgrading fax driver 160
usage information, AutoSend 64
Usage Page 54
USB direct-connect installation 98
user documentation 22
User Name, stored jobs 225

V

version checking 274
version numbers, drivers 38

W

Wait Timeout settings 243
watermarks
default settings 208
message angle on 207
message on 207
Watermarks settings 205
watermarks, list of 206
Web Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
Web sites
Citrix Terminal server support 8
downloading software 9
firmware download 276
HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 46
HP OpenVMS 8
HP Web Jetadmin, downloading 87
Linux device support 7
Macintosh software 251
SAP printing 8
Tru64 UNIX printing 8
UNIX support 7
Welcome dialog box, Customization Wizard 131
Welcome dialog box, Windows 100
What's this? Help
fax driver 157
print drivers 178
Windows installation CD 18
Windows operating systems
Add Printer installation 129
availability of software components 8
CD-ROM, print system 32
default printer, setting 149
dialog boxes 99
directory structure, software CD-ROM 10
documentation 17
driver features 173
driver versions 38
drivers supported 38
fonts supported 90
Installer Customization Wizard 130
installing printing software 96
Point-and-Print installation 148
PS emulation fonts supported 92
remote firmware update 280
support 7
system requirements 6
wizards
installer customization 35, 44

© 2007 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

www.hp.com